

# LAO

## **BASIC COURSE** **Volume 1**



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and SOUKSOMBOUN SAYASITHSENA

### **FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

**1970**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

---

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office  
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price \$4.00

## P R E F A C E

*FSI Lao Basic Course, Volume I, provides introductory material in modern spoken Lao for the student who wishes to achieve proficiency in the language spoken by about three million persons in Laos and an additional ten million persons in Thailand. The Vientiane dialect, used in official government communications and generally the most useful for American students, is the dialect represented here.*

*The initial volume of this course is the product of collaboration between Warren G. Yates, chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages and Souksomboun Sayasithsena, Lao language instructor. Dr. Yates has provided the general plan for the work and the English language content. Mr. Sayasithsena has been responsible for the authenticity of the Lao language material. Assisting in the classroom trial of most of the material in this volume were Malichanh Svengsouk, Kongkam Thanasack, Doungkeo Sayasithsena, and Somsangouane Thanasack. Mrs. Svengsouk also provided assistance in proof reading. Irma C. Ponce did the final typing.*

*Unlike most FSI language textbooks, this volume is not accompanied by tape recordings. Lao Basic Course, Volume I, follows the "microwave" format and is not so much a set of materials to be mastered as a set of guidelines for conversational interplay between students and their native-speaking Lao instructor. The format, which owes much to the work of another FSI linguist, Dr. Earl W. Stevick, does not lend itself readily to presentation on magnetic tapes.*

*FSI is indebted to Warren Ziegler and Marcelle Carlier of the Agency for International Development for early encouragement and financial support for the development of Lao teaching material. FSI also gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education in the development and publication of this volume.*

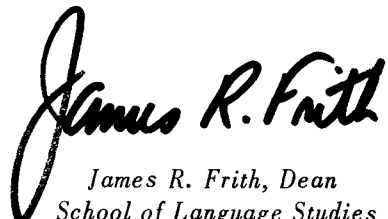
  
James R. Frith, Dean  
School of Language Studies  
Foreign Service Institute

TABLE OF CONTENTS

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| PREFACE .....  | 111 |
| INTRODUCTION .....   | xvi |
| GREETING CYCLE:  |     |
| 'How are you?<br>I'm fine.' .....  | 1   |
| <u>bɔɔ</u> as question word  |     |
| CYCLE 1:   |     |
| 'What's this?<br>It's a book.' .....   | 4   |
| <u>mɛɛn</u> as a copula verb   |     |
| CYCLE 2:   |     |
| 'Whose pen is this?<br>This is your pen.' .....                                  | 7   |
| Personal Pronouns  |     |
| CYCLE 3:   |     |
| 'Is this a book?<br>Yes, it is.' .....   | 12  |
| <u>mɛɛn</u> <u>lɛsw</u> as a confirmatory response                               |     |
| CYCLE 4:   |     |
| 'Where are you going?<br>I'm going to the market.' .....                         | 16  |
| <u>sǎj</u> as a locative question word   |     |
| CYCLE 5:   |     |
| 'He's going to school, isn't he?<br>No, he isn't. He's going to the bank.' ..... | 20  |
| Negative responses to <u>mɛɛn</u> <u>bɔɔ</u> ? questions                         |     |
| CYCLE 6:   |     |
| 'What's your name?<br>My name's...' .....  | 24  |
| Position of <u>njǎŋ</u> 'what?' in the sentence                                  |     |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| CYCLE 7:  |    |
| 'Is she pretty?<br>Yes, she is.'                              | 27 |
| Stative verbs in questions and responses                      |    |
| CYCLE 8:  |    |
| 'Is he a polite person?<br>Yes, he is.'                       | 29 |
| Stative verbs as noun modifiers                               |    |
| CYCLE 9:  |    |
| 'Are you an American?<br>Yes, I am.'                          | 34 |
| <u>pen</u> as a special copula verb                           |    |
| CYCLE 10:   |    |
| 'What country do you come from?<br>I come from Laos.'         | 37 |
| <u>da:j</u> as a question word                                |    |
| CYCLE 11:   |    |
| 'Where is Sedone province?<br>It's in Laos.'                  | 41 |
| <u>juu</u> as a verb of location                              |    |
| CYCLE 12:   |    |
| 'What are you doing?<br>I'm writing a letter.'                | 46 |
| Transitive verbs  |    |
| CYCLE 13:   |    |
| 'Where are we going to eat? Here?<br>No, let's go eat there.' | 49 |
| <u>thɔ̃ʔ</u> as a hortatory particle                          |    |
| CYCLE 14:   |    |
| 'Where did he have his hair cut?<br>At the barbershop.'       | 52 |
| Locatives with verbs of activity                              |    |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| CYCLE 15:   |    |
| 'Where is he going to send the cable?<br>At the Post Office.'   | 56 |
| <u>si</u> as future time particle   |    |
| CYCLE 16:   |    |
| 'Is he coming here?<br>No. He's going over there.'  | 60 |
| <u>nìi</u> , <u>hân</u> , <u>phìi</u> , <u>phùn</u> as Adverbs of Place   |    |
| CYCLE 17:   |    |
| 'Do you know the way to...?<br>Yes. Go straight ahead, then... '  | 62 |
| <u>tháan</u> in directions; <u>hùu</u> 'to know a fact'   |    |
| CYCLE 18:   |    |
| 'Do you know (my younger sister)?<br>Yes, I met (her) at...'  | 66 |
| <u>hùucák</u> 'to know a person'  |    |
| Terms for siblings  |    |
| CYCLE 19:   |    |
| 'What part of Laos do you come from?<br>I come from the (central) part.'  | 72 |
| Compass directions  |    |
| CYCLE 20:   |    |
| 'Where are you going to put it? Over there?<br>Yes, I'm going to put it over there.'                                  | 77 |
| <u>paj</u> and <u>máa</u> as verbs of direction of motion   |    |
| CYCLE 21:   |    |
| 'Where? In this box here?<br>(No) In that bag there.'   | 81 |
| Determiners versus Adverbs of Place   |    |
| CYCLE 22:   |    |
| 'Are you going to change the tire (that is) over here?<br>(No) I'm going to change the tire (that is) over<br>there.' | 85 |

CYCLE 23:

'Is he going to read this book over there?  
 No, he's going to read it over there.' ..... 90

Non-optional jūu in Locative

CYCLE 24:

'How much is one and one?  
 One and one is two.' ..... 98

Cardinal numbers and thāw daj 'how much, many?'

CYCLE 25:

'What day (of the week) is today?  
 Today is (Sunday).' ..... 104

Names of the days of the week.

CYCLE 26:

'What month is it?  
 It's (January).' ..... 108

Names of the months.

CYCLE 27:

'What's the date today?  
 It's (March 23rd, 1970).' ..... 114

Complete dates (day, month, year)

CYCLE 28:

'What are you going to do (today)?  
 (Today) I'm going sightseeing.' ..... 118

Certain Time Expressions

CYCLE 29:

'What time is it?  
 It's (eleven thirty).' ..... 126

móon as 'o'clock, hour'

CYCLE 30:

'What time do you (go to school)?  
 At 9:00 a.m.' .....129

sàw, bāāj, léen, kaan khýyn as divisions of the day

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| CYCLE 31:   |     |
| 'How long will you (practice)?  |     |
| One hour.'  | 135 |
| No. + ( <u>sūamóon</u> , <u>náathíi</u> , <u>pii</u> ) as responses to <u>cák</u> + |     |
| ( <u>sūamóon</u> , etc.) and <u>don paandaj</u> 'how long?'                         |     |
| CYCLE 32:   |     |
| 'Do you have enough time to...?   |     |
| No, I don't. Yes, I do.'  | 140 |
| <u>wéeláa</u> as time for doing something   |     |
| CYCLE 33:   |     |
| 'How will you go?   |     |
| By bus.'  | 146 |
| <u>nám</u> used with types of conveyances   |     |
| CYCLE 34:   |     |
| 'Who will come with you?  |     |
| My friend.'   | 149 |
| <u>nám</u> used for accompaniment and other uses                                    |     |
| CYCLE 35:   |     |
| 'How will you go?   |     |
| I will walk.'   | 153 |
| <u>paj</u> / <u>máj</u> with verbs of locomotion                                    |     |
| CYCLE 36:   |     |
| 'Will you be able to work?  |     |
| Yes.'   | 159 |
| <u>dáj</u> to indicate possibility or ability                                       |     |
| CYCLE 37:   |     |
| 'Do you know how to drive?  |     |
| No, I don't.'   | 163 |
| <u>pen</u> to indicate acquired ability   |     |



CYCLE 38:

- 'Can she type?  
 No, because she doesn't know how.' ..... 167  
pen contrasted with dàj in usage

CYCLE 39:

- 'How many books do you see?  
 Two.' ..... 171  
 Numbers with unit classifiers.

CYCLE 40:

- 'How much did this briefcase cost?  
 500 kips.' ..... 174  
láakháa (price) and cák kíp (How many kips?)

CYCLE 41:

- 'Did you go anywhere?  
 No, I didn't go anywhere.' ..... 182  
njǎn, sǎj, and phǎj as indefinite nouns in negative  
 sentences and in questions

CYCLE 42:

- 'Why does everybody want to meet her?  
 Because she's pretty.' ..... 188  
phǎj phǎj as inclusive indefinite noun

CYCLE 43:

- 'He's impolite isn't he?  
 Yes, he is. Nobody wants to see his face.' .... 193  
phǎj phǎj koo bᵛᵛ... as negative inclusive  
 indefinite nouns

CYCLE 44:

- 'This house is bigger than that one, isn't it?  
 No, it isn't. It's smaller.' ..... 196  
 Comparative of stative verbs

CYCLE 45:

'Which of these three women is the prettiest?  
They are equally pretty.' ..... 201

Stative verb with kwāā mūū as superlative degree  
(of limited number)

CYCLE 46:

'How many dollars do you have left?  
(I have) two dollars left.' ..... 206

lǎa as a verb indicating a remainder of something

CYCLE 47:

'Are we out of coffee?  
No, we still have some.' ..... 210

mót contrasted with lǎa

CYCLE 48:

'Do you still have questions?  
Yes, I (still) do.' ..... 217

nján ... jūū for continuing situations

CYCLE 49:

'Are you still out of work?  
No, I got a job a long time ago.' ..... 220

tse don lèsw used to indicate a situation that  
began in the past and continues into the present

CYCLE 50:

'Your book has already been stolen, isn't that right?  
That's right, it has (already been stolen).' ... 223

thÿyk in passive constructions with certain verbs

CYCLE 51:

'What color are his shoes?  
They're black.' ..... 230

Names of colors

CYCLE 52:

'How well do you sing?  
Not very well.' ..... 234

phòot 'too...' bᵒᵒ... paandaj 'not very...',  
... paandaaj? 'How...?'

CYCLE 53:

'Does he read fast?  
Pretty fast.' ..... 240

...sᵒmkhuan 'pretty...' as a modifier

CYCLE 54:

'Don't eat too much.' ..... 244

jāa in negative request forms

CYCLE 55:

'Where have you been (to)?  
I've been to the doctor's.' ..... 249

paj... máa used to indicate recent completion of  
some activity

CYCLE 56:

'Where did this plane come from?  
It came from Bangkok.' ..... 252

máa tᵛᵛ used to show point of origin

CYCLE 57:

'Why are you washing your hands?  
I'm washing my hands to eat.' ..... 256

Word order of verb phrases of purpose

CYCLE 58:

'From where to where?  
From when to when?' ..... 261

tᵛᵛ... hǎa and câak / tᵛᵛ... thán / hǎa / hòot in  
extent of space or period of time constructions ....

CYCLE 59:

What's the matter with you?  
 I have (a headache).' ..... 269  
pen njǎn 'what's the matter with...' and words  
 referring to illness.

CYCLE 60:

'Why didn't you come to school?  
 Because I was sick.' ..... 274  
pen njǎn... cyn and phō wāā in asking and giving  
 reasons for some activity

CYCLE 61:

'How do you feel about him?  
 I pity him.' ..... 279  
 Verbs of emotion

CYCLE 62:

'Do you think he will come?  
 Yes, I think he'll come.' ..... 284  
 Verbs of thinking and saying with wāā

CYCLE 63:

'Is it dangerous?  
 Yes, it's very dangerous.' ..... 289  
 Stative verbs with lǎaj

CYCLE 64:

'Do you believe he'll pass the exam?  
 Yes, I do.' ..... 296  
sàn bōō? in questions

CYCLE 65:

'You will read, and then what will you do?  
 I'll read, then I'll go eat.' ..... 303  
lèsw as a sentence connective

CYCLE 66:

'Did you write the letter yet?  
 'No, not yet. (or) Yes, I've already written  
 ..... 307

lèsw and njǎŋ as aspect particles

CYCLE 67:

'Have you finished recording?  
 Yes, I have. (or) No, not yet.' ..... 314

Verb Phrase with lèsw lè(əw)

CYCLE 68:

'Who are you going to fix the car for?  
 I'll fix it for him.' ..... 321

hâj as a benefactive verb

CYCLE 69:

'What do you want me to do?  
 I want you to stay with him.' ..... 327

jâak and jâak hâj

CYCLE 70

'What were you going to have him do for you?  
 I was going to have him type letters for me.' .. 333

hâj as benefactive and causative verb

CYCLE 71:

'What's the table made of?  
 Wood.' ..... 338

hēt dùaj with materials

CYCLE 72:

'What did he write with?  
 With a pen.' ..... 345

dùaj with Instrumental

CYCLE 73:

- 'What will you use for making a fire?  
Charcoal.' ..... 351  
Instrumental use of sàj

CYCLE 74:

- 'What's a clock for?  
To tell time.' ..... 357  
míi wàj sǎmlāp to indicate use or purpose of  
something

CYCLE 75:

- 'Where's he stationed now?  
Right now he's in Pakse.' ..... 362  
Time expressions

CYCLE 76:

- 'He will be transferred very soon, is that true?  
That's right.' ..... 369  
Time expressions with direct reference to present  
time.

CYCLE 77:

- How much longer will you be here?  
'Two more weeks.' ..... 373  
fik and nján fik with Time Expressions

CYCLE 78:

- 'What kind of food do you normally like to eat?  
Spicy food.' ..... 383  
Adverbs of frequency

CYCLE 79:

- 'Must he choose a guide?  
Yes, he must.' ..... 387  
Modals: tòon, khúan, âat, khýy, khón

CYCLE 80:

'Have you ever been to Laos?'  
 Yes, I have. (or) No, I never have been.' .... 394  
khéəj to indicate having experienced something

CYCLE 81:

'Is there anybody that is going to help him?'  
 Yes, I am.' ..... 400  
 Indefinite pronoun phǎj after míi

CYCLE 82:

'What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?'  
 Orange juice.' ..... 406

CYCLE 83:

'What do we call a person who is always drunk?'  
 A drunkard.' ..... 409

CYCLE 84:

'What do we call a person who fixes cars?'  
 An auto mechanic.' ..... 415

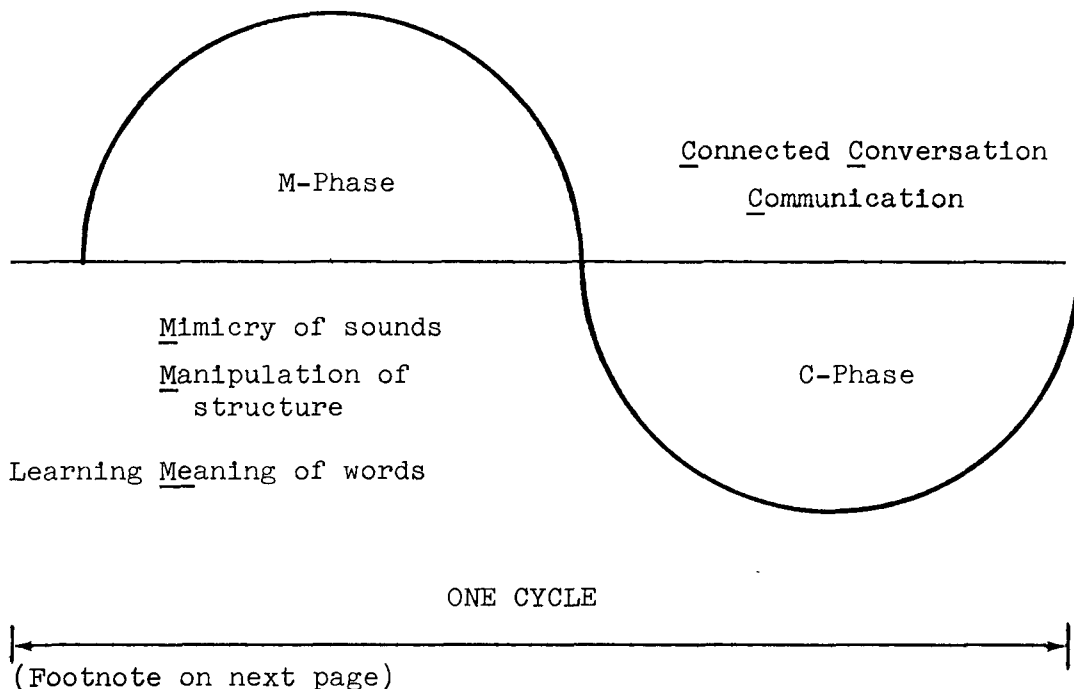
CYCLE 85:

'What do we call a person who pilots a plane?'  
 A pilot.' ..... 419

INTRODUCTION

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Lao to English speakers. Some dialect of Lao is spoken and understood by approximately three million persons in Laos and about ten million in Thailand. The Lao presented in this book is the Vientiane dialect, which is used in all governmental communications. It is spoken in the central part of Laos by approximately 2,000,000 persons and is understood throughout the Kingdom of Laos and in Northeast Thailand.

The material in this text is in the form of a series of 85 'cycles' in the 'microwave' format originated by Dr. Earl W. Stevick of the FSI, and first used in two 'modules' of a course in Swahili.<sup>1</sup> The description of the microwave format that follows is based on these two texts. Each 'unit' of a microwave course is called a cycle and consists of two 'phases'. In the first phase (M-phase) the student learns a small amount of the language and in the second phase (C-phase) he puts it to use. The diagram below illustrates this:





The term 'microwave' (a very short wave) emphasizes the short span of time between the presentation of new material and its actual use in real communication.

The teaching methods<sup>2</sup> used with the M-phase and C-phase may vary a great deal and the teacher should feel free to use the one that seems most effective to him. The sentences in the M-phase are provided with cue words and they may be done like substitution drills, but other types of drill such as mimicry drills, transformation drills, translation drills, etc., should also be used whenever they seem appropriate.

In the C-phase the instructor should exert himself to the fullest extent possible to make everything that is said in class be 'real communication'. Communication can occur only if this condition is met: One person is giving information that another person doesn't have but is interested in having. The C-phase will normally consist of questions and answers, which may be joined together to form short conversational exchanges. In the beginning this will be the limit of the student's capacity. Later on short narrations will be possible and normal. If the students are going to be interested in what is being said it follows that they may wish to have some control over what is being talked about. The instructor should encourage this. This may mean any of several things, depending on the nature of the class and their spirit of independence, etc. It may mean only that the instructor supplies new vocabulary items

---

<sup>1</sup> Swahili: An Active Introduction, General Conversation and Swahili: An Active Introduction, Geography ed. by Earl W. Stevick, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C., 1966

<sup>2</sup> More explicit and detailed suggestions for teaching microwaves are included in Notes to Teachers at the end of the Introduction. Specific advice for full exploitation of the material in each cycle is given in each cycle. All of these suggestions are given in the Lao language for the benefit of Lao teachers who may not understand English very well.

to be used in patterns already learned or it may mean that additional grammatical patterns and vocabulary items may have to be taught. In either case the instructor should allow the student to have a major voice in what is taught. The instructor should be thoroughly familiar with the materials contained in this text so that he may readily skip about when the student's interest leads him to do so. Each cycle forms an independent unit so that taking the cycles out of sequence will not cause any problems that can not be easily dealt with. This text should be looked upon as an aid to teaching and not as a complete course of instruction.

It will normally require from 250 to 300 hours in class to complete this text. A student who has done well in this part of the course should be able to perform all of the following things: order a simple meal, ask for a room in a hotel, ask and give street directions, tell time, handle travel requirements and expressions of politeness plus some of the following: introduce people to each other, discuss his work, give autobiographical information, and discuss current events.

### Notes To Students

- 1) Listen carefully and imitate as closely as you can what the instructor says. Be prepared to try to improve what you say if the instructor doesn't approve of it. Keep in mind that in the beginning of language study you will probably have rather poor ability to monitor your own efforts. The closer your sounds resemble English the farther they will be from Lao.
- 2) You should always know the meaning of anything you say without trying to put a literal word-for-word English translation on it. For example, s̄yā khôj s̄i f̄aa means 'My shirt is blue' but a word-by-word translation of this would be 'shirt I color sky.' All you need to know is what a Lao would say if he wanted to tell you that his shirt was blue.
- 3) The material presented to you in each cycle is very limited both in content and grammatical form. You will not find it difficult to learn the meanings, to pronounce the sentences, or to understand the

grammatical structure presented, but you should keep in mind that you will not only be expected to do the things referred to above, but you will be expected to know how to use these sentences in 'communicative' situations, i.e. situations in which you are telling someone else something he doesn't know, but needs or wants to know.

- 4) The 'Notes' that accompany each cycle contain information of several different kinds: (a) description of the grammatical structure in the cycle, (b) information about the meanings and uses of words, and (c) descriptions of situations in which words are used. This information should help you understand better what is being taught in the cycle. You should study it outside of class after you have learned to use the material in the cycle.
- 5) The 'Application' should be done after completion of all other parts of the cycle. It provides an opportunity for you to test your knowledge of different aspects of the cycle such as grammatical structure, vocabulary, etc.
- 6) The Lao use a writing system which is historically related to that used for Sanskrit. At a later stage in the course you will be asked to learn to read it, but it would impose an undue hardship on you in the beginning to have to learn it, so a special transcription has been devised. It is, however, provided only as an aid to memory. You will learn correct pronunciation by imitating your teacher, being corrected, and trying again, but not by reading. Although all the symbols used in the special transcription are explained in the chart that follows, it will be helpful to keep the following conventions in mind: (a) Vowel length is indicated by doubling the vowel symbol, and (b) The pitch contour on a syllable is indicated by a symbol above the vowel.












EXPLANATION OF THE SPECIAL TRANSCRIPTION  
USED IN THIS TEXT

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Usual English Letter</u> | <u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--|
| b             | b                           | similar to English <u>b</u> in <u>buy</u>                    |
| p             | p (after s)                 | like the <u>p</u> in <u>spy</u><br>(no puff of air after it) |
| ph            | p                           | like <u>p</u> in <u>pie</u>                                  |
| d             | d                           | similar to English <u>d</u>                                  |
| t             | t (after s)                 | like the <u>t</u> in <u>sty</u><br>(no puff of air after it) |
| th            | t                           | <u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u>                                    |
| k             | k (after s)                 | like the <u>k</u> in <u>ski</u><br>(no puff of air after it) |
| kh            | k                           | <u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u>                                   |
| c             | ...                         | somewhat like <u>j</u> in <u>jet</u>                         |
| l             | l                           | <u>l</u> as in <u>long</u>                                   |
| m             | m                           | <u>m</u> as in <u>me</u>                                     |
| h             | h                           | <u>h</u> as in <u>hen</u>                                    |
| f             | f                           | <u>f</u> as in <u>fun</u>                                    |
| s             | s                           | <u>s</u> as in <u>see</u>                                    |
| n             | n                           | <u>n</u> as in <u>need</u>                                   |
| ŋ             | -ng                         | like <u>-ng</u> in <u>sing</u>                               |
| nj            | -ny                         | as in <u>canyon</u>  |
| w             | v                           | as in <u>vet</u>   |
| j             | y                           | as in <u>yet</u>   |
| i             | i                           | <u>i</u> as in <u>sip</u>                                    |
| ii            | ee                          | <u>ee</u> as in <u>see</u>                                   |

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| e   | e   | <u>e</u> as in <u>pet</u>                      |
| ee  | ay  | <u>a</u> as in <u>date</u>                     |
| ɛ   | a   | <u>a</u> as in <u>cat</u>                      |
| ɛɛ  | a   | <u>a</u> as in <u>fan</u>                      |
| y   | u   | somewhat like <u>u</u> in <u>sugar</u>         |
| yy  | ... | nothing like it in English                     |
| ə   | uh  | like <u>a</u> in <u>Cuba</u>                   |
| əə  | ... | similar to British pronunciation of <u>sir</u> |
| a   | u   | somewhat like <u>u</u> in <u>fun</u>           |
| aa  | ah  | <u>a</u> as in <u>father</u>                   |
| u   | oo  | <u>oo</u> as in <u>look</u>                    |
| uu  | ou  | like <u>oo</u> in <u>boot</u>                  |
| o   | o   | <u>o</u> as in <u>cone</u> but shorter         |
| oo  | o   | <u>o</u> as in <u>so</u>                       |
| ɔ   | ... | .....  |
| oo  | aw  | <u>aw</u> as in <u>law</u>                     |
| la, ua, iw, ew, eew, ɛw,<br>uj, ooj, ya, yaj, and uaj |     | have no counterparts in English                |
| aw  | ow  | <u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u>                     |
| aaw   | ow  | like <u>ow</u> above but longer                |
| aj  | y   | <u>y</u> as in <u>my</u>                       |
| aaaj  | y   | like <u>y</u> in <u>my</u> but longer          |
| oj  | oy  | <u>oy</u> as in <u>boy</u>                     |
| ooj   | oy  | like <u>oy</u> as in <u>boy</u> but longer     |

TONES IN LAO

There are six tones in Lao. The pitch contours, names, and symbols for them are illustrated below:

|         | khaa  | khāā  | khàa   | khǎa   | kháaw   | khâw   |
|---------|---|---|--|--|---|--|
| Pitch   |   |   |   |  |   |  |
| Contour |  |    |  |   |   |   |
| Names   | LOW   | MID   | HIGH<br>FALLING  | LOW<br>RISING  | HIGH  | LOW<br>FALLING   |
| Symbol  | NO<br>MARK  |  |  |  |  |  |

ບົດແນະນຳສຳລັບນາຍຄູ (Notes to the Teacher)

ບົດຮຽນພາສາລາວແຕ່ລະບົດຢູ່ໃນປື້ມຕົວນັ້ນປະກອບດ້ວຍສອງພາກດ້ວຍກັນຄື ພາກ M ແລະພາກ C ຈຶ່ງແຕ່ລະພາກອາດຈະປະກອບດ້ວຍຫລາຍໆຕອນ. ຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຕາມຫ້າມະດາຕອນນຶ່ງຈະສອນການຖາມ ແລະອີກຕອນນຶ່ງຈະສອນການຕອບຄຳຖາມ ຈຶ່ງໃນພາກນຶ່ງອາດຈະມີດ້ວຍກັນຫລາຍຕອນ. ສ່ວນພາກ C ກໍ່ ແມ່ນການຝຶກຫັດສິ່ງທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຄືນໂດຍນັກຮຽນເອງ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່າ ນັກຮຽນຈະຖືກ ປ່ອຍໃຫ້ຖາມກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການຄວບຄຸມຂອງນາຍຄູ.

ເມື່ອເວລາສອນພາກ M ແຕ່ລະຕອນທ່ານຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປີດປື້ມໄວ້ກໍ່ໄດ້ແລະຈຶ່ງແບ່ງການສອນຂອງ ຫ້າມອອກດັ່ງນີ້: (1) ເວົ້າແຕ່ລະປາຍໂຍກໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຟັງດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວຫ້າມະດາ. (2) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນ ເວົ້າຄຳສັບທີ່ມີເສັ້ນຂີດກ້ອງຕາມຫ້າມໃຫ້ລຽນແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຄວາມຫມາຍຂອງມັນ. (3) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າປາຍໂຍກຕາມຫ້າມຈົນລຽນ ແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງ. ຖ້າວ່າປາຍໂຍກທີ່ສອນຫາກຍາວເກີນໄປ ກໍ່ຈຶ່ງແບ່ງສອນເທື່ອລະນ້ອຍດ້ວຍການເລ່ມຕົ້ນແຕ່ຫາຍປາຍກ່ອນໄປ.

ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງເລັ່ງຄັດຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນ ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍ່ຈຶ່ງພາຍາຍາມຊ່ອຍ ແກ້ໄຂໃຫ້ມັນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍ່ຈຶ່ງຊື່ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຫັນວ່າລາວເວົ້າຫຍັງຜິດໂດຍການເວົ້າຕາມສຽງທີ່ ຜິດຂອງລາວໃຫ້ລາວຟັງກ່ອນ ແຕ່ຢ່າໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າສຽງທີ່ຜິດຕາມ; ໃຫ້ລາວມີດຟັງເສັ້ນກ່ອນ. ຕໍ່ໄປກໍ່ທຽບ ສຽງທີ່ຜິດກັບການອອກສຽງທີ່ຖືກໃຫ້ລາວຟັງຈົນລາວຮູ້ແລະໄດ້ຍິນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນ ແລ້ວຈຶ່ງໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າ ຕາມສຽງທີ່ຖືກຈົນເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈຂອງທ່ານ.

ພາກ C ແມ່ນສຳລັບໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຈສິ່ງທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນມາໃນພາກ M . ຈຶ່ງແຕ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ ນຶ່ງເປັນ A ແລະຜູ້ນຶ່ງເປັນ B ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າສືບທະນາກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳຂອງນາຍຄູ. ເຫດທີ່ແຕ່ລະ ຕອນຂອງພາກ C ນັ້ນສິ້ນ ຫລືເປັນພຽງແຕ່ຕົວຢ່າງເທົ່ານັ້ນກໍ່ຍ້ອນວ່າ ຢາກປ່ອຍໂອກາດໃຫ້ນາຍຄູທຳ ການຝຶກຫັດນັກຮຽນໂດຍບໍ່ມີຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່ານາຍຄູຈະເລືອກໃຈຄຳສັບຄຳໃດຈາກບົດ ຮຽນກ່ອນທີ່ນັກຮຽນຈະມາແລ້ວມາໃຈຢືນກັນກໍ່ໄດ້ຫຼັງນັ້ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ມັນຈຶ່ງເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງທີ່ນາຍຄູ ຈະຕ້ອງເຂົ້າໃຈໃນຈຸດປະສົງອັນນີ້.

ຫລັງຈາກການສອນພາກ C ຢ່າງພໍອີກພໍໃຈແລ້ວ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານເຫັນວ່າມີເຮື້ອທີ່ພໍຈະສືບທະນາ ກັນໄດ້ກໍ່ໃຫ້ສືບທະນາກັນໂລດ. ແຕ່ໃນຕອນຕົ້ນງານຈຶ່ງພາກນັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດເວົ້າຫລາຍໆເສັ້ນກ່ອນ ຕໍ່ໄປຈຶ່ງ

ໃຊ້ເວລາສິນທະນາຫລາຍຂຶ້ນ ຊຶ່ງໃນການສິນທະນານີ້ ນາຍຄຣູຈະຕ້ອງເຮັດໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ມີໂອກາດເວົ້າ  
ຫລາຍກວ່າຕົນ. ຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້ານຶ່ງຟັງເລື່ອງຂອງທ່ານແຕ່ຝ່າຍດຽວ.

ດຶງທ່ານຄວນແຕ່ງເລື່ອງຂຶ້ນປະກອບເທື່ອນຶ່ງ ໂດຍອາສີຍຄຳສັບທີ່ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ຮຽນມາແລ້ວ. ຈຶງ  
ແຕ່ງເລື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບວຽກການອັນແຕ່ຈຶງຂອງນັກຮຽນ; ຄືຖ້າຫາກວ່າ ຂະເຈົ້າເປັນນັກການທູດກໍຈຶງ  
ພະຍາຍາມແຕ່ງເລື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງໄປໃນທາງວຽກບ້ານການເມືອງ. ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າເປັນພັດທະນາກອນກໍໃຫ້ແຕ່ງ  
ເລື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບການພັດທະນາສ້າງສາ ຫລືການປຸກຝັງແລະລ້ຽງສັດ. ທັງນີ້ກໍເພື່ອຊ່ອຍໃຫ້ບັນຍາກາດຢູ່  
ໃນຫ້ອງຮຽນມີຊີວິດຊື່ວ່າຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ.



GREETING CYCLE

- A. Repeat each utterance after the instructor.
- B. Give a complete sentence that includes the cue word that the instructor will give you.
- C. Be sure you understand the meaning of each sentence.

M-1

|               |           |                            |            |
|---------------|-----------|----------------------------|------------|
| <u>sábaaj</u> | sábaaj    | to be well,<br>comfortable |            |
| <u>dii</u>    | sábaajdii | good, well                 | Hello! Hi! |

M-2

|            |                |                    |   |
|------------|----------------|--------------------|---|
| <u>boo</u> | sábaajdii boo? | (question<br>word) | How are you?<br>[Good morning,<br>good afternoon,<br>good evening,<br>etc.] |
|------------|----------------|--------------------|---|

|            |                    |     |              |
|------------|--------------------|-----|--------------|
| <u>càw</u> | càw sábaajdii boo? | you | How are you? |
|------------|--------------------|-----|--------------|

M-3

|                |                           |                                 |                      |
|----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| <u>khôpcaj</u> | sábaajdii khôpcaj         | thank you                       | Fine, thank you.     |
| <u>khôj</u>    | khôj sábaajdii<br>khôpcaj | I, me                           | I'm fine, thank you. |
| <u>...dee?</u> | càw dee?                  | and { what,<br>how<br>about...? | And you?             |

C-1

- |              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| A. sábaajdii | A. Hello. [Hi, good morning, etc.] |
| B. sábaajdii | B. Hello. [Hi, good morning, etc.] |

C-2

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. sábaajdií bɔɔ?               | A. How are you?              |
| B. sábaajdií khôɔpcaj, càw dee? | B. Fine, thank you, and you? |
| A. khôj sábaajdií khôɔpcaj      | A. I'm fine, thank you.      |

C-3

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A. càw sábaajdií bɔɔ?                   | A. How are you?                  |
| B. khôj sábaajdií khôɔpcaj,<br>càw dee? | B. I'm fine, thank you, and you? |
| A. khôj sábaajdií khôɔpcaj              | A. I'm fine, thank you.          |

NOTES

- 1) A Lao sentence has two parts: a Subject and a Predicate.

Subject

Predicate

càw

sábaajdií

'You

are well, fine.'

- 2) The Subject is a Noun Phrase. A Noun Phrase is a (1) Noun plus modifiers, determiners, etc. or (2) a Noun Substitute (pronoun, etc.).

Noun Phrase

càw

'you'

- 3) The Predicate is a Verb Phrase. A Verb Phrase is a Verb (or Verbs) with optional preverbal elements and postverbal complements.

Verb Phrase

sábaajdií

'(is/are) well, fine'

- 4) The Subject (NP) precedes the Predicate (VP), thus a Sentence (S) can be written in this way:

S → NP + VP

which means 'A sentence consists of a Noun Phrase preceding a Verb Phrase'.

- 5) A Sentence can be changed into a question by the addition of a question word (Q), thus S + Q.

NP + VP + Q  
càw    sábaajdii    bòò  
 (you    [are] well    Question)

'Are you well?'

APPLICATION

1. khôj is probably the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sentence khôj sábaajdii  
 (a) predicate    (b) subject    (c) question word    (d) none of these.  
 (All answers are at the bottom of the page.)
2. In the sentence sábaajdii bòò, sábaajdii is (a) subject  
 (b) question word    (c) predicate    (d) none of these.
3. In the sentence càw sábaajdii bòò, bòò is (a) the question word  
 (b) predicate    (c) subject    (d) none of these.
4. càw sábaajdii bòò is (a) a statement    (b) a question  
 (c) a command    (d) none of these.
5. bòò càw sábaajdii is (a) a question    (b) a statement  
 (c) a command    (d) none of these.

---

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3a, 4b 5d

6. khôj sábaajdi is (a) a command (b) a question (c) a statement (d) none of these.
7. sábaajdi is (a) a Noun Phrase (b) a Verb Phrase (c) a question word (d) none of these.
8. boo is (a) a Verb Phrase (b) Noun Phrase (c) question word.
9. In càw sábaajdi boo , càw is (a) Noun Phrase (b) Verb Phrase (c) question.
10. In khôj sábaajdi, khôpcaj, càw dee, dee means something like (a) you (b) but (c) ...how about (you) (d) it has no meaning.

CYCLE 1.

M-1

|                |                     |       |                  |
|----------------|---------------------|-------|------------------|
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | an nìi mēen p̄akkaa | pen   | This is a pen.   |
| <u>tó?</u>     | an nìi mēen tó?     | table | This is a table. |
| <u>tān-ìi</u>  | an nìi mēen t̄an-ìi | chair | This is a chair. |
| <u>p̄ym</u>    | an nìi mēen p̄ym    | book  | This is a book.  |
| <u>cià</u>     | an nìi mēen cià     | paper | This is paper.   |

M-2

|             |                   |         |                 |
|-------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------|
| <u>njǎn</u> | an nìi mēen njǎn? | what(?) | What is this?   |
| <u>nàn</u>  | an nàn mēen njǎn? | that    | What is that?   |
| <u>fǎa</u>  | an nàn mēen fǎa   | wall    | That is a wall. |

C-1

|                |                        |                   |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| <u>njǎn</u>    | A. an nìi mēen njǎn?   | A. What is this?  |
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | B. an nìi mēen p̄akkaa | B. This is a pen. |

---

Answers: 6c, 7b, 8c, 9a, 10c

C-2

- njǎŋ      A. an nà̄n mē̄en njǎŋ?                      A. What is that?  
tāŋ-ìi     B. an nà̄n mē̄en tāŋ-ìi                              B. That is a chair.

---

ເມື່ອສອນ ໄຊເກີລ ນູ່ແລ້ວ ຫາມລອງຖາມສະບາຍນັກຮຽນຫາມເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າສາມາດຖາມສະບາຍ  
 ຫາມຄົນໄດ້ລຽນດີບໍ່? ຖາຫາກວ່າຍັງບໍ່ລຽນກໍໃຫ້ຫາມຈິງພາຂະເຈົ້າຫັດເວົ້າອີກແດ່.

---

NOTES

- 1) The Verb Phrase may consist of a Verb (V) with a Noun Phrase complement, thus VP → V + NP.

Verb + NP  
mē̄en      pâakkaa  
 'is            (a) pen'

The following sentence is an example of the copula verb mē̄en followed by NP complement:

NP      +      V      +      NP  
annìi      mē̄en      pâakkaa  
 'This            is            (a) pen.'

- 2) The NP an nìi is made up of a Noun an plus a determiner nìi. an belongs to a special class of nouns that serve as substitutes for other nouns. They are called 'classifiers.' an can be used as a substitute for any inanimate noun (pen, chair, etc.). an nìi means 'this' or 'this one'.
- 3) tāŋ ìi, tó?, pâakkaa and other nouns like this (things that can be counted) have no number indication in Lao, so they may refer to one or more than one thing according to the construction they occur in.

- 4) njǎn 'what?' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for all inanimate nouns and for some other nouns in questions. Observe the following example:

|           | NP            | + | V (copula)   | + | NP          |                |
|-----------|---------------|---|--------------|---|-------------|----------------|
| Question: | <u>an n̄i</u> |   | <u>m̄ɛɛn</u> |   | <u>njǎn</u> |                |
|           | (this         |   | is           |   | what)       | 'What's this?' |
| Response: | <u>an n̄i</u> |   | <u>m̄ɛɛn</u> |   | <u>tóʔ</u>  |                |
|           | 'This         |   | is           |   | (a) table.' |                |

njǎn is in the same position in the sentence as the word it replaces. (NOTE: This is not the case with English what.)

What is this?  
This is a book.)

5. m̄ɛɛn 'be' is used to indicate the identification of things in the example given. It has other uses, but is much more restricted in use than 'be' in English.

#### APPLICATION

In the sentence an n̄i m̄ɛɛn p̄âakkaa.

1. an n̄i is (a) predicate (b) subject (c) Noun Phrase complement (d) Verb Phrase.
2. m̄ɛɛn is (a) Noun Phrase (b) question (c) Verb (d) complement of the verb.
3. p̄âakkaa is (a) Verb Phrase (b) Noun Phrase complement of m̄ɛɛn (c) question (d) predicate.

---

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3b

In the sentence an nìi mēsēn njǎŋ

4. njǎŋ refers to (a) an animate noun (b) the Verb Phrase  
(c) an inanimate noun.
5. mēsēn is (a) a copula verb (b) it is used to identify the  
subject (c) it is a Noun Phrase (d) it is none of these.
6. an is a classifier and refers to things, not people. True  
or false?
7. nìi (a) means 'this' (b) it is a Noun Phrase (c) it is  
a determiner (d) it precedes the classifier.
8. tāŋ lì may mean (a) 'a chair' (b) 'chair' (c) 'the chair'  
(d) 'chairs' (e) 'the chairs' (f) any of these.

CYCLE 2

M-1

|                  |  |           |                       |
|------------------|--|-----------|-----------------------|
| <u>khôj</u>      | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>khôj      | I, me     | This is my pen.       |
| <u>càw</u>       | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>càw       | you       | This is your pen.     |
| <u>láaw</u>      | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>láaw      | he, she   | This is his(her) pen. |
| <u>phùakháw</u>  | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>phùakháw  | we (all)  | This is our pen.      |
| <u>phùakkhôj</u> | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>phùakkhôj | we        | This is our pen.      |
| <u>phùakcàw</u>  | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>phùakcàw  | you (pl.) | This is your pen.     |
| <u>khácàw</u>    | an <u>nìi</u> <u>mēsēn</u> <u>pâakkaa</u><br>khácàw    | they      | This is their pen.    |

---

Answers: 4c, 5a-b, 6true, 7a and c, 8f

M-2

|                 |                               |          |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| <u>sǒdam</u>    | an nīi mēēn sǒdam<br>phǎj?    | pencil   | Whose pencil is this?   |
| <u>sǒkhǎaw</u>  | an nīi mēēn sǒkhǎaw<br>phǎj?  | chalk    | Whose chalk is this?    |
| <u>mūak</u>     | an nīi mēēn mūak<br>phǎj?     | hat      | Whose hat is that?      |
| <u>sŷa-fǒn</u>  | an nīi mēēn sŷa-fǒn<br>phǎj?  | raincoat | Whose raincoat is this? |
| <u>khán-hōm</u> | an nīi mēēn khán-hōm<br>phǎj? | umbrella | Whose umbrella is this? |

Supplement to Cycle 2

|                |                                 |   |
|----------------|---------------------------------|---|
| M-1            | khǒothòot                       | Excuse me. Pardon me. 'I'm sorry!'<br>'I apologize.'      |
|                | bᵛᵛ pen njǎṅ                    | It's O.K., Sure! That's all right! It does<br>not matter! |
|                | khᵛᵛpcaj                        | Thank you.  |
|                | bᵛᵛ pen njǎṅ                    | You are welcome. Don't mention it.                        |
| <u>njǎṅ</u>    | A. khǒothòot, an nīi mēēn njǎṅ? | Excuse me, what is this?                                  |
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | B. an nīi mēēn pâakkaa.         | This is a pen.  |
|                | A. khᵛᵛpcaj                     | Thank you.  |
|                | B. bᵛᵛ pen njǎṅ                 | You are welcome.  |

---

ໄລຍະນີ້ ໄລຍະຕໍ່ຕາມຈະຕ້ອງກຳກັບນຳການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ ກ່ອນທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າ  
ຈະເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊົນກັບການເວົ້າຫລືການອອກສຽງທີ່ຜິດພາດ.

---



C-1

- (pâakkaa) A. an nîi mēēn pâakkaa (pen) Whose pen is this?  
phǎj?
- (khōj) B. an nîi mēēn pâakkaa (I) This is my pen.  
khōj

---

ການປ່ອຍປະລະເລີຍຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນໃນຂັ້ນນີ້ ຈະເປັນການສ້າງປັນຫາໃຫ້ແກ້ຫາມເອງໃນພາຍຫນ້າ. ສະນັ້ນ "ຢ່າເສັຽຫຍາປົກຂໍ້ຫມາ!" ຈົ່ງຊ່ອຍແນບນຳນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ!

---

C-2

- (njǎn) A. an nîi mēēn njǎn? (what) What is this?
- (mûak) B. an nîi mēēn mûak (hat) This is a hat.
- (phǎj) A. an nîi mēēn mûak (who) Whose hat is this?  
phǎj?
- (láaw) B. an nîi mēēn mûak (he) This is his/her  
láaw hat.

NOTES

- 1) The NP may consist of N + NP in which the second noun or Noun substitute stands in the relationship of 'possessor'<sup>1</sup> to the main or 'head' noun, as in this example:

|                |   |                |
|----------------|---|----------------|
| Noun           | + | NP (Possessor) |
| <u>pâakkaa</u> |   | <u>khōj</u>    |
| pen            |   | I              |
| 'my pen'       |   |                |

<sup>1</sup>The term 'possessor' implies a varied set of structural and semantic relationships besides simple ownership in Lao just as it does in English.

- 2) phǎj 'who, whose, whom' is a question word substitute. It substitutes only for animate nouns and noun substitutes in questions.

Noun + NP (Possessor)

|                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | <u>láaw</u> |
| pen            | he          |
| 'his pen'      |             |

|                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | <u>phǎj</u> |
| pen            | who         |
| 'whose pen'    |             |

phǎj occupies the same position in the sentence as the noun it substitutes for.

- 3) Since the form of the pronoun does not change in Lao (like English I, me, my, mine, etc.) its structural relationship is determined by the kind of construction it is in, thus:

- (a) As subject of a sentence

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| <u>khôj</u> | <u>sábaajdi</u> |
| <u>I</u>    | am fine.        |

- (b) As 'possessor' after the 'head' noun

|                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| <u>pâakkaa</u> | <u>khôj</u> |
| pen            | <u>my</u>   |
| 'my pen'       |             |

- 4) Although sex distinctions are not indicated in the Lao pronoun, number distinctions are:

| <u>Singular</u> | <u>Plural</u>                 |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| <u>khôj</u> 'I' | <u>phùak</u> <u>khôj</u> 'we' |
|                 | <u>phùak</u> <u>háv</u> 'we'  |

càw 'you'                      phùak càw 'you (plural)'  
láaw 'he, she'                khácàw 'they'

Both phùak háw and phùak khôj mean 'we'. phùak háw is used when the speaker wishes to include the hearer in his reference. phùak khôj is used when he does not wish to include the hearer.

None of these pronouns may be used to refer to inanimate object objects, thus láaw does not mean 'it' and khácàw does not refer to 'they' for objects.

APPLICATION

1. In the NP pým càw, càw can be translated as (a) you (b) yours, (c) your (d) none of these.
2. In the NP sđodam khácàw, khácàw means (a) they (b) their (c) theirs (d) none of these.
3. In the NP mủak láaw, láaw means (a) him (b) her (c) she (d) his (e) all of these (if) none of these.
4. In the NP pảakkaa khôj, khôj means (a) I, (b) my (c) me (d) mine.
5. In the NP tỏ?phủakcàw, phủakcàw means (a) one male person (b) more than one person (c) one female person.
6. In the NP cia phảj, phảj (a) is a question word, (b) means 'what?' (c) means 'whose' (d) has no meaning.
7. càw pảakkaa means (a) my pen (b) your pen (c) his pen (d) it has no meaning.
8. Translate the following NP into English: (a) sđodam phảj (b) mủak láaw (c) tản ìi càw (d) cia khôj (e) pým khácàw (f) pảakkaa phủakcàw (g) sỷa fỏn phảj (h) to?phủakhaw

---

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b and d, 4b, 5b, 6a and c, 7d, 8whose pencil, his/her hat, your (sg.) chair, my paper, their book, your (pl.) pen, whose raincoat, our table.

CYCLE 3

M-1

|                 |                           |                    |                                |
|-----------------|---------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| <u>hóonkaan</u> | nìi mēēn hóonkaan<br>bɔɔ? | office<br>building | Is this an office<br>building? |
| <u>hōonkaan</u> | nìi mēēn hōonkaan<br>bɔɔ? | office             | Is this an office?             |
| <u>hóonhían</u> | nìi mēēn hóonhían<br>bɔɔ? | school             | Is this a school?              |
| <u>hóonmɔɔ</u>  | nìi mēēn hóonmɔɔ<br>bɔɔ?  | hospital           | Is this a hospital?            |
| <u>hóonsǎaj</u> | nìi mēēn hóonsǎaj<br>bɔɔ? | post office        | Is this a post<br>office?      |

M-2

|                      |                                      |                   |                                     |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <u>tálâat</u>        | mēēn lèsw, nìi mēēn<br>tálâat        | market            | Yes, this is a<br>market.           |
| <u>hóonhéem</u>      | mēēn lèsw, nìi mēēn<br>hóonhéem      | hotel             | Yes, this is a<br>hotel.            |
| <u>hàan aahǎan</u>   | mēēn lèsw, nìi mēēn<br>hàan aahǎan   | restaurant        | Yes, this is a<br>restaurant.       |
| <u>komtamlûat</u>    | mēēn lèsw, nìi mēēn<br>komtamlûat    | police<br>station | Yes, this is the<br>Police Station. |
| <u>khàaj thǎhǎan</u> | mēēn lèsw, nìi mēēn<br>khàaj thǎhǎan | military<br>base  | Yes, this is the<br>military base.  |

C-1

- hóonhếem A. nìi mềēn hóonhếem hotel A. Is this a hotel?  
 ບວວ?  
 B. mềēn lèsw, nìi mềēn B. Yes, this is a  
 hóonhếem hotel.

ຈົງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຊົມໃສ່ສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆ ແລະຖາມແລະຕອບກັນ.

C-2

- pỳm A. an nìi mềēn pỳm càw ບວວ book A. Is this your book?  
 B. mềēn lèsw, an nìi mềēn B. Yes, this is my  
 pỳm khົງj book.

ໃນຕອນນີ້ກໍ່ເຊິ່ນດຽວກັນ ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມແລະຕອບກັນວ່າອັນໃດແມ່ນຂອງຜູ້ໃດ.

- C-3 A. an nìi mềēn pỳm phắj, A. Whose book is this? Is  
 pỳm càw ບວວ? it yours?  
 B. mềēn lèsw, an nìi mềēn B. Yes, this is my book.  
 pỳm khົງj

ນັກຮຽນດຽວກັນກັບ (1) ແລະ (2) ກ່ອນທີ່ທ່ານຈະເປີດສອນໜ້າຕໍ່ໄປ ທ່ານລອງ  
 ພຍາຍາມປະດິດເຮືອງໃດເຮືອງໜຶ່ງຂຶ້ນຢ່າງສັ້ນໆ ແລະເວົ້າສູ່ນັກຮຽນຟັງ ໂດຍອາສັຍ  
 ຄຳສັບທີ່ຮຽນມາແຕ່ຕົນ ແລະໃຫ້ສັງເກດເບິ່ງວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົາໃຈດີຫລືບໍ່.

NOTES

- 1) One type of Noun Compound is composed of Noun + Noun, in which the second noun stands in a 'modifier' relationship to the first or head noun. The following are examples:

- |    | <u>Noun</u>  | + | <u>Noun</u>      | ('Modifier') |
|----|--------------|---|------------------|--------------|
| 1) | <u>hàan</u>  |   | <u>aahǎan</u>    |              |
|    | shop         |   | food             |              |
|    | 'restaurant' |   |                  |              |
| 2) | <u>hóon</u>  |   | <u>mǒo</u>       |              |
|    | building     |   | medical doctor   |              |
|    | 'hospital'   |   |                  |              |
| 3) | <u>khàaj</u> |   | <u>thāhǎan</u>   |              |
|    | camp         |   | military persons |              |
|    | 'camp, fort' |   |                  |              |
| 4) | <u>sýa</u>   |   | <u>fǒn</u>       |              |
|    | clothing     |   | rain             |              |
|    | 'raincoat'   |   |                  |              |

Another type of Noun Compound is made up of Noun + Verb and is similar to a Sentence:

- |    | Noun        | + | Verb       |
|----|-------------|---|------------|
| 1) | <u>sǒo</u>  |   | <u>dam</u> |
|    | stick       |   | black      |
|    | 'pencil'    |   |            |
| 2) | <u>khán</u> |   | <u>hōm</u> |
|    | instrument  |   | to shade   |
|    | 'umbrella'  |   |            |

- 2) n̄i means 'here, this, this one' when it occurs alone. It may also occur after the classifier as a determiner, as in an n̄i 'this, this one'.
- 3) Observe the relationship between a question with m̄ɛɛn bɔɔ and its affirmative response:

Question:    NP + m̄ɛɛn +    NP    + bɔɔ  
               n̄i        m̄ɛɛn        hóoŋm̄ɔ        bɔɔ

Affirmative  
 Response:                m̄ɛɛn                                l̄ɛɛw

Both the Subject NP and the Complement NP are usually absent in the response; however, the response may contain a complete confirmation after the m̄ɛɛn l̄ɛɛw response, as follows:

Question:        n̄i m̄ɛɛn hóoŋm̄ɔ bɔɔ?

Response:        m̄ɛɛn l̄ɛɛw , n̄i m̄ɛɛn hóoŋm̄ɔ

#### APPLICATION

1. In the Noun Compound s̄ȳa f̄ɔ̄n , s̄ȳa is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier of f̄ɔ̄n (c) the classifier (d) none of these.
2. In the Noun Compound h̄aan aah̄aan, aah̄aan is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier (c) a question word (d) none of these.
3. In the Noun Compound hóoŋ h̄ían, h̄ían is (a) a Noun, (b) a verb (c) VP (d) none of these.
4. khán hóm is (a) a NP (b) VP (c) S (d) Noun Compound (e) none of these (f) all of these.
5. dam s̄ɔ̄ means (a) black stick (b) pencil (c) pen (d) it is meaningless.

---

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3b, 4a and d, 5d

6. 'Fort' is translated into Lao, as (a) s̄yā thāhǎan (b) khàaj thāhǎan (c) hóon thāhǎan (d) khàaj aahǎan (e) thāhǎan khàaj.
7. 'Raincoat' is translated into Lao as (a) fǒn s̄yā (b) fǒn mǎo (c) s̄yā fǒn (d) s̄yā p̄ym (e) s̄yā fǒn.
8. A correct response to the question n̄i m̄ēn hóonmǎo bǎo is (a) l̄ēw (b) l̄ēw bǎo (c) m̄ēn l̄ēw (d) m̄ēn (e) m̄ēn bǎo (f) m̄ēn l̄ēw, n̄i m̄ēn hóon mǎo
9. If you wanted to find out if something was a book, what would you say?
10. If you wanted to find out if a certain umbrella belonged to a particular person, what would you say?

CYCLE 4

M-1

|                   |                             |             |                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <u>tálâat</u>     | khácàw si paj<br>tálâat     | market      | They are going to the market.         |
| <u>hóonhían</u>   | khácàw si paj<br>hóonhían   | school      | They are going to school.             |
| <u>hóonsǎaj</u>   | khácàw si paj<br>hóonsǎaj   | post office | They are going to the post office.    |
| <u>hóonmǎo</u>    | khácàw si paj<br>hóonmǎo    | hospital    | They are going to the hospital.       |
| <u>komtamlûat</u> | khácàw si paj<br>komtamlûat | police      | They are going to the police station. |

---

Answers: 6b, 7c, 8c,d,f, 9(an) n̄i m̄ēn p̄ym bǎo, 10(an) n̄i m̄ēn khán hōm càw bǎo (or) (an) n̄i m̄ēn khán hōm phǎj



M-2

|                 |                      |           |                       |
|-----------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| <u>càw</u>      | càw si paj sǎj?      | you       | Where are you going?  |
| <u>láaw</u>     | láaw si paj sǎj?     | he, she   | Where is he going?    |
| <u>phùakháw</u> | phùakháw si paj sǎj? | we        | Where are we going?   |
| <u>phùakcàw</u> | phùakcàw si paj sǎj? | you (pl.) | Where are you going?  |
| <u>khácàw</u>   | khacàw si paj sǎj?   | they      | Where are they going? |

M-3

|  |                                      |                    |                                       |
|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <u>hóon-</u><br><u>síinée</u>                | càw si paj hóon-<br>síinée bōō?      | theatre            | Are you going to the theatre?         |
| <u>wāt</u>                                   | càw si paj wāt<br>bōō?               | temple             | Are you going to the temple?          |
| <u>hàan-</u><br><u>khǎaj-</u><br><u>kêep</u> | càw si paj hàan-<br>khǎaj-kêep bōō?  | shoe<br>store      | Are you going to the shoe store?      |
| <u>hàan sǎem-</u><br><u>sǎaj</u>             | càw si paj hàan-sǎem<br>sǎaj bōō?    | beauty-<br>parlor  | Are you going to the beauty parlor?   |
| <u>hóonkaan-</u><br><u>pháasǐi</u>           | càw si paj hóonkaan-<br>pháasǐi bōō? | custom<br>house    | Are you going to the custom house?    |
| <u>hóonphím</u>                              | càw si paj hóonphím<br>bōō?          | printing<br>office | Are you going to the printing office? |

M-4

|     |          |       |                     |
|-----|----------|-------|---------------------|
| paj | paj      | to go | Yes, I'm going.     |
| bōō | bōō paj. | no    | No, I am not going. |

C-1

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. càw si paj hàan khǎaj-kêep bɔɔ?   | A. Are you going to the shoe store?   |
| B. paj, khǎaj si paj hàan-khǎaj kêep | B. Yes, I am going to the shoe store. |

C-2

- |                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. càw si paj hóonkaan-pháasǐi bɔɔ? | A. Are you going to the custom house? |
| B. bɔɔ, bɔɔ paj                     | B. No, I'm not going.                 |

C-3

- |                                 |          |                           |
|---------------------------------|----------|---------------------------|
| <u>láaw</u> A. láaw si paj sǎj? | he, she  | A. Where is he going?     |
| <u>hóonhían</u> B. láaw si paj  | school   | B. He is going to school. |
|                                 | hóonhían |                           |

ຢ່າໃຫ້ຄຳໃຫມ່ອື່ນອີກ ແຕ່ພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນເວົ້າປາຍໂຍກຫາກຈຳລັງຮຽນຢູ່ໃຫ້ຄອງ.

C-4

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. càw si paj hóonສ້າj bɔɔ?          | A. Are you going to the post office?  |
| B. mɛ̄ɛn lèsw, khǎaj si paj hóonສ້າj | B. Yes, I'm going to the post office. |

ຢ່າລືມວ່າເມື່ອມັກຮຽນເວົ້າຫຍັງ ຂະນາຈະຕ້ອງເວົ້າດ້ວຍຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ.

NOTES

- 1) Verbs of motion frequently have locative (place word) complements.

|        |   |               |   |             |   |                 |
|--------|---|---------------|---|-------------|---|-----------------|
| NP     | + | Pre-V         | + | V (motion)  | + | Loc             |
| khácàw |   | si            |   | paj         |   | tálâat          |
| they   |   | { will<br>are |   | go<br>going |   | (to the) market |

No relational word is necessary between the verb of motion and the place expression.

- 2) sǎj 'where' is a question word that stands in a substitute relationship with locatives:

Question: càw si paj sǎj ? 'Where are you going?'

Response: khôj si paj tálâat 'I'm going to the market.'

si is a pre-verb used to indicate future action here.

- 3) mɛɛn lɛɛw is an acceptable affirmative response to any question with bɔɔ as the question word.

Question: càw si paj hóonsǎaj Are you going to Post  
bɔɔ? Office?

Affirmative

Response: mɛɛn lɛɛw, (khôj si Yes, (I'm going to the  
paj hóonsǎaj) Post Office).

The confirmation part of the response is optional, although fairly common.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj tálat, the action (a) has already taken place (b) will take place in the future (c) takes place regularly (d) is taking place at present (e) it's impossible to tell when the action takes place.
2. In the sentence khácàw si paj hóonmđo, hóonmđo is (a) NP, (b) VP (c) locative (d) all of these.
3. In the sentence above, si paj is (a) a pre-verb + V (b) NP (c) VP (d) the predicate.
4. Which of the following is a possible response to the question paj sǎj ? : (a) paj tálat (b) hóonsǎaj (c) mēēn lēsēw (d) paj pým (e) khđj si paj.
5. Which of the following is a correct response to the question phuakcàw si paj komtamluat bōō : (a) si paj (b) càw bōō (c) paj lēsēw (d) mēēn lēsēw, phuakhaw si paj komtamluat (f) paj (g) All except b are possible answers.

CYCLE 5

M-1

|  |   |
|--|---|
| càw si paj hóonhían mēēn<br>bōō?       | You are going to school<br>aren't you?        |
| an nli mēēn pǎakkaa mēēn<br>bōō?       | This is a pen, isn't it?                      |
| láaw si paj khàaj-thāhǎan<br>mēēn bōō? | He's going to the military<br>base, isn't he? |
| láaw si paj hāan aahǎan<br>mēēn bōō?   | He is going to the<br>restaurant, isn't he?   |
| nli mēēn komtamluat mēēn bōō?          | This is the police station,<br>isn't it?      |

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2a and c, 3a, 4a, 5g

M-2

bṵṵ mēēn, láaw si bṵṵ paj  
hóonhém,

No, he is not going to  
the hotel.

láaw si paj hāan aahāan

He is going to the  
restaurant.

bṵṵ mēēn, an nīi bṵṵ mēēn p̄m,  
an nīi mēēn c̄la

No, this is not a book.

bṵṵ mēēn, khōj si bṵṵ paj  
hóonkaan,

This is paper.

khōj si paj hóonśāaj

No, I'm not going to the  
office building.

bṵṵ mēēn, nīi bṵṵ mēēn  
hóonhém

I'm going to the Post  
Office.

nīi mēēn hāan aahāan

No, this is not the hotel.

This is the restaurant.

C-1

(hāan aahāan) A. láaw si paj hāan  
aahāan, mēēn bṵṵ?

restaurant He is going to  
the restaurant  
isn't he?

B. bṵṵ mēēn, láaw si  
paj hóonhém

hotel No, he is going  
to the hotel.

---

ໃນເວລາສອນນັກຮຽນ ໃຫ້ພະຍາຍາມເວົ້າດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວສົມຄວນ ຢ່າເວົ້າຊ້າເກີນໄປຈົນພິດຫັມມະດາ.  
ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງຫຼີກຜິວຜ່າໃຈການເວົ້າຢ່າງຫັມມະດາແຕ່ດຽວນີ້ໄປ.

---

C-2

- (tó?) A. an nīi mēēn tó?, table This is a table,  
mēēn bōw? isn't it?
- (tāŋ lī) B. bōw mēēn, an nīi chair No, this is a  
mēēn tāŋ lī chair.

ຫລັງຈາກຟັງເບິ່ງບັນຮຽນຂອງຫນ້າພາສາລາວແລ້ວ ຫນ້າຄິດວ່າຄົນລາວຕາມຈິນນະບົດ ຫລືຜູ້  
ຝ່າຍ ຝັ່ງ ຫຍັງບໍ່ລຽບກັບສຽງຂອງບັນຮຽນຂອງຫນ້າຈະສາມາດເຂົ້າໃຈຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່?

C-3

- (hōwŋkaan) A. nīi mēēn hōwŋkaan, office This is an office  
mēēn bōw? isn't it?
- (hōwŋhían) B. bōw mēēn, nīi bōw classroom No, this is not  
mēēn hōwŋkaan, an office. This  
nīi mēēn hōwŋhían is a classroom.

ຫມາຍເຫດ: "ບໍ່ແມ່ນ" ແມ່ນຄຳຕອບຕໍ່ຄຳຖາມທີ່ໃຊ້ "ແມ່ນບໍ່?" ເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ; ບໍ່ແມ່ນຕໍ່ຄຳຖາມດ້ວຍຄຳວ່າ  
"ບໍ່?". ເຈົ້ນ: "ເຈົ້າສິໂປບໍ່?" "ບໍ່, ບໍ່ໄປ"; "ເຈົ້າສິໂປແມ່ນບໍ່?" "ບໍ່ແມ່ນ, ຜູ້ນັ້ນສິໂປ."

NOTES

- 1) mēēn bōw can be attached to any statement (S + mēēn bōw).  
The usual affirmative response is mēēn lèēw with or without  
confirmatory statement. The usual negative response is bōw  
mēēn plus a Statement of the actual facts.

Question: láaw sī paj hāan aahāan, mēēn bōw?

Affirmative

Response: mēēn lèēw, (láaw sī paj hāan aahāan)

Negative

Response: bōw mēēn, láaw sī paj hōoŋhēem

APPLICATION

1. Which of the following responses is a correct negative response to láaw si paj hāan aahāan, mēēn bōō? (a) bōō, (b) bōō mēēn, (c) bōō paj (d) bōō hāan aahāan (e) bōō mēēn, láaw si paj hoonhēem.
2. Which of these sentences is correct (a) láaw bōō si paj hoonhian (b) láaw si bōō paj hoonhian, (c) laaw si paj bōō hoonhian (d) laaw bōō paj si hoonhian.
3. Which of these sentences is correct (a) nīi mēēn bōō hoonhēem, (b) nīi bōō mēēn hoonhēem (c) hoonhēem bōō nīi (d) bōō nīi mēēn hoonhēem.
4. Disagree with this statement: láaw si paj hoonkaan.
5. Disagree with this sentence: an nīi mēēn p̄m
6. Translate the following sentences into English (a) khácaw si paj hoonkaan (b) khōj si bōō paj tálâat (c) phuakcaw si paj hāan aahāan, mēēn bōō? (d) caw si bōō paj komtamluat, mēēn bōō? (e) laaw si paj khāajthāhāan (f) caw si paj sǎj (g) phuakhaw si bōō paj hoonmōō (h) caw si paj hoonhēem, mēēn bōō?

---

Answers: 1b and e, 2b, 3b, 4láaw si bōō paj hoonkaan, 5an nīi bōō mēēn p̄m, 6(a) They're going to the the office. (b) I'm not going to the market. (c) You're going to the restaurant, aren't you? (d) You're not going to the Police Station, are you? (e) We're not going to the army post. (f) Where are you going? (g) We're not going to the hospital. (h) You're going to the hotel, aren't you?

CYCLE 6

M-1

|                                 |                                 |             |                                  |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <u>súksǒmbuun</u>               | khôj s̄y s̄y súksǒmbuun         | Souksomboun | My name is Souksomboun.          |
| <u>māl̄fican</u>                | khôj s̄y māl̄fican              | Malichanh   | My name is Malichanh.            |
| <u>láaw</u>                     | láaw s̄y māl̄fican              | she         | Her name is Malichanh.           |
| <u>khón phūu</u><br><u>n̄i</u>  | khón phūu n̄i s̄y<br>māl̄fican. | this person | This person's name is Malichanh. |
| <u>náaj khúu</u><br><u>khôj</u> | náaj khúu khôj s̄y<br>māl̄fican | my teacher  | My teacher's name is Malichanh.  |

M-2

|  |                                       |                               |  |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| <u>càw</u>   | càw s̄y njǎn?                         | you                           | What's your name?                            |
| <u>nāk hían</u><br><u>phūu n̄i</u>                   | nāk hían phūu n̄i<br>s̄y njǎn?        | this student                  | What's this student's name?                  |
| <u>thāhǎan</u><br><u>phūu n̄i</u>                    | thāhǎan phūu n̄i<br>s̄y njǎn?         | this service-<br>man          | What's this serviceman's name                |
| <u>tamlûat</u><br><u>phūu n̄an</u>                   | tamlûat phūu n̄an<br>s̄y njǎn?        | that police-<br>man           | What's that policeman's name?                |
| <u>khâalàat</u><br><u>sākaan</u><br><u>phūu n̄an</u> | khâalàatsākaan phūu<br>n̄an s̄y njǎn? | that govern-<br>ment official | What's that government of-<br>ficial's name? |



C-1

- |     |                  |     |                   |
|-----|------------------|-----|-------------------|
| càw | A. càw syy njăn? | you | What's your name? |
|     | B. khôj syy...   |     | My name is...     |

C-2

- |         |                       |         |                     |
|---------|-----------------------|---------|---------------------|
| nākhián | A. nākhián càw syy... | your    | Your student's name |
| càw     | mēen boō?             | student | is..., isn't it?    |
|         | B. boō mēen, nākhián  |         | No, my student's    |
|         | khôj syy...           |         | name is...          |

ເວລາຝຶກຫັດບົດນີ້ໃຫ້ພະຍາຍາມໃຊ້ຊື່ແທ້ຂອງຄົນທີ່ເຫັນກັນຢູ່ ຫລື ຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ໜຶ່ງທີ່ທຸກຄົນຮູ້ຈັກ ຕອອດຫຼັງຮູບພາບ  
ຂອງບຸກຄົນສຳຄັນຕ່າງໆ. ຢ່າລືມກັບໄປໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດເທົ່າທີ່ຈະຫລາຍໄດ້.

NOTES

- 1) The verb syy 'to be named' requires an animate noun (or noun substitute) as a subject and a personal name as complement:

|             |   |            |   |                 |
|-------------|---|------------|---|-----------------|
| NP          | + | syy        | + | NP              |
| <u>lāaw</u> |   | <u>syy</u> |   | <u>mālīchan</u> |
| 'She        |   | is named   |   | Malichanh.'     |

A further restriction in this type of sentence is that the name must be appropriate (in terms of sex) to the subject. Malichanh is a female name; Souksomboun is a male name.

The Noun Complement of syy may be replaced by njän in questions:

- Question: càw syy njăn 'What's your name?'
- Response: khôj syy khamdæŋ 'My name's Khamdaeng.'

- 2) Since Lao nouns are not marked for number or for the definite: indefinite category, the Noun Phrase is marked only if it contains a Classifier Phrase. If it contains Classifier+ Determiner, it is marked as definite (not generic). Compare the marked and unmarked examples below:

Generic: thāhǎan '(a) soldier'  
'soldiers'

Definite: thāhǎan phūū nīi 'This soldier'

phūū is a classifier for human nouns. It is used only in the singular. nīi is a determiner. It refers to something near the speaker. phūū nīi is one type of classifier phrase. nān is also a determiner. It refers to something not near the speaker.

APPLICATION

1. A possible answer to the question cāv sŷŷ njǎŋ is (a) khôj mēēn komtamlūat (b) khôj sŷŷ hōŋkaan (c) khôj sŷŷ mālican (d) khôj bōō sŷŷ.
2. Which of the following sentences is correct Lao: (a) nāaj khūu láaw sŷŷ súksōmbuun (b) láaw sŷŷ nākhían (c) tó' sŷŷ njǎŋ (d) pākkaa sŷŷ tǎŋ i (e) láaw mēēn mālican.
3. Translate the following NP into English: (a) nākhían phūū nīi (b) thāhǎan phūū nīi (c) khāalàatsākaan phūū nān (d) tamlūat phūū nān (e) khón phūū nīi (f) nāaj khūu phūū nān.
- 4) Match the questions with correct answers:
 

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) cāv sŷŷ njǎŋ?             | (a) mēēn lèew                  |
| (b) láaw sŷŷ Peter, mēēn bōō? | (b) khôj si paj tálâat         |
| (c) annīi mēēn tó' bōō?       | (c) khôj sŷŷ mālican           |
| (d) cāv si paj sǎj?           | (d) mēēn lèew, annīi mēēn tó'? |

Answers: 1c, 2a, 3this student, this serviceman, that government official, that policeman, this person, that teacher 4a/c, b/a, c/d, d/b

CYCLE 7

M-1

|             |                |                     |                |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <u>sūuŋ</u> | láaw sūuŋ bɔɔ? | to be tall,<br>high | Is he tall?    |
| <u>ŋáam</u> | láaw ŋáam bɔɔ? | to be pretty        | Is she pretty? |
| <u>tùj</u>  | láaw tùj bɔɔ?  | to be fat           | Is he fat?     |
| <u>cɔɔj</u> | láaw cɔɔj bɔɔ? | to be skinny        | Is she skinny? |
| <u>tām</u>  | láaw tām bɔɔ?  | to be short,<br>low | Is he short?   |
| <u>dii</u>  | láaw dii bɔɔ?  | to be good          | Is he good?    |

M-2

|                |                                    |             |   |
|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------|---|
| <u>dii</u>     | láaw pen khón dii<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ?     | good        | He is a good person,<br>isn't he?         |
| <u>cajdii</u>  | láaw pen khón cajdii<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ?  | kind        | He is a kind person,<br>isn't he?         |
| <u>sūa</u>     | láaw pen khón sūa<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ?     | bad         | He is a bad person,<br>isn't he?          |
| <u>kàahǎan</u> | láaw pen khón kàahǎan<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ? | courageous  | He is a courageous<br>person, isn't he?   |
| <u>dú'mān</u>  | láaw pen khón dú'mān<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ?  | studious    | He is a studious<br>person, isn't he?     |
| <u>sálâat</u>  | láaw pen khón sálâat<br>mĕĕn bɔɔ?  | intelligent | He is an intelligent<br>person, isn't he? |

M-3

|                     |                                    |             |                                   |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| <u>khě̌n̄h̄é̌n̄</u> | láaw pen khon<br>khě̌n̄h̄é̌n̄ lǎaj | strong      | He is a very strong person.       |
| <u>ᵛᵛh-εε</u>       | láaw pen khón<br>ᵛᵛn-εε lǎaj       | weak        | He is a very weak person.         |
| <u>caj-ᵛᵛn</u>      | láaw pen khón<br>caj-ᵛᵛn lǎaj      | softhearted | He is a very soft-hearted person. |
| <u>cajkhě̌n̄</u>    | láaw pen khón<br>cajkhě̌n̄ lǎaj    | hardhearted | He is a very hard-hearted person. |
| <u>kh̄īkh̄àan</u>  | láaw pen khón<br>kh̄īkh̄àan lǎaj  | lazy        | He is a very lazy person.         |

C-1

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| A. láaw s̄ūn̄ b̄ōo? | A. Is he tall? |
| B. s̄ūn̄             | B. Yes, he is. |

C-2

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. láaw pen khón (dú?mān)<br>m̄ē̄n̄ b̄ᵛᵛ?        | A. He is a (studious) person,<br>isn't he? |
| B. m̄ē̄n̄ l̄è̄εw, láaw pen<br>khón (dú?mān) lǎaj | B. Yes, he is a very (studious)<br>person. |

ລະວັງຢ່າປອຍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໃຈຕຳວ່າ "ເປັນ" ຢູ່ຕໍ່ຫນ້າຄຳວິເສດ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ລາວເປັນອອນແອ" ຫລື "ລາວເປັນຂ່າມ" ດັ່ງນັ້ນ. ນັກຮຽນນັກໃຈຕຳວ່າຜູ້ສູ້ເມີ ທັງນັ້ນເນື່ອງມາຈາກພາສາພື້ນເມືອງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

CYCLE 8

M-1

|                |                               |                   |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <u>súphàap</u> | khón phūū n̄i<br>súphàap lǎaj | to be<br>polite   | This person is very<br>polite.      |
| <u>sálâat</u>  | khón phūū n̄i<br>sálâat lǎaj  | intelligent       | This person is very<br>intelligent. |
| <u>ηōō</u>     | khón phūū n̄i<br>ηōō lǎaj     | stupid            | This person is very<br>stupid.      |
| <u>uàn</u>     | khón phūū n̄i uàn<br>lǎaj     | fat               | This person is very<br>fat.         |
| <u>cōōj</u>    | khón phūū n̄i<br>cōōj lǎaj    | skinny            | This person is very<br>skinny.      |
| <u>dii</u>     | khón phūū n̄i dii<br>lǎaj     | good              | This person is very<br>good.        |
| <u>sūun</u>    | khón phūū n̄i<br>sūun lǎaj    | tall, high        | This person is very<br>tall.        |
| <u>tia</u>     | khón phūū n̄i tia<br>lǎaj     | short<br>(height) | This person is very<br>short.       |
| <u>tām</u>     | khón phūū n̄i tām<br>lǎaj     | short<br>(height) | This person is very<br>short.       |

M-2

|                     |   |                    |   |
|---------------------|---|--------------------|---|
| <u>phūū-njín</u>    | phūū-njín phūū n̄an<br>pen khón ηáam    | woman              | That woman is a<br>pretty person.           |
| <u>phūū-sǎaw</u>    | phūū-sǎaw phūū n̄an<br>pen khón ηáam    | unmarried<br>woman | That unmarried woman<br>is a pretty person. |
| <u>nākhían njín</u> | nākhían njín phūū<br>n̄an pen khón ηáam | girl<br>student    | That girl student is<br>a pretty person.    |

|   |   |                                   |  |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| <u>léekhǎanū-</u><br><u>kaan</u><br><u>phūubāaw</u> | léekhǎanūkaan phūū<br>nàn pen khón nǎam<br>phūubāaw phūū nàn<br>pen khón nǎam | secretary<br><br>unmarried<br>man | That secretary is<br>a pretty person.<br><br>That unmarried man<br>is handsome person. |
| <u>sáaj-nūm</u>                                     | sáaj-nūm phūū nàn<br>pen khón nǎam  | young man                         | That young man is<br>a handsome person.  |

M-3

|                                   |   |                        |  |
|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------|--|
| <u>phyan càw</u>                  | phyan càw phūū nàn<br>pen khón cāṇḍaj?          | your friend<br>friend  | What sort of person<br>is that friend of<br>yours?     |
| <u>khâalàatsā-</u><br><u>kaan</u> | khâalàatsākaan phūū<br>nàn pen khón<br>cāṇḍaj?  | government<br>official | What sort of person<br>is that government<br>official? |
| <u>náaj-thāhǎan</u>               | náaj-thāhǎan phūū<br>nàn pen khón<br>cāṇḍaj?    | military<br>officer    | What sort of person<br>is that military<br>officer?    |
| <u>náaj-tamlûat</u>               | náaj-tamlûat phūū<br>nàn pen khón<br>cāṇḍaj?    | police<br>officer      | What sort of person<br>is that police<br>officer?      |
| <u>khón-sōṇ-</u><br><u>nǎṅsǎy</u> | khón-sōṇ-nǎṅsǎy<br>phūū nàn pen<br>khón cāṇḍaj? | mailman                | What sort of person<br>is that mailman?                |
| <u>náaj-pháasǎa</u>               | náaj-pháasǎa phūū<br>nàn pen khón<br>cāṇḍaj?    | interpreter            | What sort of person<br>is that interpreter             |

C-1

- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. phūū njíṅ phūū nīi ṅáam bɔɔ? | A. Is this woman pretty? |
| B. láaw ṅáam lǎaj               | B. She is very pretty.   |

C-2

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. sáaj-nūm phūū nàn pen khón<br>cāṅdaj? | A. What sort of person is<br>that young man? |
| B. láaw pen khón sūṅ.                    | B. He is a tall person.                      |

ຈົງພາຍາມໃຊ້ຮູບພາບຕ່າງໆປະກອບໃນການສອນ ຈົ່ງຈະເປັນການຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ວຽກຂອງທ່ານເປົ້າລົງອີກ.  
ທ່ານຄວນເປີດເບິ່ງບົດຮຽນຕໍ່ໄປກ່ອນໂມງເຂົ້າສອນ ແລ້ວຫາງຫາສິ່ງທີ່ຈະຊ່ວຍໃນການສອນໄວ.

NOTES<sup>1</sup>

- 1) Words like sūṅ 'tall', dii 'good' are called stative verbs (V<sub>S</sub>). They function as the Main Verb (MV) in sentences describing the state or condition of something or someone.

|             |      |                |
|-------------|------|----------------|
| NP          | +    | V <sub>S</sub> |
| <u>láaw</u> |      | <u>sūṅ</u>     |
| 'He         | (is) | tall.'         |

Since words having similar meanings are adjectives in English, 'be' must be added in translation.

- 2) The following are transformations of the sentence láaw sūṅ (NP + V<sub>S</sub>):

|                       |                                       |                        |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Negative statement:   | <u>láaw</u> <u>bɔɔ</u> <u>sūṅ</u>     | 'He isn't tall.'       |
| Affirmative question: | <u>láaw</u> <u>sūṅ</u> <u>bɔɔ</u> ?   | 'Is he tall?'          |
| Affirmative response: | <u>sūṅ</u>                            | 'Yes, he is.'          |
| Negative response:    | <u>bɔɔ</u> <u>sūṅ</u> ( <u>lǎaj</u> ) | 'No, not (very) tall.' |

<sup>1</sup>These notes and the application are for use with cycles 7 and 8.

3) Stative verbs may also function as modifiers of NP:

|               |   |                  |
|---------------|---|------------------|
| NP            | + | V <sub>s</sub>   |
| <u>khón</u>   |   | <u>khǎikhàan</u> |
| (person       |   | lazy)            |
| 'lazy person' |   |                  |

4) NP of the type above often occur in sentences with pen as the copula verb:

|             |   |            |   |                      |
|-------------|---|------------|---|----------------------|
| NP          | + | pen        | + | NP                   |
| <u>láaw</u> |   | <u>pen</u> |   | <u>khón sálâat</u>   |
| 'He's       |   | an         |   | intelligent person.' |

mĕĕn boo may be added to form a question.

- 5) lǎaj occurs after V<sub>s</sub> as an intensifier: sũun lǎaj 'very tall', etc.
- 6) Both khĕĕnhĕĕn 'strong, powerful' and õn ɛɛ 'weak, frail, feeble' refer to physical strength.
- 7) Both tia and tām may be used to refer to the shortness of a person, but tām is usually used in referring to objects.
- 8) cāṇdaj 'what kind of, what sort of' is used with khón to inquire about a person's personal traits or physical features:

Question: láaw pen khón cāṇdaj?      What sort of person is she?'

Answer: láaw pen khón ṇáam lǎaj      She's a very pretty person.'

Answer: láaw ṇáam lǎaj      She's very pretty.'



APPLICATION

1. In the sentence càw súp Hàap, súp Hàap is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) Q (d) V<sub>S</sub> (3) none of these.
2. ṅō lǎaj is probably (a) a question (b) a negative statement, (c) an affirmative response (d) a negative response.
3. dii bōō is probably (a) a negative statement (b) a question (c) NP (d) negative response (e) none of these.
4. Which of these sentences has an error in it? (a) càw bōō tja (b) laaw bōō pen sá láat (c) khōj cōoj (d) khon phūū nīi ṅō lǎaj.
5. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) What sort of person are you? (b) That young man is very skinny. (c) That friend of yours is stupid, isn't he? (d) I'm not a very courageous person. (f) She's not very fat. (g) Is she tall?
6. In the sentence khón phūū nīi ṅō lǎaj, phūū is (a) a noun (b) a verb (c) V<sub>S</sub> (d) classifier (e) determiner.
7. In the NP khón cōoj, cōoj is (a) NP (b) V<sub>S</sub> (c) Q (d) modifier of khón (e) none of these.
8. In the VP dii lǎaj, lǎaj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) negative (d) intensifier of dii.

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2c, 3b, 4b, 5(a) càw pen khón càndaj (b) sáaj nūm phūū nān cōoj lǎaj (c) phyan càw phūū nān ṅō, mēen bōō (d) khōj bōō pen khon kàahāan lǎaj (e) laaw bōō tuj (uan) lǎaj (f) laaw sūuṅ bōō, 6a and d, 7b and d, 8d.

CYCLE 9

M-1

|                  |                                      |            |                        |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| <u>améelīkan</u> | càw pen khón améelīkan,<br>mēēn bɔɔ? | American   | Are you an American?   |
| <u>láaw</u>      | càw pen khón láaw,<br>mēēn bɔɔ?      | Laotian    | Are you a Laotian?     |
| <u>tháj</u>      | càw pen khón tháj,<br>mēēn bɔɔ?      | Thai       | Are you a Thai?        |
| <u>kháměen</u>   | càw pen khón kháměen,<br>mēēn bɔɔ?   | Cambodian  | Are you a Cambodian?   |
| <u>aŋkít</u>     | càw pen khón aŋkít,<br>mēēn bɔɔ?     | Englishman | Are you an Englishman? |
| <u>ciin</u>      | càw pen khón ciin,<br>mēēn bɔɔ?      | Chinese    | Are you a Chinese      |

M-2

|                  |  |            |                         |
|------------------|--|------------|-------------------------|
| <u>améelīkan</u> | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón améelīkan. | American   | Yes, I am an American.  |
| <u>njīipūn</u>   | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón njīipūn    | Japanese   | Yes, I am a Japanese.   |
| <u>wīatnáam</u>  | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón wīatnáam   | Vietnamese | Yes, I am a Vietnamese. |
| <u>phāmàa</u>    | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón phāmàa     | Burmese    | Yes, I am a Burmese.    |
| <u>fálāŋ</u>     | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón fálāŋ      | French     | Yes, I am a Frenchman.  |
| <u>jeelāmán</u>  | mēēn lèsw, khôj pen<br>khón jeelāmán   | German     | Yes, I am a German.     |

C-1

- (aŋkít) A. càw pen khón (aŋkít), Englishman A. Are you an  
 mēēn bəw? (Englishman)?
- B. mēēn lèēw, khōj pen B. Yes, I am an  
 khón (aŋkít). Englishman.

ເມື່ອມັກຮຽນເວົ້າຊື່ຂອງປະເທດຕ່າງໆໄດ້ແລ້ວ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຈຳເປັນທ່ານຈະບອກຊື່ປະເທດ  
 ອື່ນໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າອີກກໍໄດ້. ມີຊື່ອຸ່ງທາງແນວໃດທີ່ທ່ານຈະປະດິດຂອງໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນໄດ້ອີກບໍ່?

C-2

- (náajkhúu) A. (náajkhúu) phūū nàn teacher A. Is that (teacher)  
 pen khón aŋkít, an Englishman?  
 mēēn bəw?
- (améelīkan) B. bəw mēēn, náajkhúu American B. No, that  
 phūū nàn bəw pen teacher is  
 khón aŋkít. not an  
 láaw pen khón (Englishman).  
 (améelīkan). He is an  
 (American).

ຜູ້ຮຽນຫວັງວ່າທ່ານຈະເປັນຄົນທີ່ເຄິ່ງຄິດຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງມັກຮຽນ. ມັກຮຽນບາງຄົນອາດຈະບໍ່ມັກລຳໄລ,  
 ແຕ່ທ່ານກໍຢາໂຕຫຼອຍ. ຄູ່ສັດຈະຕ້ອງບໍ່ເປັນຄົນອອນແອ ພາຍລຸນມາທ່ານຈະບໍ່ມີຄວາມກິນແຫນງໃຈ.

NOTES

- 1) The Noun khón 'person' + Name of Country is used to refer to nationals of any country.

Noun + Noun

khón            láaw

Person            Laos

'a Laotian'

- 2) pen 'be' is a copula verb (like mēēn) and occurs only in constructions of this type: NP + pen + NP.

NP + pen + NP

càw            pen            khón láaw

'You are a Lao'.

- 3) Sentences with pen as the linking verb can be converted to questions by adding mēēn bōō. mēēn bōō is normally used when asking for confirmation of a fact. The response follows the usual pattern.

Statement: càw pen khón tháj            'You are a Thai.'

Question: càw pen khón tháj, mēēn bōō?            'Are you a Thai?'

Affirmative

Response: mēēn lèēw, (khôj pen khón tháj)            'Yes, I'm Thai.'

Negative

Response: bōō mēēn, khôj pen khón láaw            'No, I'm a Lao.'

APPLICATION

1. Answer the following questions with the correct information:  
 (a) càw sȳ njǎŋ? (b) càw pen khón láaw, mɛɛn bɔɔ?
2. Translate the following NP: (a) khón aŋkít (b) thāhǎan phūu nīi (c) khácàw (d) khón ciin (e) khón láaw phūu nīi
3. In the NP nākhian phūu nān, phūu is (a) NP, (b) determiner, (c) a classifier (d) a question word (e) it refers to people.
4. What would you say to find out if a serviceman you saw was a German?
5. In answer to a question you say that your teacher is English.
6. You are asked if you are a Thai. You say that you are not, but that you are an American.

CYCLE 10

**M-1**

|                 |                       |          |                    |
|-----------------|-----------------------|----------|--------------------|
| <u>sáharāt</u>  | khôj máa câak sáharāt | U.S.A.   | I'm from the USA.  |
| <u>améelīka</u> | améelīka              |          |                    |
| <u>páthèet</u>  | khôj máa câak páthèet | Laos     | I'm from Laos.     |
| <u>láaw</u>     | láaw                  |          |                    |
| <u>páthèet</u>  | khôj máa câak páthèet | Thailand | I'm from Thailand. |
| <u>tháj</u>     | tháj                  |          |                    |
| <u>páthèet</u>  | khôj máa câak páthèet | Vietnam  | I'm from Vietnam.  |
| <u>wiatnáam</u> | wiatnáam              |          |                    |

Answers: 1. Give factual information. 2(a) Englishman (b) this serviceman (c) they (d) a Chinese (e) this Lao 3(c and e) 4thāhǎan phūu nān pen khón jeelāmán, mɛɛn bɔɔ 5náj khúu khôj pen khón aŋkít, 6bɔɔ mɛɛn, khôj bɔɔ pen khón tháj, khôj pen khón améelīkan

|                |                       |         |                   |
|----------------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------|
| <u>páthèet</u> | khôj máa câak páthèet | China   | I'm from China.   |
| <u>ciin</u>    | ciin                  |         |                   |
| <u>páthèet</u> | khôj máa câak páthèet | England | I'm from England. |
| <u>anjít</u>   | anjít                 |         |                   |

M-2

|                   |  |                 |                                       |
|-------------------|--|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <u>càw</u>        | càw máa câak páthèet<br>daj?               | you             | What country are<br>you from?         |
| <u>khón fálān</u> | khón fálān máa câak<br>páthèet daj?        | French-<br>man  | What country are<br>Frenchmen from?   |
| <u>nākhían</u>    | nākhían phūu nīi máa<br>câak páthèet daj?  | this<br>student | What country is<br>this student from? |
| <u>khón phūu</u>  | khón phūu nān máa câak<br>páthèet daj?     | that<br>person  | What country is<br>that person from?  |
| <u>náajkhúu</u>   | náajkhúu phūu nān máa<br>câak páthèet daj? | that<br>teacher | What country is<br>that teacher from? |

C-1

|                       |   |            |  |
|-----------------------|---|------------|--|
| (khón<br>améelīkan)   | A. khón améelīkan máa<br>câak páthèet daj?        | Americans  | A. What country are<br>Americans from? |
| (sáhárāt<br>améelīka) | B. khón améelīkan máa<br>câak sáhárāt<br>améelīka | the U.S.A. | B. Americans are<br>from the U.S.A.    |

ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານມີແຜນທີ່ໂລກມາໃຊ້ປະກອບກັບການສອນບົດຮຽນນີ້ ກໍຈະເປັນການດີຢ່າງ ເພາະນອກຈາກທີ່  
ຢູ່ໃນປຶ້ມນີ້ແລ້ວ ຫາມອາດຈະບອກຈຸບານເມືອງຕ່າງໆໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນອີກກໍໄດ້. ຖ້າມັກຮຽນຕາມແຜນທີ່ເບິ່ງດູ!

C-2

- (sǎj)            A. càw máa cǎak sǎj?                    where    Where are you from?  
 (páthèet      B. khǒj máa cǎak páthèet                Laos     I'm from Laos.  
 láaw)            láaw?

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມຈື່ວ່າປັດທຍ໌ຂອງທ່ານແລະຂອງກັນແລະກັນເບິ່ງດູ! ໃນການຝຶກຫັດນີ້ຂະເຈົ້າອາດຈະຕ້ອງການຄຳໃຫມ່ເປັນບາງຄຳ ທ່ານລອງຈອຍຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງ! ແຕ່ຢ່າລືມວ່ານແມ່ນການລືມລືນເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

NOTES

- 1) The Main Verb (MV) may be composed of two or more individual verbs in a series. The verb máa 'to come' (like paj 'to go' and other verbs of motion) may be followed by verbs showing direction of motion (like cǎak '(to move) away from').

| NP          | MV                     | NP (Loc)                       |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <u>khǒj</u> | <u>máa</u> <u>cǎak</u> | <u>sáhárāt</u> <u>améelika</u> |
| 'I          | come                   |                                |
|             | came                   | from the United States.        |
|             | am coming              |                                |

Since there is no time indication in this sentence, máa may refer to present, past, or future time.

- 2) daj 'which' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for the determiners (nìi, nàn), for names, and some other nouns.

- Question:    páthèet daj?                    'Which country?'  
 Response 1: páthèet ciin                'China'  
 Response 2: páthèet nìi                    'This country.'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence, khôj máa câak pátthèet láaw, máa câak is (a) (a) NP (b) VP (c) MV (d) Q (e) determiner.
2. In the sentence above, pátthèet láaw is (a) VP (b) Q (c) NP (d) Locative (e) S.
3. In the sentence above, the action is (a) in the past (b) the future (c) in progress. (d) none of these.
4. nákhian phuu nìi refers to (a) one person (b) two persons (c) more than two (d) it is unclear.
5. In the Vb máa câak, câak is (a) NP (b) V (c) preposition (d) VP.
6. In the Noun Compound sáharát améelika, sáharát probably means (a) country (b) America (c) United States (d) nation (e) none of these.
7. China is translated into Lao as (a) ciin (b) ciin pátthèet (c) pátthèet ciin (d) phuu ciin.
8. 'This teacher of mine' would be translated into Lao as: (a) náaj khúu càw nìi (b) náaj khúu phuu nìi khôj (c) náaj khúu khôj phuu nìi (d) náaj khuu càw phuu nìi.

---

Answers: 1c, 2c and d, 3a and c, 4a, 5b, 6c, 7c, 8c



CYCLE 11

M-1

mýaŋ wíañcaŋ

Vientiane

mýaŋ wíañcaŋ juu sǎj?

Where is Vientiane?

khǔeŋ séedoon

Sedone province

khǔeŋ séedoon juu sǎj?

Where is the province of  
Sedone?

mýaŋ wóosíntaŋ

Washington

mýaŋ wóosíntaŋ juu sǎj?

Where is Washington?

rāt mínísóotàa

Minnesota

rāt mínísóotàa juu sǎj?

Where is the State of  
Minnesota?

rāt kháalífóonía

California

rāt kháalífóonía juu sǎj?

Where is the State of  
California?

bàan sǐikháj

Sikhay village

bàan sǐikháj juu sǎj?

Where is the village of  
Sikhay?

khǔeŋ húaphán

Houa Phan Province

khǔeŋ húaphán juu sǎj?

Where is the province  
of Houa Phan ?

bàan kèn

Ban Keun village

bàan kèn juu sǎj?

Where is the village of  
**Ban Keun ?**

M-2

mýaŋ wíañcaŋ

The city of Vientiane

mýaŋ wíañcaŋ jūū náj páthèet  
láaw

The city of Vientiane  
is in Laos.

khǔeŋ séedoon

The province of Sedone.

khǔeŋ séedoon jūū náj  
páthèet láaw

The province of Sedone  
is in Laos.

mýaŋ wóosíŋtan

Washington, D.C.

mýaŋ wóosíŋtan jūū náj  
sáhàrāt améelíkaa

Washington, D.C. is in  
the United States of  
America.

bàan sǐikháj

The village of Sikhay

bàan sǐikháj jūū náj  
mýaŋ wíañcaŋ

The village of Sikhay  
is in Vientiane.

rāt khálífóonia

State of California

rāt khálífóonia jūū náj  
sáhàrāt améelíkaa

The State of California  
is in the U.S.A.

mýaŋ sájŋōōn

Saigon

mýaŋ sájŋōōn jūū náj páthèet  
wíatnáam

Saigon is in Vietnam.

khǔeŋ hūaphán

Houa Phan

mýaŋ sámnyā jūū náj khǔeŋ  
hūaphán

Sam Neua is in the  
province of Houa Phan.

C-1

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (bàan náathóon)                            | The village of Nathong.                                  |
| A. bàan náathóon jūū sǎj?                  | Where is the Nathong village?                            |
| (mýan phóonhóon)                           | The city of Phonhong.                                    |
| B. bàan náathóon jūū náj<br>mýan phóonhóon | The village of Nathong is<br>in the city of Phonhong.    |
| (mýan phóonhóon)                           | The city of Phonhong.                                    |
| A. mýan phóonhóon jūū sǎj?                 | Where is the city of Phonhong?                           |
| (khǔen wíančan)                            | The province of Vientiane.                               |
| B. mýan phóonhóon jūū náj<br>khǔen wíančan | The city of Phonhong is in<br>the province of Vientiane. |
| (khǔen wíančan)                            | The province of Vientiane.                               |
| A. khǔen wíančan jūū sǎj?                  | Where is the province of<br>Vientiane?                   |
| (páthèet láaw)                             | Laos.  |
| B. khǔen wíančan jūū náj<br>páthèet láaw   | The province of Vientiane<br>is in Laos.                 |

---

ຈິງໃຈແຜນທີ່ປະເທດລາວ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຊື່ແລະບອກຊື່ບ້ານແລະເມືອງຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າບອກ  
ໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລະຢ່າງງ່າຍດາຍບໍ່?

---

C-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (hóonhían càw)                                | your school                                       |
| A. hóonhían càw juu sǎj?                      | Where is your school?                             |
| (mýan áalíntán)                               | Arlington   |
| B. hóonhían khôj juu náj<br>mýan áalíntán     | My school is in Arlington.                        |
| (mýan áalíntán)                               | Arlington   |
| A. mýan áalíntán juu sǎj?                     | Where is Arlington?                               |
| (rāt wéecíinía)                               | Virginia  |
| B. mýan áalíntán juu náj<br>rāt wéecíinía     | Arlington is in the State<br>of Virginia.         |
| (rāt wéecíinía)                               | Virginia  |
| A. rāt wéecíinía juu sǎj?                     | Where is the State of<br>Virginia?                |
| (sáhárāt améelīkaa)                           | The U.S.A.  |
| B. rāt wéecíinía juu náj<br>sáhárāt améelīkaa | The State of Virginia is<br>in the United States. |

---

ທ່ານລອງອະທິບາຍການແບ່ງອະນິຍາຍການປົກຄອງຢູ່ໃນປະເທດລາວຢ່າງຫຍິບໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈ  
ເບິ່ງດູ! ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າດັ່ງນີ້: ຢູ່ໃນປະເທດລາວ, ຫລາຍໆຄອບຄົວທີ່ປະກອບດ້ວຍຊາຍຊະກັນຢ່າງນ້ອຍ  
ສິບຄົນຂຶ້ນໄປ ຈະຕັ້ງບ້ານນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນໄດ້; ຫລາຍໆບ້ານໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນຕາແສງ; ຫລາຍໆຕາແສງໂຮມ  
ກັນເຂົ້າເປັນເມືອງ; ຫລາຍໆເມືອງໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນແຂວງ ແລະ ຫລາຍໆແຂວງໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນ  
ປະເທດ. ລະວັງຢ່າເຫລີງເວົ້າໄປຈົນເກີນຄວາມສາມາດຂອງນັກຮຽນທີ່ຈະເຂົ້າໃຈໄດ້ ເພາະມັນຈະ  
ເປັນການເສັ້ນເວລາເບິ່ງ.

---

NOTES

- 1) This sentence type may be used to indicate geographical location:

NP            +    jūu            +    LOC  
mýan sámnýa      jūu      náj khǔɛŋ hǔaphán

'Sam Neua is located in the province of Hona-phan.'

- 2) The verb jūu 'to be located in' is followed by Locatives (LOC). The term 'locative' refers to place expressions. It includes NP, Prep. + NP, and Adverbs of Place.
- 3) In questions LOC is replaced by sǎj 'Where (at)?'
- 4) bàan 'village', mýan 'city', and khǔɛŋ 'province' are all political and administrative divisions in Laos.

APPLICATION

1. Answer these questions giving correct information: (a) mýan wíançan jūu sǎj (b) mýan sájŋɔɔn jūu náj páthèet wíatŋaam, mɛɛn bɔɔ?
2. Provide a possible question to each of these answers: (a) bɔɔ mɛɛn, láaw si paj hóonhán, mɛɛn bɔɔ. (b) khǔɛŋ pâaksée jūu náj páthèet láaw. (c) mɛɛn lɛɛw, phúakhaw pen khon njipūn. (d) saharāt améelika.
3. Fill in the blanks with the correct word: (a) \_\_\_\_\_  
wíançan jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw. (b) rāt níwjɔɔk jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ ameelika. (c) \_\_\_\_\_ naathɔɔŋ jūu náj  
 \_\_\_\_\_ phóonhóon. (d) \_\_\_\_\_ wíançan jūu náj  
 \_\_\_\_\_ láaw.

---

Answers: 1(a) jūu náj páthèet láaw (b) mɛɛn lɛɛw 2(a) láaw si paj hóonhán, mɛɛn bɔɔ (b) khǔɛŋ pâaksée jūu sǎj  
 (c) phúakhaw pen khon njipūn, mɛɛn bɔɔ (d) láaw máa câak páthèet daj. 3(a) mýan/páthèet (b) saharāt  
 (c) bàan, mýan (d) khǔɛŋ/páthèet

CYCLE 12

M-1

kin khâw

To have one's meal.

khôj kin khâw

I am having my meal.

hētwiak

To do work.

láaw hētwiak

He works..

āan nǎnsǎy

To read (letters).

phùakháw āan nǎnsǎy

We read.

khǎan nǎnsǎy

To write (letters).

khácàw khǎan nǎnsǎy

They write.

hían pháasǎa

To study language.

càw hían pháasǎa

You study language.

sǒon pháasǎa

To teach language.

náajkhúu sǒon pháasǎa

The teacher teaches language.

khúakin

To cook.

náan mālícán khúakin

Malichanh cooks.

M-2

hēt

to do

càw hēt njǎn?

What are you doing?

sỳy

to buy

càw sỳy njǎn?

What are you buying?

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <u>bəŋ</u>        | to look at                |
| càw bəŋ njǎŋ?     | What are you looking at?  |
| <u>hěn</u>        | to see                    |
| càw hěn njǎŋ?     | What do you see?          |
| <u>sòokhǎa</u>    | to look for               |
| càw sòokhǎa njǎŋ? | What are you looking for? |
| <u>pɛɛŋ</u>       | to fix, repair            |
| càw pɛɛŋ njǎŋ?    | What are you fixing?      |

C-1

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| A. càw hēt njǎŋ?  | What are you doing? |
| B. khôj hēt wɪak. | I am working.       |

ເມື່ອຮຽນມາເຖິງໄລຍະນີ້ແລ້ວ ມັກຮຽນອາດຈະຖາມເອົາຄຳໃຫມ່ອີກ. ຢ່າຍອກຄຳໃຫມ່ໃຫ້ແກ່ຂະເຈົ້າ  
ຫລາຍເກີນໄປ! ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ແຕ່ສະເພາະຄຳທີ່ເຫັນວ່າຈຳເປັນໃຈໃນປັດຈຸບັນເທົ່ານັ້ນ!

NOTES

- 1) kin 'to eat', hēt 'to do, work', and āan 'to read' are action verbs that require NP complements.

|                      |   |            |   |             |
|----------------------|---|------------|---|-------------|
| NP                   | + | V          | + | NP          |
| <u>khôj</u>          |   | <u>kin</u> |   | <u>khâw</u> |
| ( I                  |   | eat        |   | rice)       |
| 'I'm having a meal.' |   |            |   |             |

The NP complement can be replaced by njǎŋ in questions:

Question: càw hían njǎŋ 'What are you studying?'

Answer: khôj hían pháasǎa láaw 'Laotian.'

- 2) bēŋ means 'to look at (something or someone)'. hěŋ means 'to see, perceive'.
- 3) Both sòok and hǎa separately mean 'to look for something'; sòokhǎa has the same meaning. Combinations of two verbs with the same or similar meaning are very common in Lao.
- 4) khúakin is the usual verb compound for 'the cooking of food.'
- 5) In VP hēt wìak, wìak means 'work (in general)' and hēt means 'to do, make'. hēt wìak means 'to have a job' or 'to be working on something'.

#### APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hēt wìak, wìak is (a) subject (b) VP (c) NP (d) complement to verb hēt.
2. A possible answer to the question càw hēt njǎŋ is (a) bōō mēēn (b) bōō hēt (c) khôj kin khâw (d) bōō njǎŋ.
3. A possible answer to the question láaw hían njǎŋ would be (a) pháasǎa láaw (b) bōō hían (c) láaw hían pháasǎa aŋkít (d) bōō pen njǎŋ.
4. In the sentence náajkhúu sǒon pháasǎa, sǒon is (a) MV (b) Subject (c) NP complement (d) classifier.
5. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw aān... (b) khôj paj hēt... (c) khácàw kin... (d) càw hían...

---

Answers: 1c and d, 2c, 3a and c, 4a, 5(a)nǎnsýy (b)wìak (c)khâw (d)pháasǎa (láaw, etc.)



6. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) càw bēn, khán hōm bōō (b) càw sōokhǎa njǎn (c) laaw si pēsən hyan láaw (d) khōj hěn thāhǎan phūu nān (e) phúak haw syy mūak jūu tálat.

CYCLE 13

M-1

kin

eat

háv si kin jūu sǎj?  
jūu nǐi bōō?

Where are we going to eat?  
Here?

nān

sit

háv si nān jūu sǎj?  
jūu nǐi bōō?

Where are you going to sit?  
Here?

lómkan

chat

háv si lómkan jūu sǎj?  
jūu nǐi bōō?

Where are we going to chat?  
Here?

thāajhùup

take pictures

háv si paj thāajhùup jūu  
sǎj?  
jūu nǐi bōō?

Where are we going to take  
pictures?  
Here?

lǐi

hide

háv si paj lǐi jūu sǎj?  
jūu nǐi bōō?

Where are we going to hide?  
Here?

Answer: 6(a) Are you looking at the umbrella? (b) What are you looking for? (c) He will repair his house. (d) I see that soldier. (e) We bought a hat at the market.

M-2

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <u>kin</u>   | eat                       |
| b <sup>o</sup> o, paj kin j <sup>u</sup> u hân th <sup>o</sup> ?                   | No. Let's go eat there.   |
| <u>jyyn</u>  | stand                     |
| b <sup>o</sup> o, paj jyyn j <sup>u</sup> u hân th <sup>o</sup> ?                  | No. Let's go stand there. |
| <u>thâa</u>  | wait                      |
| b <sup>o</sup> o, paj thâa j <sup>u</sup> u hân th <sup>o</sup> ?                  | No. Let's go wait there.  |
| <u>s<sup>u</sup>up jaa</u>   | smoke                     |
| b <sup>o</sup> o, paj s <sup>u</sup> up jaa j <sup>u</sup> u hân th <sup>o</sup> ? | No. Let's go smoke there. |
| <u>s<sup>a</sup>wmyaj</u>  | rest                      |
| b <sup>o</sup> o, paj s <sup>a</sup> wmyaj j <sup>u</sup> u hân th <sup>o</sup> ?  | No. Let's go rest there.  |

C-1

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. càw si s <sup>a</sup> wmyaj j <sup>u</sup> u s <sup>a</sup> j?<br>j <sup>u</sup> u n <sup>i</sup> i b <sup>o</sup> o? | A. Where are you going to rest?<br>Here? |
| B. b <sup>o</sup> o, kh <sup>o</sup> j si paj s <sup>a</sup> wmyaj<br>j <sup>u</sup> u hân                               | B. No. I'm going to rest<br>there.       |

C-2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. háw si thâa láaw j <sup>u</sup> u s <sup>a</sup> j?<br>j <sup>u</sup> u n <sup>i</sup> i b <sup>o</sup> o? | A. Where are we going to<br>wait for him?<br>Here? |
| B. b <sup>o</sup> o, paj thâa láaw j <sup>u</sup> u<br>hân th <sup>o</sup> ?                                  | B. No. Let's go wait for<br>him there.             |

ຄຳວ່າ "ສິ" ບອກເຖິງປັດຈຸບັນນະການແລະອະນາຄົດການ ແຕ່ "ໄດ້" ບໍ່ໄດ້ບອກເຖິງອະດີດການສະມີໄປ.

NOTES

- 1) After jūū or Verbs of Motion (paj, máa, etc.) nīi means 'here'; hân 'there'.
- 2) The particle thō̄ occurs at the end of sentences which 'urge' or 'suggest' a particular course of action.

APPLICATION

1. Complete these sentences: (a) láaw bō̄ jūū hân. láaw jūū...  
(b) jūū nīi bō̄? bō̄ jūū... (c) jūū...? jūū nīi bō̄?
2. Change the following statements into suggestions for action:  
(a) paj jyyn jūū hân... (b) paj kin khâw... (c) paj thā̄aj hūup...
3. Complete the following sentences (Using the English cue word):  
(a) paj...; jūū sǎj (hide) (b) háv si lómkan jūū... (where?)  
(c) paj sawmyaj jūū... thō̄ (there). (d) bō̄ paj... jūū hân thō̄ (wait) (e) ...nīi bō̄? (here?) (f) nān jūū hân... (Let's...)

---

Answers: 1a nīi, 2b hân 1c sǎj 2a thō̄ 2b thō̄ 2c thō̄  
3a nīi, 3b sǎj 3c hân 3d thāa 3e jūū 3f thō̄

CYCLE 14

M-1

phāk

to stay

láaw phāk jūu sǎj?

Where is he staying?

hētkaan

to work

láaw hētkaan jūu sǎj?

Where is he working?

tátphǒm

to have one's hair cut

láaw tátphǒm jūu sǎj?

Where did he have his hair cut?

thóorāsáp

to make a phone call

láaw thóorāsáp jūu sǎj?

Where did he make the phone call?

sōŋ thóorālèek

to send a cable

láaw sōŋ thóorālèek jūu sǎj?

Where did he send the cable?

līn

to play

láaw līn jūu sǎj?

Where is he playing?

fán wīthānjū?

to listen to the radio

láaw fán wīthānjū? jūu sǎj?

Where did he listen to the radio?

M-2

hýan khôj

My house.

láaw phāk jūu hýan khôj

He is staying in my house.

hàantátphôm

The barber shop.

láaw tátphôm jūu hàn  
tátphôm

He has his hair cut at the  
barbershop.

dēn bàn

The yard of the house

láaw līn jūu dēn bàn

He is playing in the yard  
of the house.

hōiṅ pāsúm

The meeting room.

láaw fáṅ jūu hōiṅ pāsúm

He listened to it in the  
meeting room.

hóṅsǎaj

The Post Office.

láaw sōṅ thóorālēek jūu  
hóṅsǎaj

He sent the cable at the  
Post Office.

tùuthóorāsáp sǎatháarānā?

The public phone booth.

láaw thóorāsáp jūu tùu  
thóorāsáp sǎatháarānā?

He made a phone call at  
the public phone booth.

C-1

(phāk)

to stay

A. láaw phāk jūu sǎj?

Where is he staying?

(hóṅhém)

hotel

B. láaw phāk jūu hóṅhém

He is staying at a hotel.

"ຂອງກິນ ບໍ່ກິນ ມັນເນົ່າ - ຂອງເກົ້າ ບໍ່ເລົ່າ ມັນລືມ" ຈົງພານັກຮຽນໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວຄືນອີກ!

C-2

(phān càw)

Your friend.

A. phān càw jūu sǎj?

Where is your friend?

(hóonhém)

Hotel

B. láaw jūu hóonhém

He is at a hotel.

(phāk)

to stay

A. láaw phāk jūu hóonhém bo?

Is he staying at the hotel?

(mēn lèsw)

Yes.

B. mēn lèsw, láaw phāk jūu  
hóonhém

Yes, he is staying at the  
hotel.

ຫ້າມລອງປະດິດເລື່ອງໃດເລື່ອງນັ້ນອີກເບິ່ງດູ! ເວົ້າເລື່ອງການແຕ່ງເລື່ອງປະກອບບົດຮຽນນີ້ ຖ້າ  
ຫາກຫ້າມພາຍາມແຕ່ງໄວ້ກອມກໍຈະເປັນການດີ. ເມື່ອໃຊ້ແລ້ວຫ້າມຈິງເກັບໄວ້ດັດແປງໃຊ້ຄາວຫນ້າ.

NOTES

- 1) The Verb Phrase jūu + Locative is frequently combined with sentences to indicate location of some activity.

Sentence + jūu + LOC

láaw phāk

jūu hyan khōj

'He is staying

at my house'.

láaw fán wīthānjū?

jūu hōwōn pásúm

'He listened to the radio in the meeting room.'

sǎj can replace the Locative in this construction in questions:

láaw phāk jūu sǎj ?

'Where is he staying?'

láaw fán wīthānjū? jūu sǎj ?

'Where did he listen to the  
radio?'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw phāk jūu h́yan khôj, jūu h́yan khôj is  
 (a) Vb (b) NP (c) VP (d) N
2. In the above sentence, jūu is (a) NP (b) preposition (c) verb  
 (d) locative (e) none of these.
3. In the above sentence, jūu h́yan khôj indicates (a) subject  
 (b) location (c) negative (d) none of these.
4. Complete the following sentences: (a)...jūu h́aan tát phôm  
 (b) láaw lín...dēn baan (c) láaw sōn thóorāleek jūu...  
 (d) láaw...wīthānjū?jūu sǎj (e) láaw...jūu h́oonh́esm  
 (g) khôj si...jūu tuu...sǎathaarānā?
5. Answer the following questions: (a) láaw lín jūu sǎj...  
 (b) láaw fán wīthānjū?jūu sǎj? (c) càw h́ian pháasǎa láaw  
jūu sǎj? (d) láaw tát phôm jūu sǎj? (e) láaw thóorāsáp  
jūu sǎj?

---

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3b, 4(a)(láaw) tátphôm (b)jūu  
 (c)h́oonsǎaj (d)fán (e)phāk (f)h́oonh́ian (sōn)  
 pháasǎa (g)thóorāsáp...thóorāsáp (NOTE: In some  
 cases other answers may also be correct. If you  
 are not sure, ask your instructor.) Possible answers:  
 5(a)(láaw lín) jūu dēn baan, etc.) (b)jūu h́oonh́esm  
 (h́yan láaw, etc.) (c)jūu h́oonh́ian (sōn) pháasǎa  
 (láaw) (d)jūu h́aan tátphôm (e)jūu tuu thóorāsáp  
 sǎathaarānā?

CYCLE 15

M-1

paj kinkhâw

to go to eat

láaw si paj kinkhâw jūū  
hàan aahǎan

He is going to eat at the  
restaurant.

máa hētkaan

to come to work

láaw si máa hētkaan jūū  
hóonkaan nīi

He is coming to work in  
this office building.

máa pásúm

to come to attend the meeting

láaw si máa pásúm jūū  
hōonpásúm

He is coming to attend a  
meeting in the conference  
room.

paj thóorāsáp

to make a phone call

láaw si paj thóorāsáp jūū  
hōonkaan láaw

He is going to make a phone  
call in his office.

máa sòokhǎa

come to look for

láaw máa sòokhǎa càw jūū  
hóonhían

He came to look for you  
at school.

paj bēn

go to look at

láaw paj bēn khàajthāhǎan  
jūū rāt khālīfóonía

He went to see the military  
post in the State of  
California.



M-2

njǎŋ

what

láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu  
hàan tátphǒm?

What is he going to do at  
the barbershop?

sǎj

where

láaw si paj sōŋ thóorālèek  
jūu sǎj?

Where is he going to send  
the cable?

njǎŋ, sǎj

what, where

láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu  
sǎj?

Where is he going to do  
what?

njǎŋ

what

láaw si máa hēt njǎŋ jūu  
nìi?

What is he coming to do  
here?

njǎŋ

what

láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu  
hân?

What is he going to do there?

C-1

A. càw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu  
hàan tátphǒm?

What are you going to do  
at the barbershop?

B. khôj si paj tátphǒm

I am going to have my hair  
cut.

ບົດນັ້ນມີຈຸດປະສົງທີ່ຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນທັດໃຈຄຳວ່າ "ໄປ" ແລະ "ມາ" ຢູ່ຕຫມາຄຳກິຣຍາ. ຂະນາຮູ້ແລ້ວບໍ່ວ່າ  
ເວລາໃດເຮົາເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍໄປກິນເຂົ້າ" ແລະເວລາໃດເຮົາເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍມາກິນເຂົ້າ".



APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj sòokhǎa pým láaw juu hóonmǎo, sòokhǎa pým is a VP indicating (a) location (b) time (c) activity (d) actor (e) none of these.

juu hóonmǎo is a VP indicating (a) purpose (b) location (c) subject (d) time.

si paj indicates (a) past time (b) future time (c) present time (d) indefinite time.

2. In the sentence láaw máa sòokhǎa cǎw juu hóonhǎan the time of the action is probably (a) present (b) future (c) past (d) future or present.
3. What are the 3 underlying sentences of the following sentence: láaw si paj sǎn thóorǎlèek juu hóonśǎaj

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) \_\_\_\_\_

4. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw si si paj sòokhǎa pým cǎw (b) khôj paj bǎn wíthānjū? juu haan aahāan (c) laaw si bǎo paj hēt wiak juu myan sajnǎon (d) laaw máa hēt njǎn juu hǎon pasum (e) cǎw si paj syy sýafǎn juu sǎj (f) phǎj máa lín juu dǎn baan cǎw (g) phyan khôj si paj sǎn thóorǎlèek juu hóonśǎaj.

---

Answers: 1c, b and b, 2c, 3(a)láaw si paj... (b)(láaw) sǎn thóorǎlèek (c)(láaw) juu hóonśǎaj 4(a)He is going to look for your book. (b)I went to look at the radio at the restaurant. (c)He will not go work in Saigon. (d)What did he come to do at the meeting? (e)Where will you buy a raincoat? (f)Who came to play in your yard? (g)My friend will go send a telegram at the Post Office.

CYCLE 16

M-1

máa n̄i

Come here.

láaw si máa n̄i

He is coming here.

paj hân

Go there.

láaw si paj hân

He is going there.

máa ph̄i

Come over here.

láaw si máa ph̄i

He is coming over here.

paj phùn

Go over there.

láaw si paj phùn

He is going over there.

C-1

A. láaw si máa n̄i b̄oo?

Is he coming here?

B. b̄oo, láaw si paj hân

No. He is going there.

C-2

A. càw si paj phùn b̄oo?

Are you going over there?

B. b̄oo, khôj si máa ph̄i

No. I'm coming over there.

NOTES

- 1) Both nîi and phîi refer to space near at hand, but nîi is more specific ('right here') and phîi is more general ('over here'). nîi is more likely to be used in commands, such as máa nîi 'come here.'
- 2) hân means 'there'. phùn means 'way over there.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw si máa... (or) ...  
(b) láaw si paj... (or) ...
2. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) Come here. (Command). (b) Go over there. (c) Go way over there. (d) Come over here.
3. (a) What would you say if you wanted to indicate that something was in the same room with you but was about 8 feet away?  
(b) What would you say if you wanted someone to come over in your general area but not right close to you?  
(c) If you were asked where someone was, what would you say to indicate that he was a considerable distance away but still visible?  
(d) If you were asked where someone was, how would you indicate that he wasn't near you?

---

Answers: 1(a) nîi or phîi (b) hân or phùn 2(a) máa nîi (b) paj hân (c) paj phùn (d) máa phîi 3(a) jūu hân (b) máa phîi (c) jūu phùn (d) (láaw) bᵛᵛ jūu nîi

CYCLE 17

M-1

sáthǎanthùut améelĭkan

American Embassy

càw hùu tháaŋ paj sáthǎan  
thùut améelĭkan bɔɔ?

Do you know the way to the  
American Embassy?

hýan láaw

his house

càw hùu tháaŋ paj hýan  
láaw bɔɔ?

Do you know the way to his  
house?

hóoŋ síinée nĭi

this movie house

càw hùu tháaŋ paj hóoŋ  
síinée nĭi bɔɔ?

Do you know the way to this  
movie house?

hàan tátphǒm

barbershop

càw hùu tháaŋ paj hàan  
tátphǒm bɔɔ?

Do you know the way to the  
barbershop?

komkhóosánaakaan láaw

Lao information service

càw hùu tháaŋ paj kom  
khóosánaakaan láaw bɔɔ?

Do you know the way to the  
Lao information service?

M-2

lĭaw sàaj

turn left

hùu, lĭaw sàaj jūu thánǒn  
nĭa.

Yes (I know), turn left on  
the next street.

lĭaw khǔa

turn right

hùu, lĭaw khǔa jūu thánǒn  
nĭa

Yes, turn right on the next  
street.

paj s̄y s̄y

go straight ahead

hùu, paj s̄y s̄y taam  
thánõn n̄i

Yes, go straight ahead on  
this street.

l̄law kh̄ua l̄ɛw paj s̄y s̄y

turn right then go straight

hùu, l̄law kh̄ua j̄u thánõn  
l̄aan s̄aaj l̄ɛw paj s̄y s̄y

Yes, turn right on Lane Xang  
Street then go straight.

b̄w̄

no

b̄w̄, kh̄ɔj b̄w̄ hùu

No, I don't know.

C-1

(hàn tátphõm)

A. càw hùu th̄aaj paj hàn  
tátphõm b̄w̄?

Do you know the way to the  
barbershop?

(s̄aaj, thánõn n̄a)

B. hùu, l̄law s̄aaj j̄u thánõn  
n̄a

Yes, turn left on the next  
street.

ຈົງພະຍາຍາມຈຳກັດການໃຈທຳວ່າ "ຮູ້" ໄວ້ແຕ່ສະເພາະກັບ "ຮູ້ຫ່າງ" ເລັກຮອນ. ຢ່າພະຍາຍາມໃຈ  
ໃຫ້ກວ້າງກວ່ານີ້! ໃນບົດຕໍ່ໄປຍັງຈະມີການສອນຄຳວ່າ "ຮູ້" ໃນຫ້າມອງໃຫມ່ອີກ. ໃນຂັ້ນນີ້ກຽມຂອງ  
ຫ້າມອາດຈະສົມທະນາກັບຫ້າມໄດ້ຫລາຍເຕີບແລ້ວ. ຈົງໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນຂອງຫ້າມນີ້ກັບຕັດໃຈພາສາລາວສະເມີ!

NOTES

- 1) The noun tháan 'way, direction' can be followed by Verb Phrase 'modifiers', such as paj h́yan láaw 'go to his house' indicating 'destination'. The whole construction tháan + VP is a Noun Phrase and may serve as the NP complement of a verb, such as hùu 'to know'.

|                                 |   |            |   |                               |
|---------------------------------|---|------------|---|-------------------------------|
| NP                              | + | MV         | + | NP                            |
| <u>khôj</u>                     |   | <u>hùu</u> |   | <u>tháan paj h́oon síinée</u> |
| (I                              |   | know       |   | way go building cinema)       |
| 'I know the way to the movies.' |   |            |   |                               |

- 2) Where English uses Verb+Adverbials or Preposition+Noun Phrase to indicate directions and locations, Lao normally has Verb+Verb or Verb+VP, as in the following examples:

(1) English: Verb + Adverbial  
 Turn left/right.

Lao: Verb + Verb  
l̀iaw s̀aa\_j/kh`ua

(2) English: Verb + Adverbial + Preposition-NP  
 Go straight ahead on this street.

Lao: Verb + Verb + Verb Phrase  
paj s̀y`y s̀y`y taam thán`on n`i

- 3) The affirmative response to b̀oo type (Yes-No) questions is repetition of the Verb; the negative response is b̀oo, b̀oo + Verb.

|                                      |   |            |   |                          |   |             |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------|---|--------------------------|---|-------------|
| NP                                   | + | MV         | + | Complement               | + | Question    |
| <u>c̀aw</u>                          |   | <u>hùu</u> |   | <u>tháan paj tá`l`at</u> |   | <u>b̀oo</u> |
| 'Do you know the way to the market?' |   |            |   |                          |   |             |



Affirmative

Response: hùu, (lìaw sàaj jūu thánǎn nâa)

'Yes, I do. (Turn left at the next block.)'

Negative

Response: bɔɔ, (khôj) bɔɔ hùu

'No, I don't.'

The negative is normally followed by another sentence supplying additional information.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hùu thánǎn paj hyan càw, paj hyan càw is (a) the predicate (b) VP (c) 'modifier' of thánǎn (d) NP (e) verb.
2. In the above sentence thánǎn paj hyan càw is (a) NP (b) VP (c) predicate (d) complement of the verb hùu (e) subject of the sentence.
3. In the sentence lìaw sàaj (a) both lìaw and sàaj are verbs (b) sàaj is an adjective (c) neither is a verb (d) only lìaw is a verb.
4. In the sentence paj sȳ sȳ taam thánǎn nīi, taam is (a) a preposition (b) NP (c) verb (d) VP (e) particle (f) it means 'to follow or go along'.
5. Complete the following sentences: (a) lìaw... jūu thánǎn nâa (b) ...sȳ sȳ (c) bɔɔ, khôj... hùu (d) ...khúa jūu thánǎn lán sán (e) càw hùu thánǎn... hyan laaw bɔɔ (f) hùu, paj ... taam... nīi.

---

Answers: 1b and c, 2a and d, 3a, 4c and f, 5(a)sàaj/khúa (b)paj (c)bɔɔ (d)lìaw (e)paj (f)sȳ sȳ... thánǎn

CYCLE 18

M-1

phūu njín phūu nìi

this woman

càw hùucák phūu njín phūu  
nìi bɔɔ?

Do you know this woman?

phūu sáaj phūu nìi

this man

càw hùucák phūu sáaj phūu  
nìi bɔɔ?

Do you know this man?

déknòɔj phūu nìi

this child

càw hùucák déknòɔj phūu  
nìi bɔɔ?

Do you know this child?

nòɔŋ sáaj khôj

my younger brother

càw hùucák nòɔŋ sáaj  
khôj bɔɔ?

Do you know my younger  
brother?

nòɔŋ săaw khôj

my younger sister

càw hùucák nòɔŋ săaw  
khôj bɔɔ?

Do you know my younger  
sister?

àaj khôj

my older brother

càw hùucák àaj khôj bɔɔ?

Do you know my older brother?

phɔɔ mĕĕ láaw

his parents

càw hùucák phɔɔ mĕĕ láaw  
bɔɔ?

Do you know his parents?

yàj khôj

my older sister

càw hùucák yàj khôj boo?

Do you know my older sister?

lùuk khôj

my child

càw hùucák lùuk khôj boo?

Do you know my child?

M-2

hóonkaan càw

your office

hùu, khôj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu hóonkaan càw

Yes, I met him at your office.

wāt inpɛɛŋ

Inpeng temple

hùu, khôj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu wāt inpɛɛŋ

Yes, I met her at the Wat  
Inpeng.

sámóosǝn

club

hùu, khôj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu sámóosǝn

Yes, I met him at the club.

náj rōtfáj

on the train

hùu, khôj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu náj rōtfáj

Yes, I met him on the train.

náj nǎan kinlǎn

at the party

hùu, khôj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu náj nǎan kinlǎn

Yes, I met her at the party.

M-3

phũa

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
phũa láaw

husband

I'll get to meet her husband.

mía

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
mía láaw

wife

I'll get to meet his wife.

phồ thâw

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
phồthâw láaw

father in law

I'll get to meet his father-  
in-law.

mề thâw

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
mềthâw láaw

mother-in-law

I'll get to meet his  
mother-in-law.

phồ pũ

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
phồpũ láaw

father-in-law

I'll get to meet her father-  
in-law.

mề njãa

khôj si dàj hùucák káp  
mềnjãa láaw

mother-in-law

I'll get to meet her  
mother-in-law.

C-1

(phūu njín)

woman

A. càw hùucák phūu njín  
phūu nīi bōw?

Do you know this woman?

(wāt inpēsɛŋ)

Inpeng temple

B. hùu, khōj dàj hùucák  
káp láaw jūu wāt inpēsɛŋ

Yes, I met her at the  
Inpeng temple.

C-2

(lāaw)

she

A. càw dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu sǎj?

Where did you meet her?

(hóonhían)

school

B. khōj dàj hùucák káp  
láaw jūu hóonhían

I met her at school.

C-3

A. càw hùucák mīa láaw bōw?

Do you know his wife?

B. bōw, khōj bōw hùucák láaw

No, I don't know her.

A. càw sī dàj hùucák káp láaw bōw?

Will you get to meet her?

B. mēɛn lèsw, khōj sī dàj hùucák  
káp láaw

Yes, I'll get to meet her.

khácàw sī máa hían khōj

They will come to my house.

---

ເມື່ອສອນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ແລ້ວ ຫາມລອງຖາມນັກຮຽນກ່ຽວກັບພື້ນຜູ້ອ່ານນອງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູ! ຂໍສຳຄັນກໍຄື  
ບໍ່ແມ່ນວ່າຂະເຈົ້າຕອບໄດ້ແລ້ວຈະແລ້ວ. ຈົ່ງສັງເກດເບິ່ງວ່າ ວິທີຕອບຂອງຂະເຈົ້າມີໃຈທ່ານແລ້ວຫລືບໍ່!

---

NOTES

- 1) hùucák means 'to be acquainted or familiar with (someone or something)'.

khôj hùucák láaw 'I know her.'

caw hùucák mýan wíançan boo? 'Are you familiar with Vientiane?'

- 2) dàj + Main Verb means 'to have the opportunity (to do something as in these examples:

khôj dàj hùucák káp láaw (I had the opportunity to become acquainted with him.

'I got to meet him.'

khôj si dàj hùucák káp láaw 'I will get to meet her.'

- 3) náan kinlian is a Noun Compound meaning 'a party' and is made up of náan 'celebration' + kin 'to eat' + lian 'to treat s.o.'

- 4) In Lao when referring to the male and female offspring in a family one must indicate not only their sex but also their relative ages. Consider this hypothetical family of 5 children

|       |    |    |    |    |    |
|-------|----|----|----|----|----|
| Sex:  | M  | F  | M  | F  | M  |
| Age:  | 21 | 19 | 17 | 15 | 10 |
| Rank: | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  |

|                             |   |   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| Child number<br>3 refers to | } | 1 as <u>àaj</u> ( <u>khôj</u> ) 'older brother'.        |
|                             |   | 2 as <u>jàj</u> ( <u>khôj</u> ) 'older sister'.         |
|                             |   | 4 as <u>nòçnsáaw</u> ( <u>khôj</u> ) 'younger sister.'  |
|                             |   | 5 as <u>nòçnsáaj</u> ( <u>khôj</u> ) 'younger brother'. |

- 5) When referring to in-laws, one must indicate whether they are the husband's or the wife's.

ph<sup>33</sup> p<sup>33</sup> (1)      m<sup>33</sup> nj<sup>33</sup> (2)      ph<sup>33</sup> th<sup>33</sup> (3)      m<sup>33</sup> th<sup>33</sup> (4)

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| ph <sup>33</sup> | m <sup>33</sup> |
| 'husband'        | 'wife'          |

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) her father-in-law | (2) her mother-in-law |
| (3) his father-in-law | (4) his mother-in-law |

APPLICATION

1. If you heard someone say kh<sup>33</sup> d<sup>33</sup> h<sup>33</sup>uc<sup>33</sup> k<sup>33</sup>ap l<sup>33</sup>aw, you would assume that the speaker (a) knew the person he was talking about, (b) did not know that person, (c) had met that person, (d) had not met that person.
2. If you heard someone say kh<sup>33</sup> h<sup>33</sup>uc<sup>33</sup> m<sup>33</sup>yan w<sup>33</sup>an<sup>33</sup>can, (a) you would know that he had been to Vientiane. (b) You would know that he knew at least where Vientiane is located.
3. If a person says ya<sup>33</sup> kh<sup>33</sup>, you know the person he is talking about is (a) older than he, (b) younger than he, (c) male, (d) female, (d) you can not tell whether the person is younger or older, male or female.
4. If a person says aa<sup>33</sup> kh<sup>33</sup>, you know the person he is talking about is (a) female, (b) male (c) younger than the speaker (d) older than the speaker (e) sex and age are unclear.
5. Is the situation described in the following statement possible? la<sup>33</sup>aw pen no<sup>33</sup>on sa<sup>33</sup>aw kh<sup>33</sup> l<sup>33</sup>e? kh<sup>33</sup> pen no<sup>33</sup>nsaa<sup>33</sup> la<sup>33</sup>aw
6. In the situation described in the following statement possible? kh<sup>33</sup> pen ya<sup>33</sup> ca<sup>33</sup>w l<sup>33</sup>e? ca<sup>33</sup>w pen no<sup>33</sup>nsaa<sup>33</sup> kh<sup>33</sup>.

---

Answers: 1a and c, 2b, 3a and d, 4b and d, 5no, 6yes

7. Fill in the blanks with déknòoj or lùuk as appropriate:  
 càw hěn \_\_\_\_\_ phūū nán bòò? laaw pen \_\_\_\_\_ sǎaw khôj  
 (1) (2)
8. If a person said to someone phòò pūū càw pen phyan khôj would he be talking to (a) a man (b) a woman (c) either (d) neither
9. If someone said khôj dàj hùucák káp mēē thāw càw, you would know she was talking to a man. True or false?
10. Could this be a true statement? mēē njāā càw pen mēē khôj
11. Could this be true? phòò thāw khôj pen phòò pūū càw

CYCLE 19

M-1

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>phàak kaan</u>             | Central part                 |
| khôj máa câak phàak kaan      | I am from the Central part.  |
| <u>phàak tàj</u>              | Southern part                |
| khôj máa câak phàak tàj       | I am from the Southern part. |
| <u>phàak nǎa</u>              | Northern part                |
| khôj máa câak phàak nǎa       | I am from the Northern part. |
| <u>phàak táwén ôok</u>        | Eastern part                 |
| khôj máa câak phàak táwén ôok | I am from the Eastern part.  |
| <u>phàak táwén tók</u>        | Western part                 |
| khôj máa câak phàak táwén tók | I am from the Western part.  |

---

Answers: 7(1)déknòoj (2)lùuk, 8b, 9true, 10yes, 11no



M-2

phàak kaan

mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak  
kaan khōon páthèet láaw

Central part

My hometown is in the  
Central part of Laos.

phàak táwén ôoksiantàj

mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak  
táwén ôoksiantàj khōon  
páthèet láaw

Southeastern part

My hometown is in the  
Southeastern part of Laos.

phàak táwén ôoksiannýa

mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak  
táwén ôoksiannýa

Northeastern part

My hometown is in the  
Northeastern part of Laos.

phàak táwén tóksiannýa

mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak  
táwén tóksiannýa khōon  
páthèet láaw

Northwestern part

My hometown is in the  
Northwestern part of Laos.

phàak táwén tóksiantàj

mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak  
táwén tóksiantàj khōon  
páthèet láaw

Southwestern part

My hometown is in the  
Southwestern part of Laos.

C-1

- A. náaj khúu máa câak phàak      What part of Laos is the  
daj kh໋ວ໊ໜ່ páthèet láaw?      teacher from?
- B. láaw máa câak phàak...      He is from the... part.

ຈົ່ງໃຈແຜ່ນທີ່ ແລະໃຫມັກຮຽນບອກທັດຕາງໆຕາມນັ້ນເບິ່ງດູ! ນາຍຄຣູທດີຈະພຍາຍາມໃຈກິນອຸບາຍ  
ຕາງໆເພື່ອຍິ່ງເບິ່ງຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນ.

C-2

- (phàak táwén ôkshantàj)      Southeastern
- A. phyan càw máa câak phàak      Your friend is from the  
táwén ôkshantàj kh໋ວ໊ໜ່      Southeastern part of Laos,  
páthèet láaw, mēen bwa?      isn't he?
- (phàak táwén tókshantàj)      Southwestern
- B. b໋ວ mēen, láaw máa câak      No, he is from the South-  
phàak táwén tókshantàj      western part of Laos.  
kh໋ວ໊ໜ່ páthèet láaw

ຫ້ານຄົງເຂົ້າໃຈດີແລ້ວວ່າ ພາກ C ຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນເປັນພຽງແຕ່ຕົວຢ່າງຫລືແນວທາງແນະນຳໃນການ  
ຝຶກຫັດເຫ້າມັ່ນ. ແລະແຕ່ລະບົດ C ຢູ່ໃນແຕ່ລະໄຊເກີລຍັງບໍ່ພຽງພໍສຳລັບການຝຶກຫັດ.

C-3

- A. càw sȳ njǎn?      What's your name?
- B. khôj sȳ súksǎmbuun      My name is Souksomboun.
- A. càw pen khón láaw mēen bwa?      You are a Laotian, aren't you?
- B. mēen lèew, khôj pen khón láaw      Yes, I am a Laotian.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. cằw máa câak sắj?                                    | Where are you from?                       |
| B. khốj máa câak myạn wíạncan                           | I am from the city of Vientiane.          |
| A. myạn wíạncan jủu sắj?                                | Where is Vientiane?                       |
| B. myạn wíạncan jủu nắj pátthèet láaw                   | Vientiane is in Laos?                     |
| A. myạn wíạncan jủu nắj phàak daj khốwạn pátthèet láaw? | In what part of Laos is Vientiane?        |
| B. myạn wíạncan jủu nắj phàak kaan khốwạn pátthèet láaw | Vientiane is in the Central part of Laos. |

ນາຍຄຣຸຈະຕ້ອງເປັນຄົນທີ່ຊ່າງຄົດຄົນເຮືອງຕ່າງໆຂຶ້ນມາໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດ. ຍັງດົນໄປ ເຮືອງທີ່ຈະນຳ  
ມາຝຶກຝົນໄດ້ກໍ່ຄວນຍັງຈະຫລາຍຂຶ້ນ. ຫ້າງນກໍ່ຍອມຄຣຸຮຸວ່ານັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈຫຍັງຫລືອາດຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈຫຍັງ.

NOTES

- 1) Except for tàj 'South' and nýa 'North' all compass points are compounds:

táwénwók 'East': táwén 'sun' + wók 'to come up'

táwéntók 'West': táwén 'sun' + tók 'to fall'

Compounds such as Southeast are made with sýan 'direction':

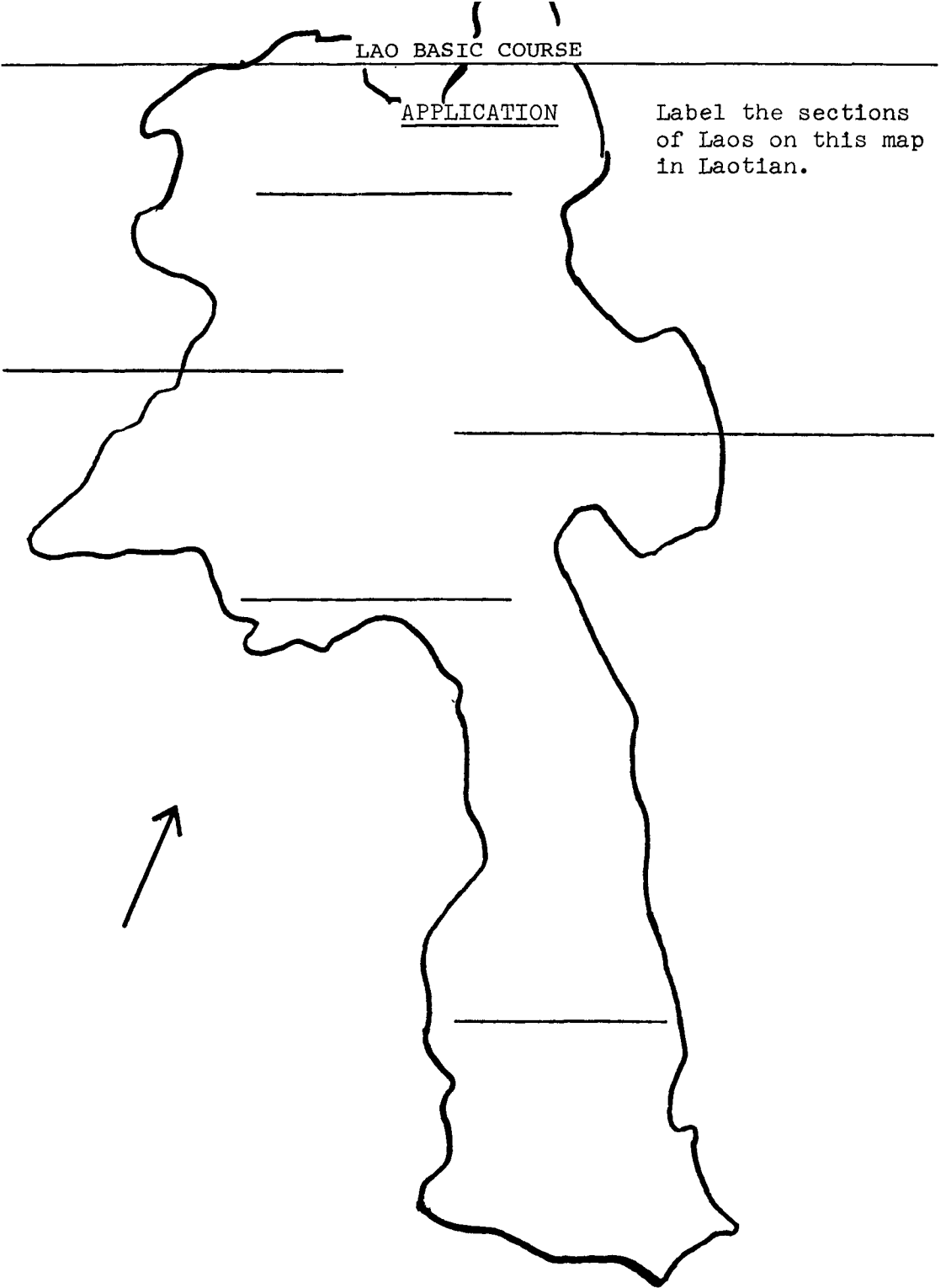
táwéntók sýannýa 'Northwest': táwéntók 'West' + sýan 'direction' + nýa 'North'

táwénwóksýantàj 'Southeast': táwénwók 'East' + sýan 'direction' + tàj 'South'. táwéntóksýantàj 'Southwest' and táwénwóksýannýa 'Northeast' are formed in a similar fashion.

- 2) In longer Noun Phrases khốwạn 'of' must be used so that the relationship between the parts of the NP are clear, as in: phàak táwénwóksýantàj khốwạn pátthèet láaw 'The Southeastern part of Laos.'

APPLICATION

Label the sections  
of Laos on this map  
in Laotian.



CYCLE 20

M-1

wáan wàj

put

càw si wáan wàj sǎj?  
wàj phǐi bɔɔ?

Where are you going to put  
(it)? Over here?

thée lón

pour out

càw si thée lón sǎj?  
lón phǐi bɔɔ?

Where are you going to pour  
(it) out? Over here?

tàn wàj

set up

càw si tàn wàj sǎj?  
wàj phǐi bɔɔ?

Where are you going to set  
(it) up? Over here?

njín sǎj

shoot at

càw si njín sǎj sǎj?  
sǎj phǐi bɔɔ?

Where are you shooting at?  
Over here?

lɛɛn ôk

run out

càw si lɛɛn ôk sǎj?  
ôk phǐi bɔɔ?

What exit are you going to  
run out through? (The one)  
here?

M-2

wáan wàj

put down

khôj si aw paj wáan wàj  
phùn

I'm going to take it over  
there and put it down.

pá' wàj

leave

khôj si aw paj pá' wàj phùn

I'm going to take it over  
there and leave it.

tít sāj

stick up

khōj si aw paj tít sāj phùn

I'm going to take it over there and stick it up.

ōok

take out

khōj si aw paj ōok phùn

I'm going to take it out that exit over there.

thīm lón

drop

khōj si aw paj thīm lón  
phùn

I'm going to take it over there and drop it.

C-1

A. càw si wáan pỳm hũa nỉ  
wáj sāj? wàj phỉi bōō?

Where are you going to put this book? Over here?

B. bōō, khōj si aw pỳm hũa  
nỉ paj wáan wàj phùn

No. I'm going to take this book and put it over there.

C-2

A. càw si aw pỳm hũa nỉ paj  
pá? wàj phùn bōō?

Are you going to take this book and leave it over there?

B. bōō, khōj si pá? pỳm hũa  
nỉ wàj nỉ

No. I'm going to leave this book here.

---

ຈົງສະແດງທາງທີ່ຕ່າງໆປະກອບກັບຄວາມໝາຍຂອງປໂຍກຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ເອົາໂປລູນ" ຕ່າງກັນກັບ "ເອົາມາສ" ຢ່າງໃດ. ຫລັງຈາກນັ້ນແລ້ວທ່ານລອງບອກໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນປະຕິບັດຕາມທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ!

---

NOTES

- 1) In Lao Verb Compounds are used in situations where Verb + Preposition or Verb + Adverb would be used in English: wáan wàj 'to put something in a place and leave it there': wáan 'to put, place' + wàj 'to leave for future use'; thée lón 'to pour, dump something out': thée 'to pour, dump' + lón 'to go down'; tàn wàj 'to set something up and leave it there': tàn 'to put something in a standing position' + wàj 'Leave for future use' njín sāj 'to shoot towards': njín 'to shoot a firearm; etc.' + sāj 'to put in'; leen ôok 'to escape out through': leen 'to run' + ôok 'to go out'.
  
- 2) If we analyze an English verb like 'bring', we will see that at least two things are involved: (1) taking hold of something and (2) moving it from one place to another in the direction of the speaker. In Lao both of these actions are reflected in the verb combination aw... máa (aw 'to take hold of' + máa 'to go towards the speaker'). aw... paj is used to indicate that the action is away from the speaker.
  - (a) Any object that is to be carried occurs after aw, thus aw pým paj 'take the book away', etc.
  - (b) A series of other verbs may occur after aw... paj, etc. aw paj wáan wàj phùn 'to take (it) over there and leave it'.
  
- 3) thím lón means literally 'to throw down' but corresponds to English 'drop'.
  
- 4) pá? means 'to leave something', thus pá?mía 'to divorce your wife'; pá?wàj 'to leave something temporarily.'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khôj si aw paj wáan wàj phùn, aw paj wáan wàj is (a) a series of Nouns, (b) Verb + Preposition (c) a series of verbs (d) none of these.
2. True or false? aw means 'to bring'.
3. wàj in the Verb Compound wáan wàj indicates that (a) the speaker has no further use for something, (b) He has further use for it, (c) There is no reference to further use.
4. Match these Lao sentences with the English sentences:
 

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <u>aw sǒdam láaw paj wàj phùn</u></p> <p>(b) <u>láaw si aw mûak paj pá' wàj</u><br/><u>sǎj</u></p> <p>(c) <u>láaw bǒo dàj thim khán hǒm</u><br/><u>láaw lón</u></p> <p>(d) <u>tamluat si njin sǎj phùn bǒo</u></p> | <p>(a) He didn't drop his umbrella.</p> <p>(b) Is the policeman aiming his gun over there?</p> <p>(c) Put his pencil over there.</p> <p>(d) Where is he going to leave his hat?</p> |
|---|---|

---

Answers: 1c, 2false, 3b, 4a and c, b and d, c and a, d and b.



CYCLE 21

M-1

náj káp

in the box

jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp nìi  
nìi bōo?

Where? In this box here?

thén lǎn tùu

on top of the cabinet

jūu sǎj? jūu thén lǎn tùu  
nìi nìi bōo?

Where? On top of this  
cabinet here?

náj lĩnsāk

in the drawer

jūu sǎj? jūu náj lĩnsāk  
nìi nìi bōo?

Where? In this drawer here?

náj kápōōŋ

in the can

jūu sǎj? jūu náj kápōōŋ  
nìi nìi bōo?

Where? In this can here?

khāan mǎanān

beside the bench

jūu sǎj? jūu khāan mǎanān  
nìi nìi bōo?

Where? Beside this bench  
here?

M-2

thǒŋ

bag

jūu náj thǒŋ nàn hân

In that bag there.

hōo

package

jūu náj hōo nàn hân

In that package there.

kèɛw, nūaj

bottle, classifier

jūu náj kèɛw nūaj nàh hân

In that bottle there.

cɔɔk, nūaj

glass, classifier

jūu náj cɔɔk nūaj nàh hân

In that glass there.

kátāa, nūaj

basket, classifier

jūu náj kátāa nūaj nàh hân

In that basket there.

C-1

A. jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp  
nīi nīi bɔɔ?

Where? In this box here?

B. bɔɔ, jūu náj káp nàh hân

No. In that box there.

C-2

A. jūu sǎj? jūu náj kèɛw  
nàh hân bɔɔ?

Where? In that bottle there?

B. bɔɔ, jūu náj kèɛw nīi nīi

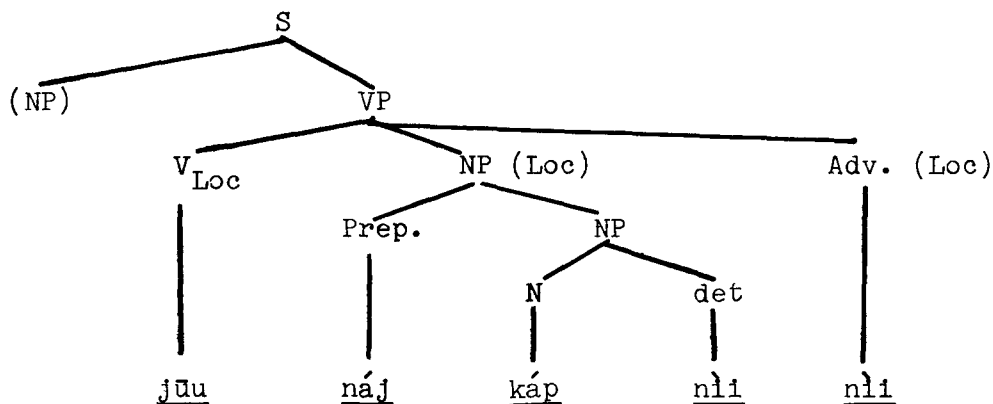
No. In this bottle here.

---

ການສະແດງໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນເຫັນດ້ວຍຕາຈະຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນຈຳໄດ້ໄວກວ່າການແປຄວາມໝາຍ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ, ຫາມຄວນຈະສະແດງໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນເບິ່ງໃນເວລາທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າກຳລັງຮຽນ. ຈະໃຫ້ຄຳອີກກໍໄດ້ ແຕ່ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ຈຳກັດ!

NOTES

- 1) As can be seen in this grammatical exposition, n̄i may function both as a Determiner and as an Adverb of Place:



([It] is in box this here.)

'It's in this box here.'

A complete list of words functioning like n̄i is given here:

Determiner

n̄i 'this'

n̄an 'that'

Adverb of Place

n̄i 'here'

ph̄i 'around here'

h̄an 'there'

ph̄un 'way over there'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence juu náj thǒŋ nàh hân, hân is (a) NP  
(b) preposition (c) determiner (d) adverb.
2. In the sentence above nàh is (a) NP (b) determiner  
(c) adverb (d) none of these.
3. Complete the following sentences using the English translation  
as a guide:
  - (a) juu náj kátāā nūaj \_\_\_\_\_ 'In that basket there.'
  - (b) juu thǒŋ lǎŋ tū \_\_\_\_\_ bōō 'On top of this cabinet  
here?'
  - (c) juu khāaŋ mǎanāŋ \_\_\_\_\_ bōō 'Beside that bench way  
over there?'
  - (d) juu \_\_\_\_\_? 'Where?'
  - (e) juu \_\_\_\_\_ 'Way over there.'
  - (f) juu \_\_\_\_\_ 'Near here.'
  - (g) juu náj thǒŋ \_\_\_\_\_ 'In that bag.'
  - (h) juu náj kèsw \_\_\_\_\_ nàh hân 'In that bottle there.'
  - (i) juu \_\_\_\_\_ tū nǐi nǐi bōō 'On top of this cabinet  
here?'

---

Answers: 1d, 2b, 3(a)nàh hân (b)nǐi phǐi (or) nǐi nǐi (c) nàh  
phùn (f) phǐi (or nǐi) (g)nàh (h)nūaj (i)thǒŋ lǎŋ

CYCLE 22

M-1

khǎj pátuu

open the door

càw si khǎj pátuu nìi  
phìi bɔɔ?

Are you going to open this  
door over here?

át pɔɔŋ-jiam

close the window

càw si át pɔɔŋ-jiam nìi  
phìi bɔɔ?

Are you going to close this  
window over here?

sāj kácɛɛ lɪnsāk

lock the drawer

càw si sāj kácɛɛ lɪnsāk  
nìi phìi bɔɔ?

Are you going to lock this  
drawer over here?

khǎj kácɛɛ hīp

unlock the trunk

càw si khǎj kácɛɛ hīp  
nìi phìi bɔɔ?

Are you going to unlock  
this trunk over here?

lón khândaj

go down the stairs

càw si lón khândaj nìi  
phìi bɔɔ?

Are you going down these  
stairs over here?

M-2

khǎj pátuu

open the door

khôj si khǎj pátuu nànn phùn

I'm going to open that door  
over there.

pīan jaan

change the tire

khôj si pīan jaan nànn phùn

I'm going to change that  
tire over there.

paj hǎa, phūu

go to, (classifier)

khōj si paj hǎa phūu nàn  
phùn

I'm going to see that person  
over there.

sᵛᵛjlyǎ, phūu

help, (classifier)

khōj si sᵛᵛjlyǎ phūu nàn  
phùn

I'm going to help that  
person over there.

tít-tᵛᵛ káp

contact, communicate with

khōj si tít-tᵛᵛ káp phūu  
nàn phùn

I'm going to contact that  
person over there.

C-1

A. càw si át pᵛᵛᵛᵛ-jlam nᵛi  
phᵛi bᵛᵛ?

Are you going to close this  
window over here?

B. bᵛᵛ khōj si át pᵛᵛᵛᵛ-jlam  
nàn phùn

No. I'm going to close that  
window over there.

C-2

A. càw si lónᵛ khāndaj nàn  
phùn bᵛᵛ?

Are you going to go down  
those stairs over there?

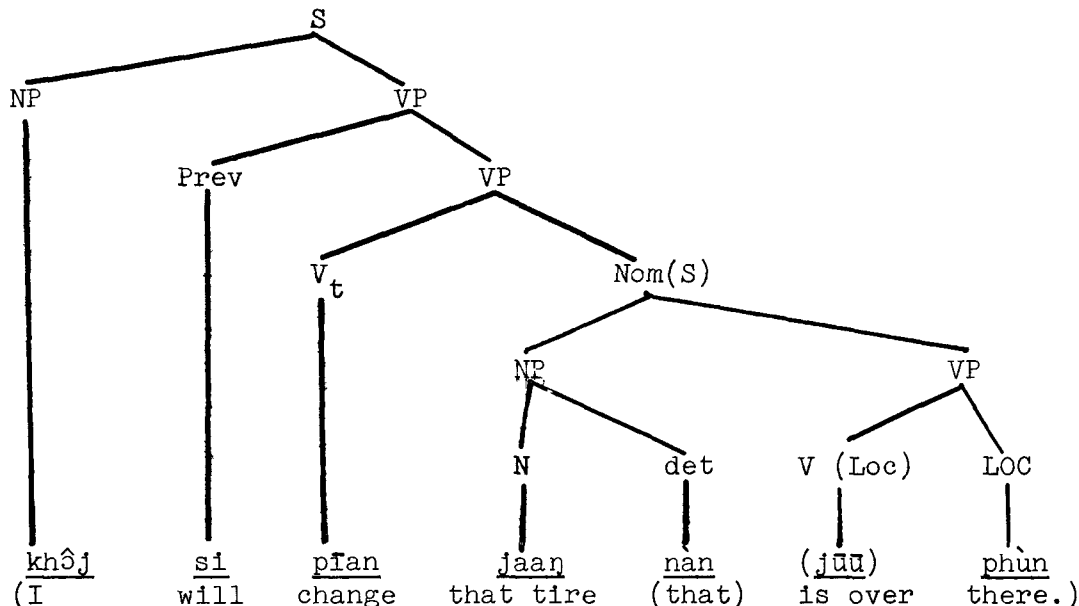
B. bᵛᵛ, khōj si lónᵛ khāndaj  
nᵛi phᵛi

No. I'm going to go down  
these stairs over here.

ຖ້າຫາກຫາມຄິດເຫັນວ່າມີຄຳກິຣິຍາຄຳໃດ ທີ່ຈະເປັນປູໂຍດສຳລັບນັກຮຽນກໍໃຫຍ່ອກຂະເຈົ້າຕື່ມອີກກໍໄດ້.  
ແຕ່ຕອງພາຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນເອົາໃຫ້ໄດ້ ບໍ່ແມ່ນວ່າເອົາໃຫ້ໄປຊື່ໆ. ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນປະຕິບັດຕາມຄຳບອກເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

- 1) phǐi and phùn may serve to indicate the location of the Noun Phrase they follow as in the example below:



'I will change that tire over there.'

In this example the reference is to a particular thing which is in a particular place. If a person didn't understand the statement above, his question would be jaan daj? 'Which tire?'

- 2) khǎj 'to open, unlock', át 'to close', and sāj 'to put in' occur in constructions like these:

khǎj pátuu, pǝǝŋ-jĭam, tùu, etc. 'to open the door, window, closet, etc.'

khǎj kácǝ pátuu, hĭp, tùu, lĭnsāk, etc. 'to unlock the door, trunk, closet, drawer, etc.'

át pátuu, pᵃᵃᵇ-jlam, etc. 'to close the door, etc.'  
 sāj kǎcεε pátuu, hīp, tūu, 'to lock the door, etc.'  
 līnsāk, etc.

- 3) paj hǎa + Person means 'to go to see a person'.  
 4) tít tᵃᵃ káp + Person means 'to contact someone (in person, or by telephone, or some other way).'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) càw si khǎj \_\_\_\_\_ pátuu nīi phīi bᵃᵃ?  
 'Are you going to unlock this door over here?'

(b) khᵇj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ phyan phūu nān phùn  
 'I'm going to see that friend over there.'

(c) láaw si bᵃᵃ \_\_\_\_\_ tūu nīi bᵃᵃ?  
 'Isn't he going to close this closet?'

(d) khᵇj si tít tᵃᵃ \_\_\_\_\_ phūu nān phùn  
 'I'm going to contact that person over there.'

(e) khᵇj si \_\_\_\_\_ láaw  
 'I'll help her.'

2. Read the Noun Phrase and answer the questions:

(a) pátuu nīi phīi. pátuu jᵃᵃ sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

(b) jaᵇj nān phùn. jaᵇj jᵃᵃ sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1(a)kǎcεε, (b)hǎa, (c)át, (d)káp, (e)sᵃᵃj lýa 2(a)jᵃᵃ  
 phīi (b)jᵃᵃ phùn



3. (c) phū̀ nà̀n ph̀n. phū̀ nà̀n jū̀ sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (d) pɔ̀n j̀am ǹi ph̀i. pɔ̀n j̀am jū̀ sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_
3. In the NP l̀nsǎk ǹi ph̀i, ph̀i is (a) determiner (b) adverb  
 (c) verb (d) none of these.
4. In the NP above, ph̀i (a) indicates the location of l̀nsǎk,  
 (b) modifies ǹi, (c) has no grammatical relationship to  
l̀nsǎk ǹi.

---

Answers: 2(c)jū̀ ph̀n, (d)jū̀ ph̀i, 3b, 4a

CYCLE 23

M-1

āan, pỳm, hũa to read, book, (classifier)  
 cằw si āan pỳm hũa nẳi Are you going to read this  
 jưư phẳi bằw? book over here?

pềeη, lỏt, khán. to fix, car, (classifier)  
 cằw si pềeη lỏt khán nẳi Are you going to fix this  
 jưư phẳi bằw? car over here?

sàj, khỏỏη, lắwnẳi. to use, thing, these  
 cằw si sàj khỏỏη lắwnẳi Are you going to use these  
 jưư phẳi bằw? things over here?

sắk, sỳa-nỏok, phỷyn. to wash, jacket, (classifier)  
 cằw si sắk sỳa-nỏok phỷyn Are you going to wash this  
 nẳi jưư phẳi bằw? jacket over here?

M-2

āan, pỳm, hũa to read, book, (classifier)  
 khỏỏj si paj āan pỳm hũa I'm going to read this book  
 nẳi jưư phùn over there.

phẳm, nắnsỷy to print, type; letter  
 khỏỏj si paj phẳm nắnsỷy I'm going to type this  
 nẳi jưư phùn letter over there.

sỳy, cì

to buy, paper

khôj si paj sỳy cì nìi  
jūu phùn

I'm going to buy this paper  
over there.

sìcɛɛŋ, lỳaŋ

to explain; matter, about

khôj si paj sìcɛɛŋ lỳaŋ  
nìi jūu phùn

I'm going to explain this  
matter over there.

M-3

lōtdút, pɛɛŋ, khán

bulldozer; to repair, fix;  
(classifier)

láaw si aw lōtdút khán  
nàn máa pɛɛŋ jūu phìi bōō?

Is he going to bring that  
bulldozer over here and  
fix it?

khỳaŋcák, nūaj, pákōp

engine, motor, machine,  
(classifier), to assemble

láaw si aw khỳaŋcák nūaj  
nàn máa pákōp jūu phìi  
bōō?

Is he going to bring that  
engine over here and  
assemble it?

mōōfáj, nūaj, sâak

battery (car), (classifier),  
charge (electricity)

láaw si aw mōōfáj nūaj  
nàn máa sâak jūu phìi bōō?

Is he going to bring that  
battery over here and  
charge it?

thūaj, sáam, lāwnàn, làaŋ

bowl, plate, those, wash

láaw si aw thūaj-sáam  
lāwnàn máa làaŋ jūu phìi  
bōō?

Is he going to bring those  
dishes over here and wash  
them?

M-4

jaan lõt, sên, tâap

láaw si aw jaan lõt sên  
nàn paj tâap jūu phùn

tire (car),(classifier), patch

He is going to take that  
tire over there and patch  
it.

tákiang, nūaj, tàj

láaw si aw tákiang nūaj nàn  
paj tàj jūu phùn

lamp,(classifier), to light

He is going to take that  
lamp over there and light  
it.

phâahôm, lāwnàn, cêskjaaj

láaw si aw phâahôm lāwnàn  
paj cêskjaaj jūu phùn

blanket, those, to distribute

He is going to take those  
blankets over there and  
distribute them.

tian, nūaj, tàn

láaw si aw tian nūaj nàn  
paj tàn jūu phùn

bed,(classifier), to set up

He is going to take that  
bed over there and set it  
up.

C-1

A. càw si āan pỳm hũa nỉ  
jūu phỉi boo?

Are you going to read this  
book over there?

B. bōo, khôj si āan jūu  
phùn

No. I'm going to read it  
over there.

C-2

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. láaw si aw lǝtdút khán<br>nàn máa pɛɛŋ jūu phǝi<br>bɔɔ? | Is he going to bring the<br>bulldozer over here and<br>fix it? |
| B. bɔɔ, láaw si aw paj pɛɛŋ<br>jūu phùn                    | No. He is going to take it<br>over there and fix it.           |

C-3 (With reference to Cycles 20, 21 and 22)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <u>Tutor</u> : 'láaw si āan p̀m hǝa<br>nǝi nǝi.' | 'He is going to read this<br>book here.' |
| A. láaw si hēt njǎŋ?                             | What is he going to do?                  |
| B. láaw si āan p̀m                               | He is going to read a book.              |
| A. láaw si āan p̀m hǝa daj?                      | Which book is he going to<br>read?       |
| B. láaw si āan p̀m hǝa nǝi.                      | He is going to read this<br>book.        |
| A. p̀m hǝa nǝi jūu sǎj?                          | Where is this book?                      |
| B. p̀m hǝa nǝi jūu nǝi                           | This book is here.                       |
| A. láaw si āan p̀m jūu sǎj?                      | Where is he going to read<br>the book?   |
| B. khǝj bɔɔ hùn                                  | I don't know.                            |

ທ່ານລອງແຕ່ງປໂຍກຄ່າຍງກັນກັບຢູ່ໃນຂໍ້(3)ນອນຈັກສາມສື່ປໂຍກເບິ່ງດູ ແລ້ວຈົງພານັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດໃນ  
ຫ້າມອງດຽວກັນ.

C-4

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><u>Tutor</u>: 'láaw si pīan jaan<br/>sên nàn jūu phùn.'</p> | <p>'He is going to change that<br/>tire over there.'</p> |
| <p>A. láaw si hēt njǎn?</p>                                    | <p>What is he going to do?</p>                           |
| <p>B. láaw si pīan jaan.</p>                                   | <p>He is going to change a tire.</p>                     |
| <p>A. láaw si pīan jaan sên daj?</p>                           | <p>Which tire is he going to<br/>change?</p>             |
| <p>B. láaw si pīan jaan sên nàn</p>                            | <p>He is going to change that<br/>tire.</p>              |
| <p>A. láaw si pīan jūu sǎj?</p>                                | <p>Where is he going to change<br/>it?</p>               |
| <p>B. láaw si pīan jūu phùn</p>                                | <p>He is going to change it<br/>over there.</p>          |
| <p>A. jaan sên nàn jūu sǎj?</p>                                | <p>Where is that tire?</p>                               |
| <p>B. khōj bōw hùn</p>   | <p>I don't know.</p>                                     |

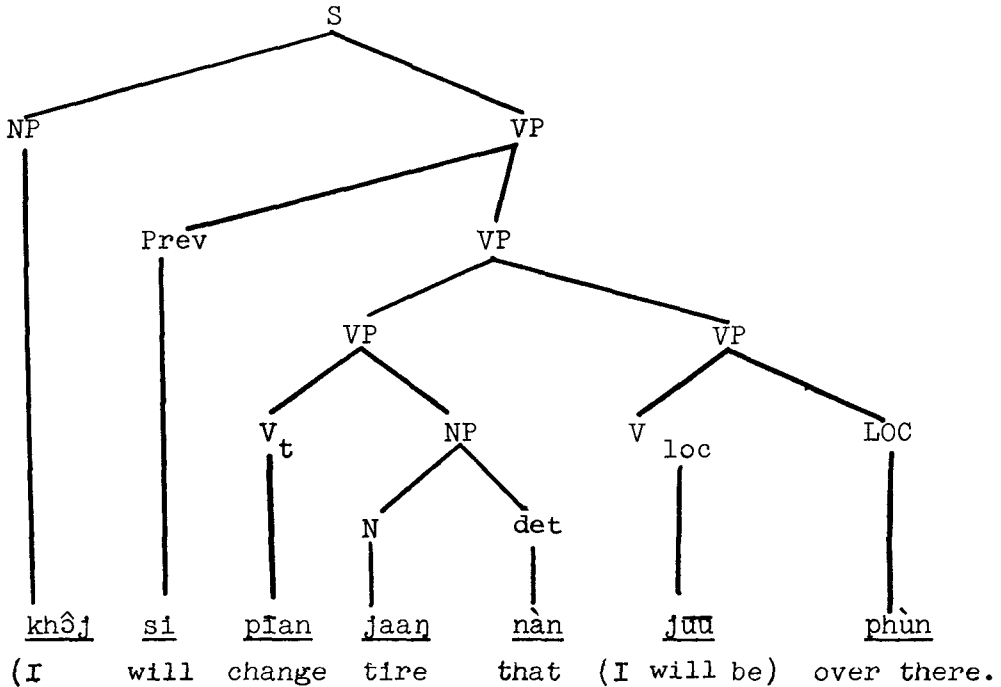
---

ຂໍ້(4)ນີ້ໃຫ້ໃຈວິຕິພິກັດທຳນອງດຽວກັນກັບຂໍ້(3). ຫາມເຕັມຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນໃນຄຳຖາມສຸດທ້າຍ  
ຂອງທັງສອງຂໍ້ບໍ່? ແລະນັກຮຽນຫາມເດກໍເຕັມຄືກັນບໍ່?

---

NOTES

- 1) If instead of indicating the location of a particular object (pátuu nîi phîi), the reference is to the location of a particular activity, juu + LOC is attached to the main VP as illustrated below:



'I will change that tire (in that spot) over there.'

The emphasis here is on where the changing will take place not on the particular tire to be changed; hence, the question which would elicit this response is:

caw si pian (jaan) juu săj 'Where will you change the tire?'

- 2) lāw 'group, bunch' is frequently used with Count Nouns to indicate 'plurality'.

khōṅ lāw nī                    'these things'  
phāahōm lāw nān                'those blankets'

- 3) A list of unit classifiers and the nouns they are used with is given below:

| <u>Classifier</u> |  | <u>Noun Referent</u> |              |
|-------------------|--|----------------------|--------------|
| hũa               | 'head'   | pỳm                  | 'book'       |
| khán              | 'vehicle'  | lōt                  | 'automobile' |
|                   |  | lōtdút               | 'bulldozer'  |
| phỷyn             | 'cloth'  | sỳa nōok             | 'jacket'     |
| nūaj              | 'unit' (It is<br>used for<br>fruit,<br>machines,<br>furniture,<br>equipment, etc.) | khỳançák             | 'engine'     |
|                   |  | tákian               | 'lamp'       |
|                   |  | tian                 | 'bed'        |
|                   |  | mōofáj               | 'battery'    |
| sên               | 'string'   | jaan (lōt)           | 'tire'       |

APPLICATION

1. In each of the following sentences indicate whether the emphasis is on the location of the NP or the VP by writing NP or VP in the blank after the sentence:

- (a) khōj si paj sēn pỳm hũa nī jūū phùn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) khōj si paj hũa phūū nān phùn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) càw si lón khāndaj nī phỉi bōo? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (d) láaw si aw thūaj-sáam lāwnān máa làan jūū phỉi bōo? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (e) càw si sàj khōṅ lāwnī jūū phỉi bōo? \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a)VP (b)NP (c)NP (d)VP (e)VP



2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) càw si āān p̄m \_\_\_\_\_ n̄i bōō?  
'Are you going to read this book?'
- (b) khōj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ l̄yāŋ n̄i jūū phùn  
'I'm going to explain this matter over there.'
- (c) aw lōtdút \_\_\_\_\_ m̄āa p̄sēŋ jūū ph̄i  
'Bring that bulldozer over here and fix it.'
- (d) láaw si aw phāahōm lāwnàn paj cēekjaaj \_\_\_\_\_  
'He is going to take those blankets over there and distribute them.'
- (e) khōj si sāk s̄yānòok \_\_\_\_\_ jūū ph̄i  
'I'm going to wash this jacket over here.'
- (f) láaw si aw jaan lōt \_\_\_\_\_ n̄àn paj \_\_\_\_\_ jūū phùn  
'He's going to take that tire over there and patch it.'

---

Answers: 2(a)h̄ũa (b)s̄iic̄sēŋ (c)khán n̄àn (d)jūū phùn (e)ph̄ȳyn  
n̄i (f) s̄ēn/tāap

CYCLE 24

M-1

sǔun

zero

sǔun káp n̄ȳn pen n̄ȳn

Zero and one is one.

n̄ȳn

one

n̄ȳn káp n̄ȳn pen s̄ɔ̄n

One and one is two.

s̄ɔ̄n

two

s̄ɔ̄n káp n̄ȳn pen sǎam

Two and one is three.

sǎam

three

sǎam káp n̄ȳn pen sīī

Three and one is four.

sīī

four

sīī káp n̄ȳn pen hâa

Four and one is five.

hâa

five

hâa káp n̄ȳn pen hók

Five and one is six.

hók

six

hók káp n̄ȳn pen cét

Six and one is seven.

cét

seven

cét káp n̄ȳn pen pê̄st

Seven and one is eight.

pê̄st

eight

pê̄st káp n̄ȳn pen kàw

Eight and one is nine.

kàw

nine

kàw káp n̄ȳn pen síp

Nine and one is ten.

M-2

|                                   |       |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| síp káp n̄ŋ pen síp-ét            |       | Ten and one is eleven.            |
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| síp-ét káp n̄ŋ pen sípsǎŋ         |       | Eleven and one is twelve.         |
| <u>pêst</u>                       | eight |                                   |
| sípsǎŋ káp pêst pen sáaw          |       | Twelve and eight is twenty.       |
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| sáaw káp n̄ŋ pen sáaw-ét          |       | Twenty and one is twenty one.     |
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| sáaw-ét káp n̄ŋ pen sáawsǎŋ       |       | Twenty-one and one is twenty two. |
| <u>pêst</u>                       | eight |                                   |
| sáawsǎŋ káp pêst pen sǎamsíp      |       | Twenty-two and eight is thirty.   |
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| sǎamsíp káp n̄ŋ pen sǎamsíp-ét    |       | Thirty and one is thirty-one.     |
| <u>n̄ŋ</u>                        | one   |                                   |
| sǎamsíp-ét káp n̄ŋ pen sǎamsípsǎŋ |       | Thirty-one and one is thirty two. |
| <u>kàw</u>                        | nine  |                                   |
| sǎamsípsǎŋ káp kàw pen síp-ét     |       | Thirty-two and nine is forty one. |

hâasíp-ét

fifty one

sîisíp-ét káp hâasíp-ét  
pen kàwsíp-sǝŋ

Forty-one and fifty-one is  
ninety two.

pêet

eight

kàwsíp-sǝŋ káp pêet pen  
n̄ŋ hǝŋ

Ninety-two and eight is  
one hundred.

kàw hǝŋ

nine hundred

n̄ŋ hǝŋ káp kàw hǝŋ pen  
n̄ŋ phán

One hundred and nine hundred  
is one thousand.

n̄ŋ

one

n̄ŋ phán káp n̄ŋ pen n̄ŋ  
phán káp n̄ŋ

One thousand and one is one  
thousand and one.

kàwsíp-kàw

ninety nine

n̄ŋ phán káp n̄ŋ káp kàwsíp  
kàw pen phán-ét l̄y n̄ŋ  
phán n̄ŋ hǝŋ

One thousand and one and  
ninety nine is one thousand  
one hundred.

phán-ét

one thousand one

phán-ét káp phán-ét pen sǝŋ  
phán sǝŋ

One thousand and one and one  
thousand is two thousand and  
one.

M-3

sɔɔŋ, hâa

two, five

sɔɔŋ káp hâa pen thāwdaj?

What is two and five?

síp-si, sǎam

fourteen, three

síp-si káp sǎam pen thāwdaj?

What is fourteen and three?

sáawhók, cét

twenty-six, seven

sáaw hók káp cét pen thāwdaj?

What is twenty six and seven?

sǎam síp sɔɔŋ, sɔɔŋ

thirty-two, two

sǎm síp sɔɔŋ káp sɔɔŋ pen  
thāwdaj?

What is thirty two and two?

hâa síp-ét, hók

fifty-one, six

hâa síp-ét káp hók pen  
thāwdaj?

What is fifty one and six?

C-1

A. ... káp ... pen thāwdaj?

... and ... is how much?

B. ... káp ... pen .....

... and ... is ... ..

C-2

A. ... káp ... pen ... mɛɛn boɔ?

... and ... is ... , isn't it?

B. boɔ mɛɛn, ... káp ... pen ...

No, it isn't. .. and --- is  
...

---

ຢ່າສອນນັກຮຽນນັບຕາມລຳດັບຂອງຕົວເລກ. ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດຍອກຕົວເລກເປັນພາສາລາວຢ່າງໄວ ໂດຍ  
ຕໍ່ຂະເຈົ້າຍ່ອຍຕົວເລກຕົວຈິງລຳດັບຂອງຕົວເລກ. ຫ່ານຈະສອນການຍວກ, ລົບ, ຄູນ, ຫານ ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້.

---

NOTES

- 1) The Lao numerical system is a decimal system and with a few exceptions complex numbers are made by multiplying by and/or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: n̄ȳn '1', s̄ɔ̄ŋ '2', s̄ɔ̄m '3', s̄īi '4', h̄aa '5', h̄ok '6', c̄et '7', p̄ɛ̄t '8', k̄aw '9', s̄ip '10'.

Multiples of ten (except for 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is s̄ɔ̄m s̄ip (3x10), 70 is c̄et s̄ip (7x10), etc. Numbers to be added to ten or multiples of ten occur afterwards, thus 13 is s̄ip s̄ɔ̄m (10+3), 34 is s̄ɔ̄m s̄ip s̄īi (3x10+4), etc. 20 is s̄aaw; 22 is s̄aaw s̄ɔ̄ŋ, etc.

The number one alone is n̄ȳn, but in compounds it is -ét, thus 21 is s̄aaw-ét; 51, h̄aa s̄ip-ét; 61, h̄ok s̄ip-ét, etc.

100 is n̄ȳn h̄òɔ̄j (l̄òɔ̄j) or h̄òɔ̄j (l̄òɔ̄j), but 101 is h̄òɔ̄j ét (l̄òɔ̄j ét) and 400 is s̄īi h̄òɔ̄j (s̄īi l̄òɔ̄j). h̄òɔ̄j and l̄òɔ̄j are interchangeable. phán-ét means '1100'; 1001 is phán káp n̄ȳn.

- 2) káp means 'and' or 'plus' when used as a connective between Nouns, NP, and numbers. It indicates that something has been added.

- (1) s̄ɔ̄ŋ káp s̄ɔ̄m pen h̄aa 'two plus three is five'  
 (2) n̄aaɔ̄j khúu káp n̄akh̄ián 'the teacher and students'

káp is not used as a sentence connective.

- 3) th̄āwdaj 'how much, how many' is used to request a numerical or quantitative response:

Q: s̄ɔ̄m s̄ip s̄ɔ̄ŋ káp s̄ɔ̄ŋ pen th̄āwdaj

'How much is 32 and 2?'

A: s̄ɔ̄m s̄ip s̄īi. '34'.

APPLICATION

1. If the correct Lao form is written after the arabic number, write 'correct' after the Lao; if it is incorrect, write in the correct Lao form.

- (a) 93 : kàw síp sǎam \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) 27 : sǎon síp cét \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) 71 : cét síp n̄ȳn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (d) 58 : p̄est síp h̄aa \_\_\_\_\_  
 (e) 101 : hòoj ét \_\_\_\_\_  
 (f) 24 : sáaw s̄ii \_\_\_\_\_  
 (g) 605 : hók lòoj h̄aa \_\_\_\_\_  
 (h) 42 : s̄ii sǎon \_\_\_\_\_  
 (i) 1 : ét \_\_\_\_\_  
 (j) 25 : sáaw síp h̄aa \_\_\_\_\_

2. Write in the correct answers to the following problems. Use arabic numbers.

- (a) p̄est káp hók pen \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) sǎam síp ét káp s̄ii síp kàw pen \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) h̄aa hòoj káp cét síp cét pen \_\_\_\_\_  
 (d) s̄un káp s̄un pen \_\_\_\_\_  
 (e) sáaw kàw káp p̄est síp cét pen \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a)correct (b)sáaw cét (c)cét síp-ét (d)h̄aa síp p̄est (e)correct (f)correct (g)correct (h)s̄ii síp sǎon (i)n̄ȳn (j)saaw h̄aa 2(a)14 (b)80 (c)577 (d)0 (e)116

CYCLE 25

M-1

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <u>mỳy nìi</u>              | today                                  |
| mỳy nìi mḗḗn wán njǎṅ?      | What day is today?                     |
| <u>mỳy-ḡyn</u>              | tomorrow                               |
| mỳy-ḡyn mḗḗn wán njǎṅ?      | What day is tomorrow?                  |
| <u>mỳy-hỳy</u>              | the day after tomorrow                 |
| mỳy-hỳy mḗḗn wán njǎṅ?      | What day is the day after tomorrow?    |
| <u>mỳy-wáan nìi</u>         | yesterday                              |
| mỳy-wáan nìi mḗḗn wán njǎṅ? | What day was yesterday?                |
| <u>mỳy-sỳyn</u>             | day before yesterday                   |
| mỳy-sỳyn mḗḗn wán njǎṅ?     | What day was the day before yesterday? |
| <u>mỳy kḗḗn</u>             | three days ago                         |
| mỳy kḗḗn mḗḗn wán njǎṅ?     | What day was three days ago?           |
| <u>sìi mỳy kḗḗn</u>         | four days ago                          |
| sìi mỳy kḗḗn mḗḗn wán njǎṅ? | What day was four days ago?            |

M-2

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <u>wán-aathít</u>       | Sunday           |
| mỳy nìi mḗḗn wán-aathít | Today is Sunday. |



wán-can

Monday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-can

Today is Monday.

wán-ankháan

Tuesday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-ankháan

Today is Tuesday.

wán-phūt

Wednesday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-phūt

Today is Wednesday.

wán-phāhát

Thursday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-phāhát

Today is Thursday.

wán-súk

Friday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-súk

Today is Friday.

wán-sǎw

Saturday

mỳy nìi mēen wán-sǎw

Today is Saturday.

C-1

A. mỳy nìi mēen wán njǎŋ?

What day is today?

B. mỳy nìi mēen .....

Today is .....

C-2

A. mỳy-wáan nìi mēen ...,  
mēen boov?

Yesterday was ..., right?

B. boov mēen, mỳy-wáan nìi  
mēen .....

No, yesterday was .....

---

ການສອນວັນກໍ່ເຮັດດັ່ງດຣວກັນກັບເລກ ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນຈື່ວັນຕ່າງໆໂດຍບໍ່ຕ້ອງຄຳນຶງເຖິງລຳດັບກ່ອນ.

---

NOTES

1) mỳy 'day' is used in constructions indicating relative time, thus: mỳy nìi 'today', mỳy ȳyn 'tomorrow', etc. mỳy is also used when referring to a period of time, thus sǎn mỳy 'two days' khǎn mỳy 'half a day', etc.

wán 'day' is used when giving the names of the days of the week: wán aathit 'Sunday', wán aṅkháan 'Tuesday', etc.

2) When asking the day of the week, mỳy nìi mēēn wán njǎn 'What day is today?' is used.

3) kǎn 'before', ago' is used to refer to a specific time in the past. sii mỳy kǎn 'four days ago', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Starting with the assumption that today is Wednesday fill in the blanks:

- (a) mỳy hỳy mēēn \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) sii mỳy kǎn mēēn \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) mỳy wáan nìi mēēn \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) mỳy nìi mēēn \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) mỳy sỳn mēēn \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) mỳy ȳyn mēēn \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a)wán-súk (b)wán-sǎw (c)wán-aṅkháan (d)wán-phūt  
(e)wán-can (f)wán-phǎhát

2) Starting with the assumption that today is Sunday, fill in the blanks below:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-aṅkháan  
 (b) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-sǎw  
 (c) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-súk  
 (d) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-aathit  
 (e) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-phāhát  
 (f) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-can  
 (g) \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn wán-phūt

---

Answers: 2(a)mỳy-hỳy (b)mỳy-wáan nīi (c)mỳy-sỳyn (d)mỳy nīi (e) mỳy kṣṣn (f)mỳy ȳyn (g)sīi mỳy kṣṣn

CYCLE 26

M-1

mōkkáráa

January

mōkkáráa mēēn dyan thǐi n̄ȳn,  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

January is the first month.  
What's the next month?

kumpháa

February

kumpháa mēēn dyan thǐi s̄ɔɔn  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

February is the second month.  
What's the next?

míináa

March

míináa mēēn dyan thǐi s̄am,  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

March is the third month.  
What's the next?

méesǎa

April

méesǎa mēēn dyan thǐi s̄ii,  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

April is the fourth month.  
What's the next?

ph̄ytsápháa

May

ph̄ytsápháa mēēn dyan thǐi  
háa, tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

May is the fifth month.  
What's the next?

míthúnáa

June

míthúnáa mēēn dyan thǐi hók,  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

June is the sixth month.  
What's the next?

kōorākádaa

July

kōorākádaa mēēn dyan thǐi  
cét, tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎ̄n?

July is the seventh month.  
What's the next month?

sǐnhǎa

August

sǐnhǎa mēēn dyan thǐi pēst,  
tɔɔ paj mēēn dyan njǎŋ?

August is the eighth month.  
What's the next?

M-2

mōkkáráa

January

lǎŋcâak dyan mōkkáráa mēēn  
dyan kumpháa

The month after January is  
February.

kumpháa

February

lǎŋcâak dyan kumpháa mēēn  
dyan míináa

The month after February is  
March.

míináa

March

lǎŋcâak dyan míináa mēēn  
dyan méesǎa

The month after March is April.

méesǎa

April

lǎŋcâak dyan méesǎa mēēn  
dyan phỹtsápháa

The month after April is May.

phỹtsápháa

May

lǎŋcâak dyan phỹtsápháa  
mēēn dyan mǐthúnáa

The month after May is June.

mǐthúnáa

June

lǎŋcâak dyan mǐthúnáa mēēn  
dyan koorākádaa

The month after June is July.

M-3

mōkkáráa

January

kōon dyan mōkkáráa mēen  
dyan thánwáa

The month before January is  
December.

thánwáa

December

kōon dyan thánwáa mēen dyan  
phỹtsácíkaa

The month before December is  
November.

phỹtsácíkaa

November

kōon dyan phỹtsácíkaa mēen  
dyan túláa

The month before November is  
October.

túláa

October

kōon dyan túláa mēen dyan  
kannjáa

The month before October is  
September.

kannjáa

September

kōon dyan kannjáa mēen  
dyan sǐnhǎa

The month before September  
is August.

sǐnhǎa

August

kōon dyan sǐnhǎa mēen  
dyan kōorākádaa

The month before August is  
July.

C-1

- A. ... mɛɛn dyan thii ..., tɔɔ ... is the ... month.  
 paj mɛɛn dyan njǎŋ? What's the next?
- B. tɔɔ paj mɛɛn dyan .... The next is .....

C-2

- A. lǎncâak dyan ... mɛɛn What's the month after....?  
 dyan njǎŋ?
- B. lǎncâak dyan ... mɛɛn The month after ... is ...  
 dyan .....

C-3

- A. kɔɔn dyan ... mɛɛn dyan What's the month before ...?  
 njǎŋ?
- B. kɔɔn dyan ... mɛɛn dyan ... Before ... is ... .

---

ໂຕ້ໝຍາຍາມໃຈປະຕິທິນປະກອບໃນການສອນ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນທັດໃຈເປັນພາສາລາວ. ຄຳວ່າ "ຫລັງຈາກ",  
 "ກ່ອນ", "ຕໍ່ໄປ" ແລະ "ກ່ອນ" ຈະນຳໄປໃຈຝັກທັດກັບຄຳອື່ນໆທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວກໍໄດ້.

---

NOTES

- 1) The names of the months in Lao are (in order): mōkkáráa, kumpháa, míináa, méesáa, phŷtsápháa, mīthúnáa, koorākádaa, sīnháa, kannjáa, tuláa, phŷtsáakáa, thánwáa.
- 2) Ordinal numbers (first, second, etc.) are formed by placing thíi before Cardinal numbers (one, two, etc.): thíi nŷn 'first', thíi sáam 'third', thíi hóksíp '60th', thíi pēetsípkàw '89th', etc.
- 3) tōō paj 'next' is a Verb Phrase made up of tōō 'to join, extend' + paj '(to go) forward' (in this type of construction). tōō paj may be used to indicate an extension in time or space. In time expressions it normally refers to future time.

tōō paj mēēn dyan njǎn 'What month is next?'

- 4) lǎncâak 'after' is a Verb Phrase and refers to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

With NP: lǎncâak dyan mōkkáráa 'After January'  
 With VP: lǎncâak kin khâw 'After eating'  
 With S: lǎncâak láaw paj 'After he went to the  
tálâat... market...'

- 5) kōōn 'before, previous' is a verb. It refers only to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

Before NP: kōōn dyan thánwáa 'Before December'  
 Before VP: kōōn paj kin khâw 'Before going to eat'  
 Before S: kōōn láaw paj ... 'Before he went...'



APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks with the name of the month:
  - (a) dyan thíi hók mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  - (b) dyan thíi síp-ét mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  - (c) dyan thíi sǒŋ mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  - (d) dyan thíi hâa mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  - (e) dyan thíi pēt mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  - (f) dyan thíi sīi mēēn dyan \_\_\_\_\_
  
2. Fill in the blanks with the number of the month:
  - (a) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan míináa
  - (b) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan mōkkáráa
  - (c) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan túláa
  - (d) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan kōorākádaa
  - (e) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan kannjáa
  - (f) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan thánwáa
  
3. Fill in the blanks with tǒǒ paj, kǒǒn, or lǎŋcâak as required:
  - (a) \_\_\_\_\_ dyan phytsácíkaa mēēn dyan túláa
  - (b) \_\_\_\_\_ dyan kumpháa mēēn dyan míináa
  - (c) kannjáa mēēn dyan thíi kàw. \_\_\_\_\_ mēēn dyan túláa

---

Answers: 1(a)míthúnáa (b)túláa (c)kumpháa (d)phytsápháa  
 (e)sǐnháa (f)méesáa, 2(a)sám(b)nǐŋ (c)síp (d)cét(e)kàw  
 (f)síp sǒŋ, 3(a)kǒǒn (b)lǎŋcâak (c)tǒǒpaj

CYCLE 27

M-1

mỳy nìi

today

mỳy nìi mēēn wánthíi thāwdaj?      What's the date today?

wán-kêet

birthday

wán-kêet càw mēēn wánthíi      What's your birth date?  
thāwdaj?

pii-māj láaw

Lao New Year

pii-māj láaw mēēn wánthíi      What's the date of the Lao  
thāwdaj?      New Year?

wán êekkàràat

Independence Day

wán êekkàràat mēēn wánthíi      What's the date of Independence  
thāwdaj?      Day?

wán rāthāthāmmānūun

Constitution Day

wán rāthāthāmmānūun mēēn      What's the date of Constitution  
wánthíi thāwdaj?      Day?

wán kammākoon

Labor Day

wán kammākoon mēēn wánthíi      What's the date of Labor Day?  
thāwdaj?

M-2

kêet

born

càw kêet wánthíi thāwdaj?      What date were you born?

tɛɛŋŋáan

get married

càw tɛɛŋŋáan wánthíi  
thāwdaj?

What date did you get married  
on?

míi nāt

have a date

càw míi nāt wánthíi  
thāwdaj?

What date do you have a date  
on?

ôok dæntháan

begin a trip

càw ôok dæntháan wánthíi  
thāwdaj?

What date did you begin your  
trip?

paj/máa hòot

arrive

càw paj hòot wánthíi  
thāwdaj?

What date did you arrive  
there?

C-1

A. mỳy nìi mɛɛn wánthíi  
thāwdaj?

What's the date today?

B. mỳy nìi mɛɛn wánthíi sípsii  
phỳtsápháa pii phán kàw  
hòoj cét-síp

Today is the 14th of May 1970.

C-2

A. càw kêet wánthíi thāwdaj?

What date were you born?

B. khôj kêet wánthíi síp hâa  
mōkkáráa pii phán kàw  
hòoj síisíp-ét

I was born on the fifteenth  
of January nineteen forty-one.

C-3

- A. càw sɪ ʋɔk dəəntháaŋ wánthíi kàw mɛɛn bɔɔ? You are going to begin your trip on the ninth, right?
- B. bɔɔ mɛɛn, khɔ́j sɪ ʋɔk dəəntháaŋ wánthíi sɪp mínáa No. I'll begin my trip on the tenth of March.

ຖາມວັນເກີດຂອງບຸກຄົນຕ່າງໆຫລືວັນທີ່ສຳຄັນຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຕໍ່ໄປກໍ່ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນໂດຍນາຍຄຣູ ເປັນຜູ້ຄອຍກວດການເວົ້າຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ. ຈົ່ງພະຍາຍາມໃຈຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫລາຍໆ.

NOTES

- 1) wán thíi thāwdaj (lit. the how many-eth day) 'What day?' is used in asking for dates. In the response the sequence of elements is (a) day (b) month (c) year.

- Q: càw kɛ̀et wánthíi thāwdaj 'When were you born?'
- A: khɔ́j kɛ̀et wánthíi sɪp hāa mɔ́kkáráa 'I was born January  
píi phán kàw hòɔj sɪl sɪp ét 15, 1941.'
- (a) day: wánthíi sɪp hāa 'the fifteenth'
- (b) month: mɔ́kkáráa 'January'
- (c) year: píi phán kàw hòɔj sɪl (Lit. year thousand  
sɪp-ét nine hundred forty one) '1941'

píi 'year' always precedes the designation for year. The year is always given thusly: phán ... hòɔj ... (one thousand ... hundred ...) and never: sɪp kàw hòɔj ... (nineteen hundred ...).

APPLICATION

1. On a separate piece of paper write out in full the dates given below, then check your answers:

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| (a) May 7, 1931      | (b) September 23, 1919 |
| (c) February 1, 1947 | (d) December 25, 1963  |
| (e) August 30, 1926  | (f) April 14, 1970     |

---

Answers: (a)wánthíi cét dyan phŷtsápháa phán kàw hòoj sǎam síp-ét (b)wánthíi sáaw sǎam dyan kannjǎa phán kàw hòoj síp kàw (c)wánthíi nŷn dyan kumpháa phán kàw hòoj sŷi síp cét (d)wánthíi sáaw hǎa dyan thánwǎa phán kàw hòoj hók síp sǎam (e)wánthíi sǎam síp dyan sŷnhǎa phán kàw hòoj sáaw hók (f)wánthíi síp sŷi dyan méesǎa phán kàw hòoj cét síp

CYCLE 28

M-1

mỳy

day

càw si paj mỳy daj?

When (what day) will you go?

pii

year

càw si paj pii daj?

When (what year) will you go?

aathit

week

càw si paj aathit daj?

When (which week) will you go?

ookâat

occasion

càw si paj ookâat daj?

When (on what occasion) will you go?

wéeláa

time

càw si paj wéeláa daj?

When will you go?

sūamóoŋ

hour

càw si paj sūamóoŋ daj?

Which hour will you go?

dyan

month

càw si paj dyan daj?

What month will you go?

M-2

sūamóoŋ thíi sǒŋ

second hour

khôj si paj sūamóoŋ thíi  
sǒŋ

I will go at the second hour.

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <u>aathit nâa</u>                     | next week   |
| khôj si paj aathit nâa                | I will go next week.                              |
| <u>pii nâa</u>                        | next year   |
| khôj si paj pii nâa                   | I will go next year.                              |
| <u>mỳ yyr</u>                         | tomorrow  |
| khôj si paj mỳ yyr                    | I will go tomorrow.                               |
| <u>náj ookâat bun thàat lǔaŋ</u>      | on the occasion of That Luang festival            |
| khôj si paj náj ookâat bun thàat lǔaŋ | I will go on the occasion of That Luang festival. |
| <u>wéeláa càw máa</u>                 | when you come                                     |
| khôj si paj wéeláa càw máa            | I will go when you come.                          |
| M-3                                   |   |
| <u>khâw hóonhían</u>                  | enter school                                      |
| mỳ daj càw si khâw hóonhían?          | When will you enter school?                       |
| <u>ôok lùuk</u>                       | give birth  |
| mỳ daj càw si ôok lùuk ?              | When will you have your baby?                     |
| <u>cèeŋ tamlúat</u>                   | report to the police                              |
| mỳ daj càw si cèeŋ tamlúat?           | When will you report to the police?               |
| <u>aw khýyn háj láaw</u>              | return (it) to him                                |
| mỳ daj càw si aw khýyn háj láaw ?     | When will you return it to him?                   |

hían sǎmrēt

mỳy daj càw si hían sǎmrēt

finish study

When will you finish  
your studies?

M-4

mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎṅ?

What are you going to do today?

aathit nìi càw si paj sǎj?

Where are you going to go this  
week?

sūamóṅ nìi càw si hían njǎṅ?

What are you going to study  
this hour?

wéeláa nìi càw phāk jūu sǎj?

Where are you staying at the  
present time?

paj thīaw

to go on a pleasure trip (or walk)

pīi nìi láaw si paj thīaw  
sǎj?

Where is he going to go on  
a pleasure trip this year?

sǒṅ

to teach

mỳy wáncan nìi láaw si  
sǒṅ phǎj?

Who is she going to teach  
this Monday?

M-5

týkbét

to fish

aathit nìi khōj si paj  
týkbét

This week I am going to go  
fishing.

kinkhâw pāa

picnic

aathit nìi khōj si paj  
kinkhâw pāa.

This week I'm going to go  
picnicking.



khésm thāléé

aathít nīi khôj sī paj  
khésm thāléé

seashore

This week I'm going to go  
to the seashore.

lāa sāt

aathít nīi khôj sī paj  
lāa sāt

hunt

This week I'm going to go  
hunting.

thātsánaacoon

aathít nīi khôj sī paj  
thātsánaacoon

sightseeing

This week I'm going to go  
sightseeing.

tāaṅ páthèet

aathít nīi khôj sī paj  
tāaṅ páthèet

foreign country

This week I'm going abroad.

C-1

(mỳy)

A. càw sī paj mỳy daj?

day

{ When  
What day are you going?

(mỳy nīi)

B. khôj sī paj mỳy nīi

today

I am going today.

C-2

(láaw)

A. láaw sī paj bōō?

she

Is she going?

B. paj

Yes, she is going.

(wéeláa)

time

A. láaw si paj wéeláa daj?

When is she going?

(phùakháw paj)

we go

B. láaw si paj wéeláa  
phùakháw paj

She is going when we go.

C-3

A. mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎŋ?

What are you going to do today?

B. mỳy nìi khōj si paj  
kinkhâw pāa

Today I'm going to go picnicking.

C-4

A. pii daj càw si hían  
sǎmrēt

What year will you complete your studies?

B. khōj si hían sǎmrēt pii nǎa

I'll complete my studies next year.

ບົດນີ້ຍາວແດັຈັກຫນ້ອຍ. ສະນັ້ນ ຈິ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈຢ່າງລະອຽດ. ຜູ້ຂຽນ ຢາກອໍ້ແນບນຳອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງວ່າ ການສອນ " ໂຊເຖີລ " ນີ້ ຄົນເບິ່ງເພິ່ນໆແລ້ວຄືຈະງ່າຍໆ. ແຕ່ຖ້າຈະໃຫ້ໄດ້ ພິ່ນຢ່າງພໍໃຈແລ້ວ ນາຍຄູຈະຕ້ອງຄິດຢູ່ສູ່ເມື່ອວ່າ ກ່ອນຫນ້າຮຽນຈະສາມາດເວົ້າພາສາທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນໄດ້ ຢ່າງສະບາຍແລ້ວແນບນຽນ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງມີຄວາມເຊື່ອໝັ້ນໃນຕົວເອງ; ການເວົ້າຢ່າງກະຕຸກກະຕັກ ຍອມສະແດງໃຫ້ເຫັນເຖິງຄວາມບໍ່ໝັ້ນໃຈ ແລະຄວາມເລື່ອນລາງໃນຄວາມຈິງຈຳຂອງຜູ້ເວົ້າ. ເມື່ອ ເຫັນວ່າເປັນດັ່ງນີ້ແລ້ວ ກໍຈິ່ງພານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເວົ້າຫຼາຍໆໂຍກຈົນລຽນເສັ້ນກ່ອນຈິ່ງຮຽນອັນໃຫມ່ໄປ.

NOTES

- 1) Time Expressions, such as aathit nâa, etc. may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position with little or no difference in meaning. Their position is determined by the type of sentence they occur in. (1) When they occur in sentences with njăn or săj as question words, they are in sentence initial position:

Q: mỳy nìi càw si hēt njăn 'What are you going to do today?'

A: mỳy nìi khôj si hēt kaan 'Today I'm going to work.'

- 2) When they occur in other types of sentences, they may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position:

{ Q: mỳy daj càw si khâw hóonhian 'When will you start school?'

{ Q: càw si khâw hóonhian mỳy daj 'When will you start school?'

{ A: khôj si khâw hóonhian mỳy yyn 'I'm starting tomorrow.'

{ A: mỳy yyn 'Tomorrow'.

mỳy yyn khôj si khâw hóonhian might occur in a statement, but it would not occur in a response to a question.

- 2) daj 'which, what' may occur after time words like mỳy 'day' aathit 'week', pi 'year', etc. with the meaning 'one particular unit of time': mỳy daj 'what day?', pi daj 'which year', etc. Or it may occur after wéeláa 'time' with the meaning 'indefinite time': wéeláa daj 'when (what time)'

- 3) wéeláa 'time' is used in the following senses:

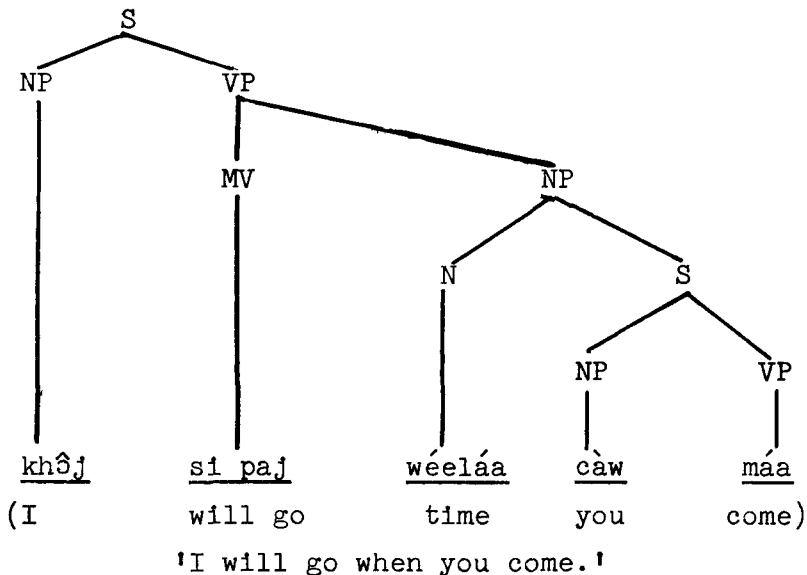
(a) a time for doing something

wéeláa kin khâw 'time to eat'

(b) a particular moment or period of time

wéeláa láaw máa 'when (the time) he came'

In this last sense it may serve as a connector between the Main Sentence and an included sentence as illustrated in the example below:



kɔɔn 'before' and lǎncâak 'after' can replace wéeláa in the construction above.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khôj si paj píi nâa, píi nâa is (a) VP (b) NP (c)MV (d) time expression.
2. A possible answer to the question caw si máa píi daj would be (a) aathít nâa (b) píi daj (c) bɔɔ máa (d) píi nâa

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2d

3. Which of the following are acceptable answers to the question càw si paj weeláa daj (a) mýy yyn, (b) náj ookâat bun thàat lúan (c) aathit nâa (d) sûa moon thi sôn (e) all of these.
4. Give reasonable answers to the following questions: (a) càw si máa weeláa daj (b) dyan nâa yaj càw si paj sǎj (c) aathit nâa càw si paj tát phôm jûu haan tát phôm bôo (d) láaw si paj mýy daj (e) càw si sòokhǎa phyan láaw weeláa daj...
5. Using wéeláa as a connective, combine the following pairs of sentences.
- (a) khôj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ càw máa
- (b) láaw si máa \_\_\_\_\_ khácàw paj
- (c) láaw si paj thóorásáp \_\_\_\_\_ càw máa
- (d) khôj si paj kin khâw \_\_\_\_\_ càw máa
- (e) déknòoj phuu nân lîn \_\_\_\_\_ mǎe láaw fán withānjū?
- (f) láaw si sōn thóorālèek \_\_\_\_\_ phōo láaw máa
6. Repeat No.5 using kōōn as a connective.
7. Repeat No.5 using lǎncâak as a connective.

---

Answers: 3e, 4(a)khôj si máa aathit nâa (or) aathit nâa, etc.  
 (b)dyan nâa láaw si paj... (c)bōō, bōō paj (or)  
 si paj (d)mýy yyn (or) láaw si paj mýy yyn  
 (e)dyan nâa (or) khôj si sòokhǎa phyan láaw dyan  
 nâa 5put weeláa in the spaces between sentences  
 6put kōōn in the spaces 7put lǎncâak in the spaces.

CYCLE 29

M-1

|                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <u>pêst</u>                    | eight                     |
| diawnlîi pêt mông              | It's eight o'clock.       |
| <u>síp</u>                     | ten                       |
| diawnlîi síp mông              | It's ten o'clock.         |
| <u>pêt... khəŋ</u>             | eight, half               |
| diawnlîi pêt mông khəŋ         | It's half past eight.     |
| <u>kàw, síphâa</u>             | nine, fifteen             |
| diawnlîi kàw mông síphâa       | It's 9:15.                |
| <u>cét, nján síp</u>           | seven, ten of             |
| diawnlîi cét mông nján síp     | It's ten to seven (6:50). |
| <u>hâa... sáaw</u>             | five, twenty              |
| diawnlîi hâa mông sáaw         | It's 5:20                 |
| <u>săam, nján síphâa</u>       | three, 15 of              |
| diawnlîi săam mông nján síphâa | It's 2:45.                |
| <u>sii, síp</u>                | four, ten                 |
| diawnlîi sii mông síp          | It's 4:10.                |
| <u>hók... khəŋ</u>             | six, half                 |
| diawnlîi hók mông khəŋ         | It's 6:30.                |

M-2

diawnìi cák móon lèɛw?                      What time is it?

C-1

A. diawnìi cák móon lèɛw                      What time is it?

B. diawnìi .....                      It's .....

ຈົງຖາມນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານກ່ຽວກັບເວລາຂອງໂມງແລະເວລາຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ດຽວນີ້ຈັກໂມງແລ້ວ? ຈົງຖາມເຖິງເວລາຂອງການປະກອບກິຈັດປະຈຳວັນຂອງນັກຮຽນເອງ ແລະຈົງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຕອບຈົນຫາມພໍໃຈ.

NOTES

1) móon 'o'clock' is used in asking and telling time.

Asking the time:

diawnìi + Number (Q) + móon lèɛw

diawnìi    cák                      móon lèɛw  
 'What time is it?'

2) Telling time:

(diawnìi) + Number + móon + Part of hour

diawnìi                      pêɛt                      móon                      síp hâa

(now                      it's    8                      o'clock                      15)

'It's 8:15.'

If it is after the half hour, the number of minutes remaining before the hour is indicated by putting nján 'yet' after the hour followed by the number of minutes remaining:

síp móon nján síp  
 (ten o'clock yet ten)  
 '10 minutes to ten.'

APPLICATION

1. Using the numbers as a guide, complete the following time expressions:

- (a) diawnìi pêt móon \_\_\_\_\_ (8:15)
- (b) diawnìi \_\_\_\_\_ móon (9:00)
- (c) diawnìi síp móon \_\_\_\_\_ síp (9:50)
- (d) diawnìi sTl móon \_\_\_\_\_ (4:30)
- (e) diawnìi \_\_\_\_\_ móon lèsw? (What time is it?)
- (f) diawnìi hâa móon \_\_\_\_\_ (5:10)
- (g) diawnìi sǒon móon nján \_\_\_\_\_ (1:35)
- (h) diawnìi cét móon \_\_\_\_\_ (7:20)

2. Look at your watch and write out in full the correct time on this line. \_\_\_\_\_

Answers: 1(a)síphâa (b)kàw (c)nján (d)khǒn (e)cák (f)síp  
 (g)sáaw hâa (h)sáaw 2you'll have to decide what the correct answer to this is yourself.



CYCLE 30

M-1

pêst, sàw

8, morning

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ pêt  
mooŋ sàw

I go shopping at eight in  
the morning.

sípsǎoŋ, thiāŋ

12, noon

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ síp  
sǎoŋ mooŋ thiāŋ

I go shopping at 12 noon.

sǎoŋ, bāaj

2, afternoon

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ bāaj  
sǎoŋ mooŋ

I go shopping at 2 in the  
afternoon.

hāa, léεŋ

5, evening

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ hāa  
mooŋ léεŋ

I go shopping at 5 in the  
evening.

kàw, kaaŋkhýyn

9, night

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ kàw  
mooŋ kaaŋkhýyn

I go shopping at 9 in the  
evening.

síp ét, khǎŋ

11, half

khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ síp-  
ét mooŋ khǎŋ

I go shopping at 11:30.

M-2

|                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <u>hóonhían</u>              | school                               |
| càw paj hóonhían cák móon?   | What time do you go to school?       |
| <u>hētkaan</u>               | work                                 |
| càw paj hētkaan cák móon?    | What time do you go to work?         |
| <u>sỳy khǎon</u>             | shop                                 |
| càw paj sỳy khǎon cák móon?  | What time did you go <b>shop</b> ?   |
| <u>kin kaafée</u>            | have coffee                          |
| càw paj kin kaafée cák móon? | What time do you go to drink coffee? |
| <u>dỹm nàmsáa</u>            | drink tea                            |
| càw paj dỹm nàmsáa cák móon? | What time do you go to drink tea?    |
| <u>nóon</u>                  | sleep                                |
| càw paj nóon cák móon?       | What time do you go to bed?          |
| <u>lój nàm</u>               | swim                                 |
| càw paj lój nàm cák móon?    | What time do you go to swim?         |

M-3

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <u>hóonhían</u> , <u>kàw móon sàw</u> | school, 9:00 a.m.           |
| khôj paj hóonhían kàw móon sàw        | I go to school at 9:00 a.m. |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <u>hētkaan</u> , <u>pêet</u> <u>móon</u> <u>khǝn</u> <u>toon</u><br><u>sàw</u> | work, 8:30 a.m.                        |
| khǝj paj hēt kaan pêet<br>móon khǝn toon sàw                                   | I go to work at 8:30 a.m.              |
| <u>sỳy</u> <u>khǝon</u> , <u>síp-ét</u> <u>móon</u> <u>sàw</u>                 | shopping, 11 a.m.                      |
| khǝj paj sỳy khǝon síp-ét<br>móon sàw  | I went shopping at 11 a.m.             |
| <u>kin</u> <u>kaafée</u> , <u>bāaj</u> <u>sǎam</u> <u>móon</u>                 | drink coffee, 3 p.m.                   |
| khǝj paj kin kaafée bāaj<br>sǎam móon  | I went to drink coffee at<br>3:00 p.m. |
| <u>dỳm</u> <u>nàmsáa</u> , <u>bāaj</u> <u>sii</u> <u>móon</u> <u>khǝn</u>      | drink tea, 4:30 p.m.                   |
| khǝj paj dỳm nàmsáa bāaj<br>sii móon khǝn                                      | I went to drink tea at 4:30<br>p.m.    |
| <u>nóon</u> , <u>síp</u> <u>móon</u> <u>kaan</u> <u>khýyn</u>                  | (go) to bed, 10:00 p.m.                |
| khǝj paj nóon síp móon<br>kaan <u>khýyn</u>                                    | I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.              |
| <u>bǝn</u> <u>siinée</u> , <u>cét</u> <u>móon</u> <u>léen</u>                  | go to the movies, 7:00 p.m.            |
| khǝj paj bǝn siinée cet<br>móon léen   | I went to the movies at<br>7:00 p.m.   |
| <u>lój</u> <u>nàm</u> , <u>síp</u> <u>sǝon</u> <u>móon</u> <u>thiæn</u>        | go swimming, 12 noon                   |
| khǝj paj lój nàm síp<br>sǝon móon thiæn  | I go swimming at twelve noon.          |

C-1

(lǎwj nàm)

A. cǎw si paj lǎwj nàm cǎk  
móonj?

What time will you go to  
swimming?

(9, njánj 15)

B. khǐj si paj kǎw móonj njánj  
síp hǎa

I will go at a quarter  
to 9.

C-2

(sǎj)

A. láaw paj sǎj?

Where did he go?

(kin kaafée)

B. láaw paj kin kaafée

He went to have coffee.

(cǎk móonj)

A. láaw paj cǎk móonj?

What time did he go?

(pêet, síp)

B. láaw paj pêet móonj síp.

He went at ten past eight.

ຂ້າງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈເຖິງການໃຊ້ຫລືບອກເວລາຕ່າງໆ ຈົນຂະເຂົ້າຍອກເວລາໄດ້ຢ່າງງ່າຍດາຍ.  
ອັນໃດເລີ່ມເວລາໃດ? ໃຜຈະເຮັດຫຍັງຫລືມີຫຍັງເກີດຂຶ້ນເວລາໃດ? ດັ່ງນັ້ນຕົນ.

NOTES

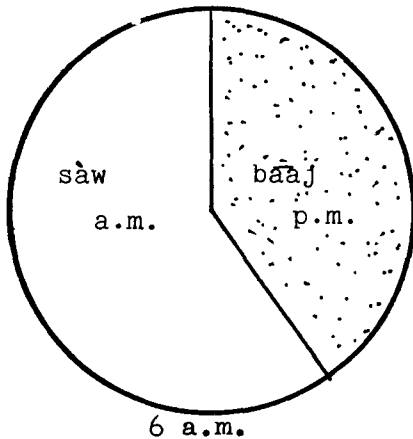
1 Words designating the part of the day like sàw 'a.m.' are usually placed after móon in time expressions, thus

cét móon sàw '7 a.m.'    síp sǎon móon thian '12 noon'

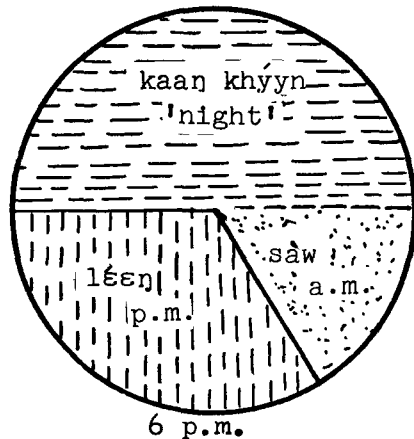
hâa móon léen '5 p.m.'    síp-ét móon kaan khýyn '11 p.m.'

The approximate period of time referred to by such terms as sàw, etc. is indicated on the clock faces below

Noon



Midnight



APPLICATION

1. Complete the following examples:

- (a) 9:00 a.m. kàw móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) 1:30 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ móon khǝn
- (c) 5:00 p.m. hâa móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) 12:00 síp sǝon móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) 4:00 p.m. bǝaj sɪɪ \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) 11:00 a.m. síp-ét móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (g) 10:00 p.m. síp móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (h) 8:00 p.m. pǝet móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (i) 6:50 cét móon \_\_\_\_\_ síp
- (j) 3:20 p.m. bǝaj sǝam móon \_\_\_\_\_
- (k) 10:30 a.m. síp móon \_\_\_\_\_ tǝon sàw
- (l) 12:15 p.m. síp sǝon móon \_\_\_\_\_ tǝon thɪan

2. Complete the blanks with the time that you normally do the things indicated:

- (a) khǝj paj hóonhɪan \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) khǝj paj kin kaafée \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) khǝj paj sỳy khǝon \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) khǝj paj nóon \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a)sàw (b)bǝaj (c)lǝen (d)thɪan (e)móon (f)sàw  
 (g)kaan khýyn, lǝen (h)lǝen (i)njan (j)sáaw  
 (k)khǝn (l)síp hâa 2you will have to check own  
 answers here.

CYCLE 31

M-1

sáwm̄yaj, náathíi, síp

rest, minute, ten

láaw sáwm̄yaj síp náathíi

He rested ten minutes.

phākphōn, aathít, săam

take vacation, week, three

láaw phākphōn săam aathít

He took three weeks vacation.

bōo sábaaj, m̄y, sīi

sick, day, four

láaw bōo sábaaj sīi m̄y

He was sick for three days.

tiisék, dyan, sōn

fight the war, month, two

láaw tiisék sōn dyan

He fought (in a war) for two months.

jūu m̄yan̄nòok, pii, hók

be abroad, year, six

láaw jūu m̄yan̄nòok hók pii

He spent six years abroad.

kàncaj, wīnáathíi, săamsíphâa

hold one's breath, second, thirty-five

láaw kàncaj săamsíphâa  
wīnáathíi

He held his breath for 35 seconds.

thâa càw, sūamóon, khēn

wait for you, hour, half

láaw thâa càw khēn sūamóon

He waited for you for half an hour.

khâw thěew

form a line

láaw khâw thěew sūamóon  
khēn

He was in line for one and a half hours.

M-2

jūu mýaŋ láaw, pii

be in Laos, year

láaw jūu mýaŋ láaw cák pii?

How many years was he in Laos?

lǎntháaŋ, sūamóoŋ

lose one's way, hour

láaw lǎntháaŋ cák sūamóoŋ?

How many hours was he lost?

āan, bóthían, náathíi

read, lesson, minute

láaw āan bóthían cák  
náathíi?

How many minutes did he  
read the lessons?

dəentháaŋ, aathít

travel, week

láaw dəentháaŋ cák aathít?

How many weeks did he travel?

tiisék, mỳy

fight the war, day

láaw tiisék cák mỳy?

How many days was he  
in battle?

M-3

phākphᵀᵀn

rest, take vacation

càw si phākphᵀᵀn don  
paandaj?

How long will you take for  
vacation?

fýk-hát

practice

càw si fýk-hát don paandaj?

How long will you practice?

páʔ wàj, lǎt

leave, car

càw si páʔ lǎt càw wàj nǎi  
don paandaj?

How long will you leave  
your car here?



sāksàa

delay, be delayed

càw si sāksàa don paandaj?

How long will you be delayed?

khǎn, láaw

imprison, he

càw si khǎn láaw don  
paandaj?

How long will you imprison  
him?

khùapkhúm

control

càw si khùapkhúm láaw don  
paandaj?

How long will you keep him  
under control?

C-1

A. láaw si hēt njǎn?

What is he going to do?

B. láaw si (sáwm̄aj)

He is going to (take a rest.)

A. láaw si (sáwm̄aj) cāk  
(náathīi)?

How many (minutes) will he  
(rest)?

B. (sáaw náathīi).

(Twenty minutes).

C-2

A. khácàw si hēt njǎn?

What are they going to do?

B. khácàw si (paj phākphᵛᵛᵛn).

They are going to (take a  
vacation.)

A. khácàw si (paj phākphᵛᵛᵛn)  
don paandaj?

How long will they be going?

B. (sᵛᵛᵛn aathīi).

(Two weeks).

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຕັດໃຈໄລຍະເວລາ ທັງສິ້ນແລະຍາວ. ຖາມນັກຮຽນກ່ຽວກັບເລື່ອງອື່ນໆທີ່ນອກເຫນືອໄປກວ່າ  
ທີ່ຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້ເບິ່ງດູ! ແຕ່ຕ້ອງພາຍາມໃຫ້ຢູ່ພາຍໃນຂອບເຂດທີ່ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ຮຽນຮູ້ມາແລ້ວເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

NOTES

- 1) The following words are used for various periods of time: pii 'year', dyan 'month', aathit 'week', mỳy 'day', sūamóon 'hour', náathíi 'minute', and wīnāathíi 'second.' If one wishes to find out precisely how many units of time (hour, minute, etc.) were used in a particular activity cák + Time Unit is used: cák aathit 'how many weeks', etc. The question can be put in a more general and less precise way by saying don paandaj (lit. long to what extent) 'How long?'. don paandaj is always used in situations in which the speaker has no idea how long a time was involved (hence no knowledge of what time units the response might be given in).
- 2) khēṅ 'half' may occur before or after a Time Unit. When it occurs before the unit it means 'half of the unit': khēṅ mỳy 'half a day', khēṅ pii 'half a year', etc.

When khēṅ occurs after a time unit, it means 'one and one half units': sūamóon khēṅ 'one and a half hours', náathíi khēṅ 'one and a half minutes', etc.

If numbers precede a time unit and khēṅ follows it, khēṅ means 'one half is added to the other number':

sǎam mỳy khēṅ '3 1/2 days', hók pii khēṅ '6 1/2 years.' etc.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below with the correct information:
- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ nỳṅ mǐi síp-sǎon dyan.
- (b) náathíi nỳṅ mǐi 60 \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) \_\_\_\_\_ nỳṅ mǐi 24 sūamóon

---

Answers: 1(a) pii (b) wīnāathíi (c) mỳy

- (d) dyan n̄ȳn m̄fi 30 \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) 60 wīnāathīi m̄s̄en 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) 4 sūamóon̄ m̄s̄en 240 \_\_\_\_\_
- (g) 12 dyan m̄s̄en 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- (h) 7 m̄yy m̄s̄en 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- (i) m̄yy n̄ȳn m̄fi 86,000 \_\_\_\_\_
- (j) \_\_\_\_\_ sūamóon̄ (how many hours?).
- (k) \_\_\_\_\_ paandaj (how long?).
- (l) \_\_\_\_\_ sūamóon̄ (half an hour).
- (m) k̄aw m̄yy \_\_\_\_\_ (9 1/2 days).
- (n) pii \_\_\_\_\_ (1 1/2 years).

---

Answers: (d)m̄yy (e)n̄áathīi (f)n̄áathīi (g)pii (h)aathīi  
 (i)wīnāathīi (j)cák (k)don (l)kh̄ō̄n̄  
 (m)kh̄ō̄n̄ (n)kh̄ō̄n̄

CYCLE 32

M-1

míi wéeláa, phóo, sǎmlāp

have time, enough, for

càw bᵒᵒ míi wéeláa phóo  
sǎmlāp njǎᅇ?

What don't you have  
enough time for?

sàj

use

càw sàj wéeláa nìi hēt  
njǎᅇ?

What did you use this time  
for?

phᅇᅇᅇ wàj

save

càw phᅇᅇᅇ wéeláa wàj hēt  
njǎᅇ?

What did you save the time  
for?

sǎa wéeláa, njᵒᵒᵒᵒ

lose time, because of

càw sǎa wéeláa njᵒᵒᵒᵒ njǎᅇ?

What caused you to lose time?

M-2

khúakin

cook

khᵒj bᵒᵒ míi wéeláa phóo  
sǎmlāp khúakin.

I don't have enough time  
to cook.

pᅇᅇᅇ, lᵒᵒcák

fix, motor bike

khᵒj sàj wéeláa nìi pᅇᅇᅇ  
lᵒᵒcák.

I used this time to fix the  
motorbike.

sáwmᵐaj

rest

khᵒj phᅇᅇᅇ wéeláa nìi wàj  
sáwmᵐaj

I saved this time for resting

sòokhǎa, ph̄yan

look for, friend

khôj s̄ya wéeláa njòon  
sòokhǎa ph̄yan khôj

I lost the time in looking  
for my friend.

M-3

hían nǎns̄ȳy, aathit

study, week

càw míi wéeláa hían nǎns̄ȳy  
cák aathit?

How many weeks do you have  
for studying?

khúakin, s̄uamóon

cook, hour

càw míi wéeláa khúakin  
cák s̄uamóon?

How many hours do you have  
for cooking?

sòokhǎa, m̄ȳy

look for, day

càw sàj wéeláa sòokhǎa  
ph̄yan càw cák m̄ȳy?

How many days did you use  
in looking for your friend?

p̄eɛŋ lōt, s̄uamóon

fix the car, hour

càw sàj wéeláa p̄eɛŋ lōt  
cák s̄uamóon?

How many hours did you use  
for fixing your car?

s̄ya wéeláa, khón sàj

lose time, servant

càw s̄ya wéeláa sòokhǎa  
khónsàj càw cák m̄ȳy?

How many days did you want  
for looking for your servant?

p̄eɛŋ, thóorāthāt

fix, television

càw sàj wéeláa p̄eɛŋ  
thóorāthāt cák s̄uamóon?

How many hours did it take  
you to fix the television  
set?

M-4

míi, dyan, pêst

have, month, eight

càw míi wéeláa hían pháasǎa  
láaw pêst dyan

You have eight months to  
study Lao.

sáwm̄aj, náathíi, síphâa

rest, minute, fifteen

càw míi wéeláa sáwm̄aj  
síphâa náathíi

You have fifteen minutes  
to rest.

sàj, kinkhâw, sǎamsíp

use, eat, thirty

càw sàj wéeláa kinkhâw  
sǎamsíp náathíi.

You took thirty minutes to  
eat.

sìicɛɛŋ, lỳaŋ, sáaw

explain, matter, twenty

càw sàj wéeláa sìicɛɛŋ  
lỳaŋ nìi sáaw náathíi

You took twenty minutes to  
explain this matter.

síphâa

fifteen

càw sǎa wéeláa khúakin  
síphâa náathíi

You wasted fifteen minutes  
cooking.

thâa, hâa

wait for, five

càw sǎa wéeláa thâa phỳan  
càw hâa sūamóoŋ

You wasted five hours waiting  
for your friend.

C-1

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. càw bᵛᵛ mī wéeláa phóó<br>sǎmlāp njǎᵇ?    | You don't have enough time<br>for what? |
| B. khᵇj bᵛᵛ mī wéeláa phóó<br>sǎmlāp khúakin | I don't have enough time<br>to cook.    |

C-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. càw sǎ wéeláa sòokhǎa<br>láaw cák náathíi? | How much time did you waste<br>looking for him? |
| B. khᵇj sǎ wéeláa sīisíphâa<br>náathíi        | I wasted forty five minutes.                    |

C-3

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| A. càw mī wéeláa phóó bᵛᵛ?                  | Do you have enough time?           |
| B. wéeláa sǎmlāp njǎᵇ?                      | Enough time for what?              |
| A. sǎmlāp (khúakin).                        | For (cooking).                     |
| B. phóó, khᵇj mī wéeláa<br>lǎaj síp náathíi | Oh yes, I have tens of<br>minutes. |

ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ໂມງ" ແລະ "ຊົ່ວໂມງ" ໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລ້ວບໍ່? ຈົ່ງຖາມນັກຮຽນຫລືໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເບິ່ງດວ້າ ຂະເຈົ້າມີ, ເສັ້ນ, ໃຊ້... ວອລາສຳລັບຫຍັງແລະດົນປານໃດ?

NOTES

- 1) As was indicated in Cycle 28 wéeláa 'time' may be followed by VP indicating some kind of activity: wéeláa kin khâw 'time to eat/for eating'. When wéeláa is followed by phóc 'enough, sufficient', sămlăp 'for the purpose of' occurs before the VP of Purpose:

míi wéeláa phóc sămlăp khúakin (have time enough for (to) cook)  
 'have enough time to cook'

In questions the VP of Purpose is replaced by njăn: míi wéeláa phóc sămlăp njăn? 'You have sufficient time for what?'

- 2) njòon 'because of, due to' + VP of Activity is used to provide an explanation for some action.

khôj sĭa wéeláa njòon sòokhăa (I lost time due to looking for my friend.)  
phĭan khôj  
 'I spent time (in vain) looking for my friend.'

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences:

- (a) khôj míi wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ (fix motorbike)  
 (b) càw bᵒᵒ míi wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ (to rest)  
 (c) láaw sĭa wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ thăa phĭan láaw (due to)

---

Answers: 1(a) pεεη lōtcák (b) sáwmĭaj (c) njòon



- (d) khôj bᵛᵛ mīi wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ sǎmlāp khúakin (enough time  
time...)
- (e) càw sàj wéeláa kin khâw cǎk \_\_\_\_\_? (how many minutes)
- (f) càw mīi wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ hók dyan (study Lao)
- (g) wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ njǎᵇ (for what?)
- (h) càw sǎa wéeláa sòokhǎa khónsàj càw \_\_\_\_\_ (how long?)

2. Answer the following questions:

- (a) mỳy wáan nīi càw sàj wéeláa hían pháasǎa láaw don paandaj?
- (b) mỳy ᵛᵛn càw si mīi wéeláa nóon cǎk sūamóon?
- (c) wán sǎw lèsw nīi (last Saturday) càw jyyn thǎa mǎa càw  
don paandaj?
- (d) mỳy ᵛᵛn càw si mīi wéeláa phóo sǎmlāp hían pháasǎa láaw bᵛᵛ?
- (e) càw sǎa wéeláa njòon njǎᵇ?

---

Answers: 1(d)phóo (e)náathīi (f)hían pháasǎa láaw  
(g)sǎmlāp (h)don paandaj 2You can work  
out the answers yourself.

CYCLE 33

M-1

lõt mée

bus

khôj si paj nám lõt mée

I will go by bus.

hýa

boat

khôj si paj nám hýa

I will go by boat.

hýa bin

airplane

khôj si paj nám hýa bin

I will go by air plane.

lõt

car

khôj si paj nám lõt

I will go by car.

lõt thîip

bicycle

khôp si paj nám lõt thîip

I will go by bicycle.

lõt fáj

train

khôj si paj nám lõt fáj

I will go by train.

săam lòo

tricycle

khôj si paj nám săam lòo

I will go by tricycle.

M-2

nám

with, by

càw si paj nám njǎŋ?

How will you go?

nésw daj

how

càw si paj nésw daj?

How will you go?

C-1

(nám)

with, by

A. càw si paj nám njǎŋ?

How will you go?

(lõt)

car

B. khǒj si paj nám (lõt)

I will go by (car).

C-2

(néswdaj)

how

A. càw si paj néswdaj?

How will you go?

(hýa)

boat

B. khǒj si paj nám (hýa).

I will go by (boat).

ເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າແລະເຂົ້າໃຈບົດຮຽນນີ້ໂດດແລ້ວ ຫາມຈະສອມການໃຊ້ຍາມພາຫະນະຢ່າງອັນອີກກໍໄດ້.  
ຈົງໃຊ້ແຕ່ສົງຫມຽນຮູ້ເຕັມ ແລະຫາມຄິດວ່າຈະເປັນປໂຍດ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຈະເສັຽເວລາລາງ.

NOTES

- 1) Mode of Transportation may be indicated by nám '(to go) along with' + Type of Vehicle following a verb of motion.

NP + MV + VP (Mode of Transportation)

khǒj      si paj      nám lõt méé

(I            will go            go along with bus)

'I will go by bus.'

- 2) The Verb Phrase nám + Vehicle may be questioned in either of two ways:

Statement: khôj si paj nám lôt 'I'll go by car'.

Question 1: càw si paj nám njǎn 'How will you go?'

Question 2: càw si paj nésw daj 'How will you go?'

APPLICATION

- In the sentence khôj si paj nám lôt fáj, nám lôt fáj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) preposition plus noun (d) MV (e) predicate.
- In the question càw si paj nám njǎn, njǎn probably refers to (a) a person (b) a vehicle (c) a motion (d) a place.
- In the question càw si paj néswdaj, nésw means something like (a) how? (b) manner, way (c) by what means? (d) what? (e) none of these.
- Complete the following sentences:
  - \_\_\_\_\_ si paj nám hýa (b) càw si paj nésw \_\_\_\_\_?
  - láaw si paj \_\_\_\_\_ hýa bin (d) khôj si paj nám \_\_\_\_\_ méé
  - càw si paj \_\_\_\_\_ njǎn?
- Translate the following sentences into English:
  - láaw si paj nám lôt fáj (b) càw máa hóonhían nám njǎn?
  - wéeláa càw si paj hàanaahán, càw si paj nám njǎn?
  - phyan càw paj néswdaj?

---

Answers: 1b, 2b, 3b, 4(a)càw, khôj, etc. (b)daj (c)nám (d)lôt (e)nám 5(a)He'll go by train. (b)How did you come to school? (c)When you go to the restaurant, how will you go? (d)How did your friend go?

CYCLE 34

M-1

náaj tháan

a guide

láaw si paj nám náaj tháan

He will go with the guide.

káp paj

return

láaw si káp paj nám náaj  
tháan

He will return with the  
guide.

lùuk láaw

his children

láaw si káp paj nám lùuk  
láaw

He will return with his  
children.

pýksăa

consult

láaw si pýksăa nám lùuk  
láaw

He will consult with his  
children.

phūu hūam ḡaan

colleagues

láaw si pýksăa nám phūu  
hūam ḡaan láaw

He will consult with his  
colleagues.

aasăj jūu

live

láaw si aasăj jūu nám phūu  
hūam ḡaan láaw

He will live with his  
colleagues.

phīInòon

relatives

láaw si aasăj jūu nám  
phīInòon láaw

He will live with his  
relatives.

M-2

khǎo anūnjàat

ask permission

láaw si khǎo anūnjàat nám  
phǎj?

From whom will he ask  
permission?

fýkhát

practice

láaw si paj fýkhát nám  
phǎj?

With whom is he going to  
practice?

hūam nán

cooperate

láaw si paj hūam nán nám  
phǎj?

With whom is he going to  
cooperate?

sámák hētkaan

apply for the job

láaw si paj sámák hētkaan  
nám phǎj?

To whom is he going to  
apply for the job?

C-1

(pýksǎa)

consult

A. càw si paj pýksǎa nám  
phǎj?

Who are you going to consult  
with?

(náaj thán)

guide

B. khǎj si paj pýksǎa nám  
náaj thán

I am going to consult with  
the guide.

C-2

(aasǎj jũũ)

to live

A. phǎj si máa aasǎj jũũ  
nám càw?

Who will come to live with  
you?

(phũũ hũam nǎan)

colleague

B. phũũ hũam nǎan khǒj si  
máa aasǎj jũũ nám khǒj

My colleague is going to  
come to live with me.

C-3

(lùuk)

children

A. càw si paj hēt njǎn  
nám lùukcàw?

What are you going to do  
with your children?

(fýkhát)

practice

B. khǒj si paj fýkhát nám  
kháccàw

I am going to practice  
with them.

ລອງປະດິດເລື່ອງຂຶ້ນປະກອບອີກເບື້ອງດູ! ຈົ່ງພະຍາຍາມແຕ່ງເລື່ອງງ່າຍໆແລະແປກປະລາດ ຫລືເລື່ອງທີ່ເປັນ  
ຫນ້າຢາກຫົວ ຈົ່ງຈະພາໃຫ້ບັນຍາກາດຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງຮຽນມີຈິວິດຈົ່ງວ່າຍໆຂຶ້ນ.

NOTES

- 1) When nám is followed by NP in which the N is human, the relationship between the persons involved may be any one of the following:

- (a) Accompaniment:

láaw si káp paj nám lùuk láaw

'He will return with his child.'

- (b) Joint effort (with participants having equal status).

láaw si pyksáa nám phuu hūam nāan láaw

'He will consult with his colleagues.'

- (c) Joint effort (with participants have unequal status).

láaw si paj sámák hētkaan nám phǎj?

'Who is he going to apply to for a job?'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw si njāan paj nám nākhan (b) láaw si khii lōt nám khōj (c) láaw si hian nám nāj khuu (d) láaw si khōthoot nám khacaw (e) láaw si paj hāa paa nám khacaw (f) láaw si waw nám nāj khuu (g) láaw juu myan láaw nám phōō láaw (h) láaw bōō māk hētwiak nám hūa nāa láaw (i) láaw khōō paj nāj myan nám khacaw. (j) láaw si bōō pyksáa nám phēn.

Answers: 1(a) He will walk with the students. (b) He will ride with me. (c) He will study with the teacher (or under the teacher) (d) He will ask their pardon. (e) He will go fishing with them. (f) He will talk with (or to) the teacher. (g) He lives in Laos with his father. (h) He doesn't like to work with his boss. (i) He asked (to be allowed) to go into town with them. (j) He won't consult with him.



CYCLE 35

M-1

|                  |              |                       |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| <u>njāan</u>     |              | to walk               |
| khôj si njāan    | { paj<br>máa | I will walk.          |
| <u>kháp lõt</u>  |              | to drive              |
| khôj si kháp lõt | { paj<br>máa | I will drive (there). |
| <u>lēn</u>       |              | to run                |
| khôj si lēn      | { paj<br>máa | I will run.           |
| <u>khī hía</u>   |              | to ride in a boat     |
| khôj si khī hía  | { paj<br>máa | I will go by boat.    |
| <u>tèn khâm</u>  |              | to jump over          |
| khôj si tèn khâm | { paj<br>máa | I will jump over it.  |
| <u>lój nàam</u>  |              | to swim               |
| khôj si lój nàam | { paj<br>máa | I will swim (there).  |

M-2

nám

with, by

càw sɪ paj nám njǎŋ

How will you go?

néew daj

how

càw sɪ paj néew daj

How will you go?

M-3

njǎāŋ

walk

láaw njǎāŋ { paj  
máa  
bàannòok

He walked to the country side.

khɪɪ màa

ride a horse

láaw khɪɪ { máa  
paj  
bàannòok

He rode a horse to the country side.

khɪɪ kian

ride in an ox car

láaw khɪɪ kian { paj  
máa  
bàannòok

He rode in an ox cart to the country side.

dəentháan

travel

láaw dəentháan { máa  
paj  
bàannòok

He travels to the country side.

òok

exit

láaw òok { paj  
máa  
bàannòok

He went (came) out to the country.

M-4

njāān, kinkhâw, hàan aahăan

walk, eat, restaurant

khôj si njāān paj kin khâw  
jūu hàan aahăan

I'll walk over to the  
restaurant and eat.

kháplôt, āan nănsŷy, hôngsámút

drive, read, library

khôj si kháplôt paj āan  
nănsŷy jūu hôngsámút

I'll drive over to library  
and read.

khīī lōtmée, jaam, hyan

ride on a bus, visit, house

láaw si khīī lōtmée máa  
jaam khôj jūu hyan khôj

He will ride on a bus over  
to my house to visit me.

lēēn, cēēn tamlûat, komtamlûat

run, report to the police,  
police station

láaw si lēēn paj cēēn  
tamlûat jūu komtamlûat

He will run over to report  
to the police at the police  
station.

M-5

kháp lōt

drive

láaw si kháp lōt paj sǎj?

Where is he driving to?

lēēn

run

láaw si lēēn paj sǎj?

Where is he running to?

C-1

(nám)

A. càw si paj nám njǎŋ?

How are you going?

(lōt mée)

B. khōj si paj nám lōt mée

I'm going by bus.

C-2

(néswdaj)

A. láaw si paj néswdaj?

How will she go?

(njāāŋ)

B. láaw si njāāŋ paj

She will walk.

C-3

(sǎj)

A. càw si dænthāan paj sǎj?

Where are you travelling to?

(bàannòok)

B. khōj si dænthāan paj  
bàannòok

I'm travelling to the country  
side.

ຫ້າມແນ່ໃຈແລວບໍ່ວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈແລະຮູ້ຈັກຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງຄຳວ່າ "ໄປນຳຫຍັງ" ແລະ "ໄປນຳໃຜ". ແລະຄຳວ່າ "ຂັບຮີດໄປ" ແລະ "ໄປຂັບຮີດ" ເດ? ຫ້າມລອງຫົດສອບຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

- 1) paj and máa may occur as the Main Verb in the sentence indicating motion in a particular direction (máa 'toward the speaker; paj, 'away from the speaker'):

máa hàanaahǎan 'to come to the restaurant'

paj kin khâw 'to go eat'

paj and máa also occur as secondary verbs indicating direction of motion after VP indicating type of locomotion (njǎan 'to walk', kháp lǒt 'to drive', etc.); in fact, if any actual travel is indicated either paj or máa must follow VP of this kind:

kháp lǒt paj 'to drive (some place)'

khǐi hýa máa 'to come (some place) by boat'

njǎan paj kin khâw 'to walk (some place) to eat'

kháp lǒt paj kin khâw jǔu 'to drive to the restaurant to eat'

hàanaahǎan

- 2) Although paj nám njǎn and paj nǎw daj both mean 'How are (you) going?', there is a little difference in meaning between them. paj nám njǎn suggests that you are going on some sort of vehicle; whereas, paj nǎw daj is simply a request as to how you are going from one place to another. The following exchange will illustrate this difference:

Q: càw paj nám njǎn? 'How are you going?'

A: khôj si bǔw paj nám njǎn 'I'm not going in any kind of vehicle. I'm going to walk.'  
khôj si njǎan paj

APPLICATION

1. Add paj or máa and rearrange the following sentence parts into sentences:
- (a) khii h́ya, h̄oŋ sámút, āan n̄ns̄ȳy
  - (b) hàan aah̄aan, njāāŋ, kin kh̄aw
  - (c) páth̄èet ciin, d̄aenth̄aan
  - (d) s̄áj, khii kian
  - (e) jaam ph̄yan, kháp l̄ot, h̄yan
  - (f) bàann̄òok, òok
  - (g) hóon̄h̄ian, l̄eēn
  - (h) j̄uu náj m̄yan, l̄in, njāāŋ
  - (i) pás̄úm, khii l̄òtm̄ée, j̄uu hóon̄h̄ian
  - (j) j̄uu s̄áj, s̄oŋ th̄oor̄al̄èek
  - (k) si, njāāŋ, ph̄un
  - (l) m̄yan w̄ian̄can, d̄aenth̄aan

---

Answers: Either paj or máa may be used. kh̄òj, c̄aw, láaw, etc. may be used as the subject. (a)kh̄òj khii h́ya paj āan n̄ns̄ȳy j̄uu h̄oŋsámút (b)láaw njāāŋ máa kin kh̄aw j̄uu hàan aah̄aan (c)c̄aw si d̄aenth̄aan paj páth̄èet ciin b̄oo (d)láaw si khii kian paj s̄áj (e)kh̄òj si kháp l̄ot máa jaam ph̄yan kh̄òj j̄uu h̄yan láaw (f)kh̄òj si òok paj bàann̄òok (g)láaw l̄eēn paj hóon̄h̄ian (h)láaw njāāŋ paj l̄in j̄uu náj m̄yan (i)láaw khii l̄òtm̄ée paj pás̄úm j̄uu hóon̄h̄ian (j)c̄aw si paj s̄oŋ th̄oor̄al̄èek j̄uu s̄áj (k)láaw si njāāŋ paj ph̄un (l)kh̄òj si d̄aenth̄aan paj m̄yan w̄ian̄can

CYCLE 36

M-1

hētwiak

to work

càw si hētwiak dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to work?

njāan paj

walk

càw si njāan paj dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to walk?

syy

buy

càw si syy dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to buy (it)?

nóon

sleep

càw si nóon dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to sleep?

thǎam

ask, question

càw si thǎam dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to ask?

njín

shoot

càw si njín dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to shoot?

tôop

answer

càw si tôop dàj bɔɔ?

Will you be able to answer?

M-2

dàj

can, be able

dàj

Yes, (I will be able to...)

bɔɔ

no

bɔɔ dàj

No, (I will not be able to...)

C-1

(hētwiak)

A. càw si hētwiak dāj bōw?

Will you be able to work?

(dāj)

B. dāj

Yes.

C-2

(njín)

A. càw si njín dāj bōw?

Will you be able to shoot?

(bōw)

B. bōw dāj

No.

---

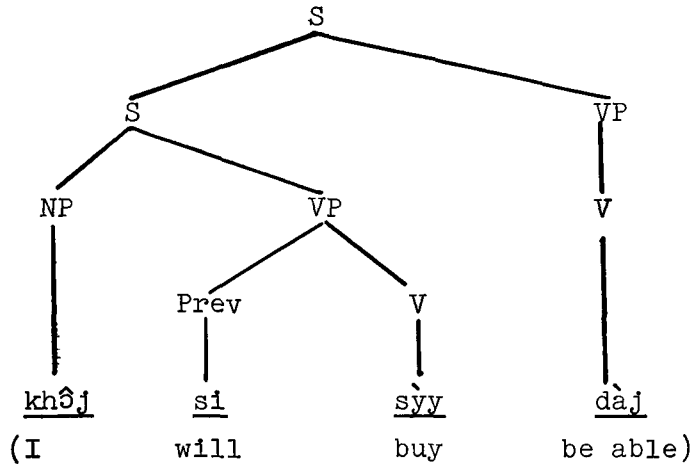
ຈົງຖາມນັກຮຽນຊ້ອກເຖິງຄວາມສາມາດຂອງຂະເຈົ້າໃນດ້ານຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າຕອບຫາມໄດ້  
ຢ່າງເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແລ້ວບໍ່? ລົມຄົນໃຈຮຸກຮ້າຍເກົ່າອີກແດ່ ຍັງມີຫລາຍຄຳອີກທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ກັບ "ໄດ້" ໄດ້.

---



NOTES

- 1) dàj means 'to be able, possible', and it normally occurs as VP (Predicate) with a Sentence as NP (Subject).



'I will be able to buy it.'

- 2) Negation of this type of sentence is Sentence + bɔɔ dàj: khôj paj bɔɔ dàj 'I can't go.'

The question form is Sentence + dàj + bɔɔ? 'Can you...?'

The affirmative response is: dàj 'Yes, I can.'

The negative response is: bɔɔ dàj 'No, I can't.'

APPLICATION

1. Change the following questions into 'possibility' situations.
  - (a) càw si khǎj pátuu nǐi phǐi boo?
  - (b) càw si át pɔɔŋ-jiam nǐi phǐi boo?
  - (c) càw si sǎj kácɛɛ lǐnsǎk nǐi phǐi boo?
  - (d) càw si khǎj kácɛɛ hǐip nǐi phǐi boo?
  - (e) càw si lón khândaj nǐi phǐi boo?
  
2. Change the following statements into statements indicating one's inability to do something.
  - (a) khôj si khǎj pátuu nǎn phùn
  - (b) khôj si pīan jaan nǎn phùn
  - (c) khôj si paj hǎa phūu nǎn phùn
  - (d) khôj si sɔɔjlyǎ phūu nǎn phùn
  - (e) khôj si tít-tɔɔ káp phūu nǎn phùn
  
3. Respond affirmatively to the questions in 1 above.
  
4. Give negative responses to the questions in 1 above.

---

Answers: 1change boo to dǎj bɔɔ 2Add bɔɔ dǎj to the sentence.  
 3the response to all questions is dǎj 4the response  
 to all questions is bɔɔ dǎj.

CYCLE 37

M-1

kháp lōt

drive

càw kháp lōt pen bōō?

Do you know how to drive?

njín pyyn

shoot a gun

càw njín pyyn pen bōō?

Do you know how to shoot  
a gun?

pseη lōt

fix a car

càw pseη lōt pen bōō?

Do you know how to fix a car?

wàw pháasǎa aηkít

speak English

càw wàw pháasǎa aηkít  
pen bōō?

Do you know how to speak  
English?

thāaj hùup

take picture

càw thāaj hùup pen bōō?

Do you know how to take  
pictures?

M-2

pen

be

pen

Yes, (I know how to...)

bᵛᵛ

no

bᵛᵛ pen

No, (I don't know how to...)

C-1

(kháp lōt)

drive

A. càw kháp lōt pen bōw?

Do you know how to drive?

(pen)

B. pen

Yes, I do.

C-2

(pεεη lōt)

A. càw pεεη lōt pen bōw?

Do you know how to fix a car?

(bōw)

B. bōw pen

No, I don't.

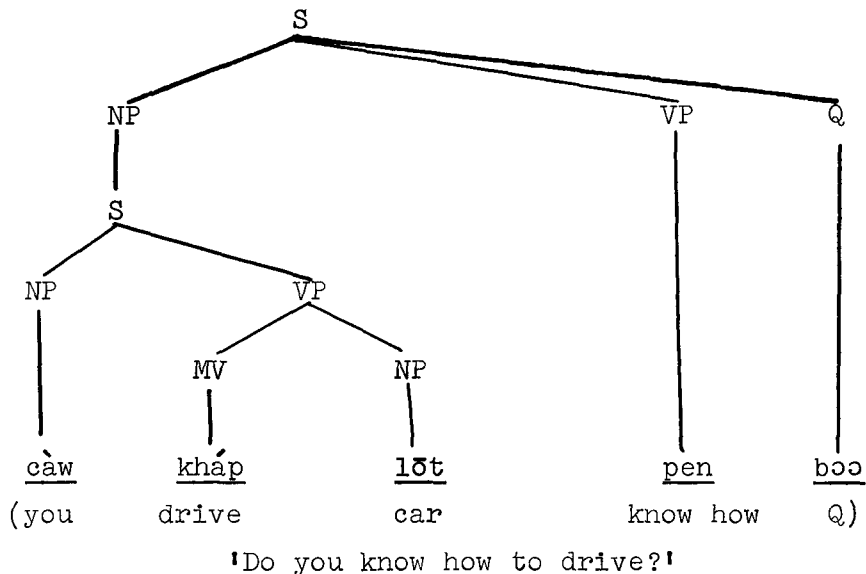
---

ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູ່ວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງເປັນແດ! ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຫັດຕອບທັງວິທີສັມແລະວິທີຍາວ. ຈົ່ງເຮັດ  
ໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈຄວາມໝາຍຂອງຄຳວ່າ "ເປັນ" ຢູ່ໃນໜ້າ.

---

NOTES

- 1) Compare S + dàj constructions with S + pen constructions



The S + dàj and S + pen structure identical; the difference arises from the difference in meaning between pen 'to know how to perform some activity' and dàj 'to be able to do something'.

- 2) The affirmative response to S + pen bōō is pen. The negative response is bōō pen. S + pen constructions are negated by putting bōō before pen.
- 3) dàj and pen may be combined with questions as in these examples:
- láaw hēt njǎn pen            'What does he know how to do?'
- càw sỳy njǎn dàj            'What can you buy?'

APPLICATION

1. láaw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ pen. This sentence indicates that (a) he doesn't have any tools (b) he doesn't know how to fix cars (c) he doesn't want to fix the car (d) he doesn't have a car.
2. If someone said, khɔ̄j kháp lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ dàj, this might indicate that (a) he doesn't feel like driving (b) he has his right leg in a cast (c) he forgot his driver's license (d) he is ill.
3. In the sentence láaw thāāj hùup bɔ̄ɔ pen, the subject of the sentence is (a) láaw (b) thāāj hùup (c) láaw thāāj hùup (d) láaw thāāj.
4. Which of the sentences below means 'I don't know how to shoot a gun'? (a) khɔ̄j nǰjǰ pɛɛn pen (b) khɔ̄j bɔ̄ɔ nǰjǰ pɛɛn pen (c) khɔ̄j nǰjǰ pɛɛn bɔ̄ɔ pen (d) khɔ̄j nǰjǰ pɛɛn pen bɔ̄ɔ.
5. Change the following sentences to the negative: (a) càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t pen bɔ̄ɔ? (b) khɔ̄j wàw pháasǎa aŋkít pen.
6. Answer this question affirmatively: càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t pen bɔ̄ɔ? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Answer this question negatively: càw thāāj hùup pen bɔ̄ɔ? \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1b, 2b, c, or d, 3c, 4c, 5(a)càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ pen bɔ̄ɔ? (b)khɔ̄j wàw pháasǎa aŋkít bɔ̄ɔ pen 6pen 7bɔ̄ɔ pen.

CYCLE 38

M-1

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <u>tiicák</u>           | to type                |
| láaw tiicák dàj bōō?    | Can she type?          |
| <u>sāk hùup</u>         | to take pictures       |
| láaw sāk hùup dàj bōō?  | Can she take pictures? |
| <u>sỳy khōōŋ</u>        | to shop                |
| láaw sỳy khōōŋ dàj bōō? | Can he shop?           |
| <u>tát phǒm</u>         | to cut hair            |
| láaw tát phǒm dàj bōō?  | Can she cut hair?      |
| <u>púk hýan</u>         | to build a house       |
| láaw púk hýan dàj bōō?  | Can she build a house? |
| <u>khúakin</u>          | to cook                |
| láaw khúakin dàj bōō?   | Can she cook?          |

M-2

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <u>khúakin</u>               |                             |
| bōō dàj, phōwāā láaw khúakin | No, because she doesn't     |
| bōō pen                      | know how to cook.           |
| <u>púk hýan</u>              | build a house               |
| bōō dàj, phōwāā láaw púk     | No, because he doesn't know |
| hýan bōō pen                 | how to build a house.       |

tát phǒm

cut the hair

bᵛᵛ dàj, phᵛwāa láaw tát  
phǒm bᵛᵛ pen

No, because he doesn't know  
how to cut hair.

sỳy khᵛᵛᵛᵛ

to shop

bᵛᵛ dàj, phᵛwāa láaw sỳy  
khᵛᵛᵛᵛ bᵛᵛ pen

No, because he doesn't know  
how to shop.

sāk hùup

take a picture

bᵛᵛ dàj, phᵛwāa láaw sāk  
hùup bᵛᵛ pen

No, because he doesn't know  
how to take a picture.

tiicák

type

bᵛᵛ dàj, phᵛwāa láaw tii  
cák bᵛᵛ pen

No, because he doesn't know  
how to type.

C-1

(khúakin)

A. láaw khúakin dàj bᵛᵛ?

Can he cook?

(bᵛᵛ)

B. bᵛᵛ dàj, phᵛwāa láaw khúa-  
kin bᵛᵛ pen

No, because he doesn't know  
how to cook.



C-2

(njǎŋ)

A. láaw hēt njǎŋ pen?

What does he know how to do?

(púk hýan)

B. láaw pák hýan pen

He knows how to build the house.

---

ບັນຫາຂອງຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນໂດຍການປຽບທຽບຄຳວ່າ "ເປັນ" ແລະ "ໄດ້" ເບິ່ງດູ!  
 ຂະເຈົ້າເຫັນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນແລ້ວບໍ່? "ຂ້ອຍແປງຣິດເປັນ ແຕ່ຄວາມນ້ອຍແປງຣິດບໍ່ໄດ້".

---

NOTES

- 1) phǎwǎǎ 'because' is a sentence connective. The sentence that follows phǎwǎǎ stands in causal relationship to the one that precedes it.

Sentence 1: láaw khúakin bǎw dǎj

Sentence 2: láaw khúakin bǎw pen

S 1 + S 2: láaw khúakin bǎw dǎj phǎwǎǎ (láaw khúakin) bǎw pen

'She can't cook because she doesn't know how (to cook).'

- 2) The difference in meaning between S + dǎj 'to be in a position or situation to do something' and S + pen 'to know how to do something' may be illustrated in sentences like this one:

(láaw sǎk hùup) bǎw dǎj phǎwǎǎ láaw sǎk hùup bǎw pen

'He is unable to (take a picture) because he doesn't know how to take a picture'.

However, there are situations in which pen and dǎj may be interchanged, as follows:

càw wàw pháasǎa aŋkít bǎw pen / dǎj 'You can't speak English.'



CYCLE 39

M-1

sỳy

càw sỳy màa cák too?

buy

How many horses did you buy?

hě̃n

càw hě̃n màa cák too?

see

How many horses did you see?

míi

càw míi màa cák too?

have

How many horses do you have?

khǎaj

càw khǎaj màa cák too?

sell

How many horses did you sell?

dàj

càw dàj màa cák too?

get

How many horses did you get?

liàn

càw liàn màa cák too?

raise

How many horses did you raise?

M-2

pỳm

khôj hě̃n pỳm s̄oŋ hũa

book

I see two books.

sā̄ŋmàj

khôj hě̃n sā̄ŋmàj s̄oŋ khón

carpenter

I see two carpenters.

mǎa

khôj hě̃n mǎa s̄oŋ too.

dog

I see two dogs.

mâak klaŋ

khôj hěn mâak klaŋ sǝŋ nūaj

orange

I see two oranges.

paa

khôj hěn paa sǝŋ too

fish

I see two fish.

hùup

khôj hěn hùup sǝŋ phēēn

picture

I see two pictures.

ŋén, kīip

khôj hěn ŋén sǝŋ kīip

money, kip

I see two kips.

C-1

(paa, too)

A. càw sỳy paa cák too

How many fish did you buy?

(sǝam)

B. sǝam too.

Three.

C-2

(hěn)

A. càw hěn njǎŋ?

What do you see?

(mǎa)

B. khôj hěn mǎa.

I see some dogs.

(cák too)

A. càw hěn mǎa cák too?

How many dogs do you see?

(sīī)

B. sīī too

Four.

NOTES

- 1) When dàj is the Main Verb in a Sentence and is followed by NP (object), it has the meaning 'to get, earn, procure'.

khôj dàj pým 2 hũa            'I procured 2 books.'

- 2) liàn means 'to look after, raise'. It may occur only with animate NP as objects.

liàn lùuk    'to raise' or 'to take care of children'

liàn màa    'to raise horses'

liàn sát    'to raise animals'

- 3) sāan means 'artisan, skilled craftsman'. màj means 'wood'. sāan màj is used to refer to a 'person who is skilled in working with wood', hence it includes carpenters, cabinet makers, coffin makers, etc.

NO APPLICATION PHASE

CYCLE 40

M-1

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| <u>tóʔ</u>            | table            |
| tóʔ nūaj nīi          | This table       |
| <u>sát</u>            | animal           |
| sát too nīi           | This animal      |
| <u>pỳm</u>            | book             |
| pỳm hũa nīi           | This book        |
| <u>hýan</u>           | house            |
| hýan lǎŋ nīi          | This house       |
| <u>lõt</u>            | car              |
| lõt khán nīi          | This car         |
| <u>náaj pháasǎa</u>   | interpreter      |
| náaj pháasǎa phuu nīi | This interpreter |
| <u>màa</u>            | horse            |
| màa too nīi           | This horse       |

M-2

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| tóʔnūaj nīi láakháa hũa<br>hòoj kīip               | This table costs 500 kips.  |
| kòonj thǎaj hùup nūaj nīi<br>láakháa hũa hòoj kīip | This camera costs 500 kips. |

fáj sǎaj an nǐi láakháa hâa  
hòoj kīip

This flashlight costs  
500 kips.

móon nūaj nǐi láakháa hâa  
hòoj kīip

This watch costs 500 kips.

pyyn kábōok nǐi láakháa  
hâa hòoj kīip

This gun costs 500 kips.

sýa phýyn nǐi láakháa hâa  
hòoj kīip

This shirt costs 500 kips.

mūak baj nǐi láakháa hâa  
hòoj kīip

This hat costs 500 kips.

M-3

wěentaa khūu nǐi

this pair of glasses

wěentaa khūu nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this pair of  
glasses cost?

thōnthàw khūu nǐi

this pair of socks

thōnthàw khūu nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this pair of  
socks cost?

jaasūup sóon nǐi

this pack of cigarettes

jaasūup sóon nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this pack of  
cigarettes cost?

káp fáj káp nǐi

this box of matches

káp fáj káp nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this box of  
matches cost?

mít duan nǐi

this knife

mít duan nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this knife  
cost?

kápaw nūaj nǐi

this briefcase

kápaw nūaj nǐi láakháa  
thāwdaj?

How much does this briefcase  
cost?

M-4

pým, hǔa

book (classifier)

pým nǐi càw khǎaj hǔa lǎ?  
cák kǐp

How many kips do these books  
cost apiece?

sìin, kiilóo

meat, kilo

sìin nǐi càw khǎaj kiilóo  
lǎ? cǎk kǐp

How many kips does this  
meat cost per kilo?

kápuu, too

crab (classifier)

kápuu nǐi càw khǎaj too  
lǎ? cǎk kǐp?

How many kips do these crabs  
cost each?

mâaklĕn, nūaj

tomato (classifier)

mâaklĕn nǐi càw khǎaj nūaj  
lǎ? cǎk kǐp

How many kips do these  
tomatoes cost apiece?

móon, nūaj

watch, clock (classifier)

móon nǐi càw khǎaj nūaj  
lǎ? cǎk kǐp?

How many kips do these  
watches cost apiece?



M-5

hâasíp kîip

fifty kips

hũa lâ? hâasíp kîip

Fifty kips each.

săam lỏoj sảaw kîip

320 kips

kiilỏo lâ? sảam lỏoj sảaw  
kîip

320 kips per kilo.

síp cé t sén

seventeen cents

too lâ? síp cé t sén

Seventeen cents each.

sảawpêst kîip

twenty-eight kips

nủaj lâ? sảawpêst kîip

Twenty-eight kips apiece.

M-6

aw

take

əə, aw sảa!

O.K., take it!

əə, paj sảa!

O.K., go ahead!

aw hậj

give

əə, aw hậj láaw sảa

O.K. give it to him!

əə, kin sảa!

O.K. eat it!

C-1

(pynn kábỏok nủi)

A. pynn kábỏok nủi láakhảa  
thậwdaj?

How much is this gun?

(síp sỏỏn phỏn kîip)

B. síp sỏỏn phỏn kîip

Twelve thousand kips.

C-2

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| A. an nìi m <sup>EE</sup> n njǎn?<br>(mìit)         | What's this?            |
| B. an nìi m <sup>EE</sup> n mìit<br>(mìit duan nìi) | It's a knife.           |
| A. mìit duan nìi láakháa<br>thǎwdaj?                | How much is this knife? |
| (s <sup>II</sup> síp hâa kîip)                      |                         |
| B. s <sup>II</sup> síp hâa kîip                     | Forty-five kips.        |

C-3

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. kǎj nìi láakháa too lǎ?<br>thǎwdaj? | How much do these chickens<br>cost apiece? |
| B. too lǎ? hâa hòoj sǎamsíp<br>kîip    | They are 530 kips each.                    |

C-4

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. sìn nìi càw khǎaj kiilóo<br>lǎ? cák kîip?  | How many kips does this<br>meat cost per kilo? |
| B. kiilóo lǎ? s <sup>oo</sup> n l <sup>oo</sup> j p <sup>est</sup><br>síp kîip                          | It's 280 kips per kilo.                        |
| A. s <sup>oo</sup> n l <sup>oo</sup> jcétsíp dàj b <sup>oo</sup> ?                                      | Can you make it 270 kips?                      |
| B. b <sup>oo</sup> , b <sup>oo</sup> dàj. aw s <sup>oo</sup> n l <sup>oo</sup> j<br>cétsíp hâa kîip sǎa | No, I can't. Take it for<br>275 kips.          |

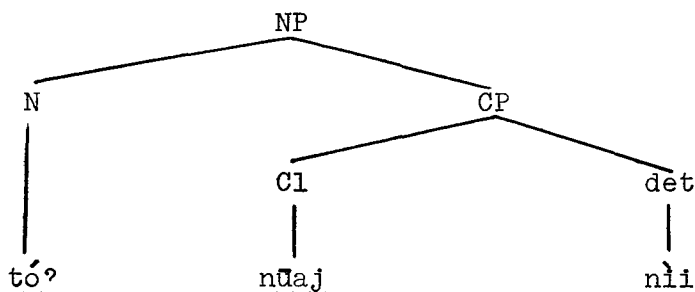
A. ພ, aw hâj khôj s໑໑  
 kiiloo d໑໑

O.K., please give me two  
 kilos.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຕັດໃຈສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆກັບຈຳນວນບໍ່ງຸດ! ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກໃຈຄຳປະກອບນາມຈະນິດຕ່າງໆດີແລ້ວບໍ່?  
 ຂະເຈົ້າຖາມລາຄາ ເວລາ ແລະກຽວກັບຄືນຕ່າງໆໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລ້ວຫລືຍັງ? ຝັກຕັດຫລາຍໆມັນຈົ່ງລງ!

NOTES

1) The following NP contains a CP (classifier phrase):



The classifier phrase marks the count noun as definite singular:

tô nūaj nīi            'this table'  
tô nīi                    'these tables'

Some additional unit classifiers and their noun co-occurents are given:

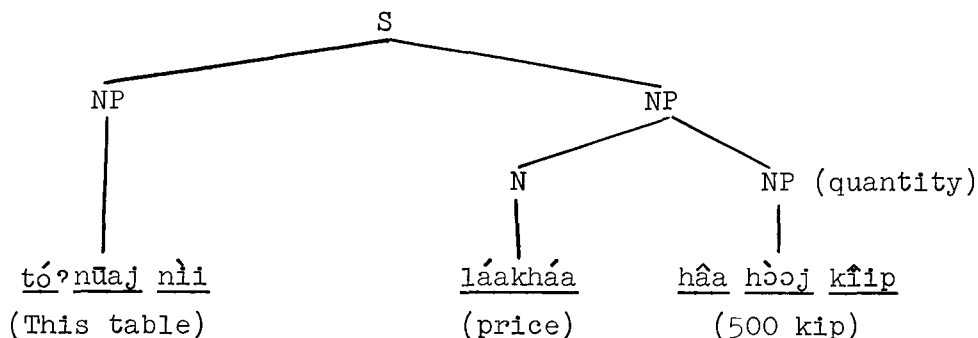
| <u>Unit</u> | <u>Classifier</u>                              |  | <u>Noun</u> |              |
|-------------|--|--|-------------|--------------|
| too         | 'body'   |  | sát         | 'animal'     |
|             |  |  | kāj         | 'chicken'    |
| an          | 'object' (It can be used<br>for most objects.) |  | fáj sǎaj    | 'flashlight' |
| baj         | 'sheet like'                                   |  | mūak        | 'hat'        |

|        |                       |          |               |
|--------|-----------------------|----------|---------------|
| duan   | 'something<br>round'  | mìit     | 'knife'       |
| kábôok | 'barrel'              | pyyn     | 'gun'         |
| khūu   | 'objects in<br>pairs' | wēentaa  | 'eye glasses' |
|        |                       | thǒŋthàw | 'socks'       |
| lǎŋ    |                       | hýan     | 'house'       |

With mass nouns (sìin 'meat', nàam 'water, etc.) metric rather than unit classifiers are used:

| <u>Metric Classifier</u> |                                       | <u>Noun</u> |              |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| kiilóo                   | (either 1000 meters<br>or 1000 grams) | sìin        | 'meat'       |
| káp                      | 'small box'                           | káp fáj     | 'matches'    |
| sóoŋ                     | 'small package'                       | jaasûup     | 'cigarettes' |
| kîip                     | 'kip (Laotian unit<br>of currency)    |             |              |

- 2) When asking or giving the price of something láakháa is used in a verbless sentence:



'This table costs 500 kips.'

In the question NP (quantity) is replaced by thāwdaj. mìit duan nìi láakháa thāwdaj 'How much is this knife?'

APPLICATION

1) Fill in the blanks using English as a guide:

- (a) kápuu \_\_\_\_\_ 'these crabs'  
 (b) s̄in \_\_\_\_\_ 'this meat'  
 (c) w̄entaa \_\_\_\_\_ 'this pair of glasses'  
 (d) màa \_\_\_\_\_ 'this horse'  
 (e) k̄òoŋ th̄āāj h̄uup \_\_\_\_\_ 'this camera'  
 (f) móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_ 'these watches'  
 (g) \_\_\_\_\_ n̄ūaj n̄i 'this briefcase, bag'  
 (h) m̄āakl̄ēn \_\_\_\_\_ 'these tomatoes'  
 (i) m̄āakl̄ēn \_\_\_\_\_ 'this tomato'  
 (j) kiilóo \_\_\_\_\_ 320 k̄īp '320 kips per kilo'  
 (k) \_\_\_\_\_ l̄ā? 4000 k̄īp '4000 kip each (watches)'  
 (l) \_\_\_\_\_ l̄ā? 15 k̄īp '15 kip apiece (books)'  
 (m) k̄āj n̄i \_\_\_\_\_ cák k̄īp 'how much apiece?'  
 (n) baj l̄ā? 30 \_\_\_\_\_ '30 kip apiece'  
 (o) m̄iit duan̄ n̄i \_\_\_\_\_ 'What's the price  
 of this knife?'

---

Answers: 1(a)n̄i (b)n̄i (c)kh̄ūu n̄i (d)too n̄i (e)n̄ūaj n̄i  
 (f)n̄i (g)k̄ápaw (h)n̄i (i)n̄ūaj n̄i (j)l̄ā? (k)n̄ūaj  
 (l)h̄ūa (m)too l̄ā? (n)k̄īp (o)l̄āakh̄āa th̄āwdaj?

CYCLE 41

M-1

sỳy njǎn bɔɔ?

buy anything

láaw sỳy njǎn bɔɔ?

Did he buy anything?

paj sǎj bɔɔ?

go anywhere

láaw paj sǎj bɔɔ?

Did he go anywhere?

paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?

going with anybody

láaw si paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?

Is he going with anybody?

phāk jũũ hóonhém daj bɔɔ?

to stay in any hotel

láaw si phāk jũũ hóonhém  
daj bɔɔ?

Is he going to stay in any  
hotel at all?

M-2

sỳy, láaw si sỳy kǎj too n̄ȳŋ

Yes, he will buy one chicken.

paj, láaw si paj hǎa m̄ɔ

Yes, he is going to see the  
doctor.

paj, láaw si paj nám àaj  
láaw

Yes, he is going with his  
older brother.

phāk, láaw si phāk jũũ  
hóonhém māj

Yes, he will stay in a new  
hotel at all?

M-3

mâak mūaŋ, nūaj

càw si sỳy mâak mūaŋ  
cák nūaj bɔɔ?

mango (classifier)

Are you going to buy any  
mangoes?

mâak kùaj, nūaj

càw si sỳy mâak kùaj  
cák nūaj bɔɔ?

banana (classifier)

Are you going to buy any  
bananas?

phák, māt

càw si sỳy phák cák  
māt bɔɔ?

vegetable, bunch

Are you going to buy any  
bunches of vegetables?

mâak phét, hɔɔ

càw si sỳy mâak phét cák  
hɔɔ bɔɔ?

hot pepper, pack

Are you going to buy any  
packages of hot pepper ?

nàm paa, kèɛw

càw si sỳy nàm paa cák  
kèɛw bɔɔ?

fish sauce, bottle

Are you going to buy any  
bottles of fish sauce?

M-4

khɔ̄j si bɔɔ sỳy pỳm cák hǔa

I'm not going to buy any  
books.

khɔ̄j si bɔɔ sỳy kāj cák too

I'm not going to buy any  
chickens.

khɔ̄j si bɔɔ sỳy mâak kùaj  
cák nūaj

I'm not going to buy any  
bananas.

khɔ̄j si bɔɔ sɔ̄ɔn cák khón

I'm not going to teach  
anybody.

M-5

khôj bɔɔ paj sǎj I didn't go anywhere.

sỳy buy

khôj bɔɔ sỳy njǎŋ I didn't buy anything.

nám with

khôj bɔɔ paj nám phǎj I didn't go with anybody.

míi, nén have, money

khôj bɔɔ míi nén cák kíp I have no kips. (I don't have any kips.)

hùucák know

khôj bɔɔ hòucák cák khón I do not know anybody. (in that group).

khôj bɔɔ hòucák phuu daj I don't know anybody at all.

C-1

A. càw si sỳy njǎŋ bɔɔ? Will you buy anything?

B. sỳy, khôj si sỳy pỳm sɔɔŋ hũa Yes, I will buy two books.

C-2

A. càw si sỳy paa cák too bɔɔ? Are you going to buy any fish?

B. bɔɔ, khôj si bɔɔ sỳy paa cák too. No, I'm not going to buy any fish.



C-3

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. càw si paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?       | Are you going with anybody?     |
| B. bɔɔ, khɔj si bɔɔ paj nám phǎj? | No, I'm not going with anybody. |

ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສົມມຸດແຕ່ງກັນໄປຊື້ຂອງກິນ ຫລືໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຖາມກັນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ຜູ້ໃດຈະໄປໃສ່ບໍ່? ເຮັດຫຍັງບໍ່? ຫລືວ່າຈະເອົາຈັກໃດບໍ່? ຈັກແຜນບໍ່? ແລະຕ່ຽງໄປ. ສຳຄັນກົດໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຈົນລ່ຽນ.

NOTES

- 1) mâak means 'fruit of a tree or plant' and is the first element in many Noun Compounds referring to fruits and vegetables, mâak mưan 'mango', mâak kwàaj 'banana', mâak kian 'orange', mâak phét 'hot peppers'. The general word for fruit is mâakmàj; however, mâak does occur with this meaning in  
tônmaaj nưi bɔɔ pen mâak 'This tree has no fruit on it'.
- 2) māt means literally 'to tie up'. It is used to mean 'bunch, or bundle' of vegetables, etc.
- 3) hɔɔ 'to wrap up' is used to refer to 'packages, packets, etc.' or things that are wrapped in paper. It does not refer to boxes.
- 4) kèsw means 'glass as a material'. It is also used to refer to 'glass bottles'. The word for a 'glass to drink out of' is cɔɔk. cɔɔk kèsw is a 'glass drinking glass'.
- 5) njǎn, sǎj, and phǎj usually function as question words in sentences:

- |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <u>càw paj sǎj?</u>               | 'Where are you going?'              |
| <u>láaw si khǎaj njǎn?</u>        | 'What is he going to sell?'         |
| <u>càw si deentháan nám phǎj?</u> | 'Who are you going to travel with?' |

But in negative sentences or in questions with bᵛᵛ, they function as indefinite nouns:

láaw sỳy njǎn bᵛᵛ? 'Did he buy anything?'

láaw paj sǎj bᵛᵛ? 'Did he go anywhere?'

càw bᵛᵛ paj nám phǎj bᵛᵛ? 'You didn't go with anybody?'

cák 'How many?' functions as a question word in

càw mǐi pỳm cák hǔa? 'How many books do you have?'

but in the negative sentence khᵛᵛj bᵛᵛ mǐi cák hǔa 'I don't have a single one (book)', cák means 'any' or 'a single one'. daj 'any' has a similar meaning in the affirmative question.

láaw si phāk jᵛᵛ hᵛᵛnhᵛᵛm 'Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?'  
daj bᵛᵛ?

bᵛᵛ, láaw si bᵛᵛ phāk jᵛᵛ 'No, he isn't going to stay  
hᵛᵛnhᵛᵛm daj in any hotel.'

cák and daj are both used in the negative for emphasis. In cases where either cák and/or daj can be used daj is usually more general in meaning. Compare;

khᵛᵛj bᵛᵛ hᵛᵛucák cák khón 'I don't know anybody in this group.'

khᵛᵛj bᵛᵛ hᵛᵛucák phᵛᵛ daj 'I don't know anybody in this town.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentence into Lao: (Write the answers on a separate piece of paper or say them aloud and check your answers).
- (a) What do you see? I don't see anything.
  - (b) Where did your friend go? He didn't go anywhere.
  - (c) Do you have any money? No, I don't have a single kip.
  - (d) Do you know anybody in Vientiane? No, I don't know a soul there.

---

Answers: 1(a) cào hěn nǎn? khôj bɔɔ hěn nǎn (b) phyan cào paj sǎj? láaw bɔɔ paj sǎj (c) cào míi nèn bɔɔ? bɔɔ, khôj bɔɔ míi nèn cák kíp (d) cào hùucák phuu daj juu wíancan bɔɔ? bɔɔ, khôj bɔɔ hùucák phuu daj juu hân cák khón

CYCLE 42

M-1

hùucák káp láaw

to know her

phǎj phǎj koo jâak

Everybody wants to know her.

hùucák káp láaw

paj bɔ̃ŋ

to go see

phǎj phǎj koo jâak paj bɔ̃ŋ

Everybody wants to go see.

síim

to taste

phǎj phǎj koo jâak síim

Everybody wants to taste.

sỳy

to buy

phǎj phǎj koo jâak sỳy

Everybody wants to buy.

khɪɪ

to ride

phǎj phǎj koo jâak khɪɪ

Everybody wants to ride.

āān

to read

phǎj phǎj koo jâak āān

Everybody wants to read.

M-2

láaw, ḡáam

she, pretty

láaw ḡáam lǎaj

She is very pretty.

síinée, mūan

the film, good

síinée mūan lǎaj

The film is very good.  
(enjoyable)

aahǎan, sèɛp

the food, delicious

aahǎan sèɛp lǎaj

The food is very delicious.

M-2

khɔ̌ɔŋ, thŷyk

things, cheap

khɔ̌ɔŋ thŷyk lǎaj

Things are very cheap.

lɔ̌t, māj

the car, new

lɔ̌t māj lǎaj

The car is very new.

p̀ȳm n̄i n̄a s̄ɔ̌ncaj

this book, interesting

p̀ȳm n̄i n̄a s̄ɔ̌ncaj lǎaj

This book is very interesting.

C-1

(n̄ám)

(pretty)

A. láaw n̄ám ɔ̌ɔ?

Is she pretty?

(h̀ucák káp láaw)

(to know her)

B. oo, láaw n̄ám lǎaj  
phǎj phǎj koo j̄ak  
h̀ucák káp láaw

Oh yes, she is very pretty.  
Everybody wants to know her.

C-2

(h̀ucák káp láaw)

(to know her)

A. pen njǎŋ phǎj phǎj koo  
c̄ȳŋ j̄ak h̀ucák káp  
láaw.

Why does everybody want to  
know her?

(h̀ucák káp láaw, n̄ám)

(to know her, pretty)

B. phǎj phǎj koo j̄ak  
h̀ucák káp láaw ph̄ɔ̌wā  
láaw n̄ám lǎaj

Everybody wants to know her  
because she is very pretty.

NOTES

- 1) Doubling of phǎj 'who, anyone' gives it the general and all inclusive meaning 'everybody'. It is normally followed by koo, which in this case can not be translated.
- 2) jâak 'want, would like' is normally followed by VP: láaw jâak paj bōṅ sīnēe 'He wants to go to a movie.' jâak should not be confused with māk 'like to': láaw māk paj bōṅ sīnēe 'He likes to go to movies.'
- 3) lǎaj 'very' is an intensifier when it occurs after stative verbs like ṅaam 'pretty', etc.
- 4) mūan 'to be enjoyable, to be fun' may have only inanimate NP or VP as Subject:
 

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>pen thāhāan mūan bōo?</u> | 'Is it fun being a soldier?' |
| <u>sīnēe mūan bōo?</u>       | 'Did you enjoy the movie?'   |
- 5) The construction pen njǎn... cṽṅ 'Why (how is it that...)' occurs initially in the sentence:
 

|                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <u>pen njǎn láaw cṽṅ jâak paj</u> | 'Why (how is it that...) does        |
| <u>pácam juu páthèet láaw?</u>    | he want to be stationed in<br>Laos?' |
- 6) nâasōncaj 'interesting' functions like a stative verb, but it is a compound made up of nâa 'to be able' or 'ing' + sōncaj 'to be interested in'. nâa may occur before other verbs with a similar function: nâakin 'look good to eat', nâajuu 'nice to live in', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ koo hùu lèsw  
(Everybody already knows that.)
- (b) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ paj bᵒᵒ sᵒᵒnᵒᵒ  
(Why didn't he go to the movies?)
- (c) mᵒᵒ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ ᵒᵒam \_\_\_\_\_  
(His wife isn't very pretty.)
- (d) hᵒᵒan pháasᵒᵒa \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ?  
(Is studying a language fun?)
- (e) lᵒᵒt càw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ?  
(Is your car new?)
- (f) aahᵒᵒan láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ?  
(Is Lao food delicious?)
- (g) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ lᵒᵒaj bᵒᵒ?  
(Is she very short in height?)
- (h) khᵒᵒj bᵒᵒ jᵒᵒak \_\_\_\_\_  
(I don't want to be fat.)
- (i) khᵒᵒj bᵒᵒ \_\_\_\_\_ khᵒᵒn cᵒᵒj  
(I don't like skinny people.)
- (j) jᵒᵒu bàan nᵒᵒk \_\_\_\_\_  
(It's no fun living out in the provinces.)

- (k) \_\_\_\_\_ caw \_\_\_\_\_ hían pháasǎa láaw ?  
 (How do you happen to be studying Lao?)
- (l) \_\_\_\_\_ mūan lǎaj  
 (Flying (going by plane) is a lot of fun.)
- (m) \_\_\_\_\_ bᵛᵛ māk kháp lot  
 (Nobody likes to drive a car.)
- (n) pým hǎa nàn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (That book isn't very interesting.)

---

Answers: (a)phǎj phǎj koo (b)pen njǎŋ... cŷŋ (c)bᵛᵛ...  
 paandaj (d)mūan (e)mǎj (f)sᵛᵛp (g)tām (h)tùj  
 (i)māk (j)bᵛᵛ mūan (k)pen njǎŋ... cŷŋ (l)paj  
 nám hýabin (m)phǎj phǎj koo (n)bᵛᵛ nâasõncaj  
 paandaj



CYCLE 43

M-1

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <u>hěn nâa láaw</u>                           | to see her face                 |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak<br>hěn nâa láaw        | No one wants to see her face.   |
| <u>pen phyan láaw</u>                         | to be his friend                |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak<br>pen phyan láaw      | No one wants to be his friend.  |
| <u>njũnkɪaw</u>                               | to be concerned                 |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak<br>njũnkɪaw            | No one wants to be concerned.   |
| <u>juu</u>                                    | to live (in it)                 |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak juu                    | No one wants to live (in it)    |
| <u>thíaw tháan sên nii</u>                    | to take this road               |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak<br>thíaw tháan sên nii | No one wants to take this road. |
| <u>sàj hōon nii</u>                           | to use this room                |
| phǎj phǎj koo boo jâak<br>sàj hōon nii        | No one wants to use this room.  |

M-2

bᵒᵒ súpḥàap

impolite

láaw bᵒᵒ súpḥàap lǎaj

He is very impolite.

khón khīi thīi

stingy person

láaw pen khón khīi thīi  
lǎaj

He is a very stingy person.

bᵒᵒ sǎmkhán paandaj

not so important

lỳan nīi bᵒᵒ sǎmkhán  
paandaj

This matter is not so important

nᵒᵒj

small

hýan lǎn nīi nᵒᵒj lǎaj

This house is very small.

kandaan

dangerous

tháan sēn nīi kandaan  
lǎaj

This road is very dangerous.

C-1

(bᵒᵒ súpḥàap)

(impolite)

A. láaw bᵒᵒ súpḥàap, mᵑᵑᵑ  
bᵒᵒ?

He is impolite, isn't he?

(hěn nâa láaw)

(to see his face)

B. mᵑᵑᵑ lèsw, láaw bᵒᵒ  
súpḥàap lǎaj phǎj  
phǎj kᵒᵒ bᵒᵒ jâak  
hěn nâa láaw.

Yes, he is very impolite.  
No one wants to see his  
face.

C-2

(jâak hěn nâa láaw)

(want to see his face)

A. pen njǎn phǎj phǎj koo  
cyn ບວກ ຈັກ ເຢ້ນ ນ້າ  
ລ້າວ?

Why doesn't anybody want  
to see his face?

(bວກ súphàap) láaw, ບວກ  
súphàap)

(impolite)

B. phǎj phǎj koo ບວກ ຈັກ  
ເຢ້ນ ນ້າ ລ້າວ ພົວວາ  
ລ້າວ ບວກ súphàap ລ້າຈ.

No one wants to see his face  
because he is so impolite.

---

ມາໃນຕອນນອກຈະເປັນໂອກາດດີສຳລັບແຕ່ງຕ້ອງປະກອບ. ຈົ່ງຢາລົມວ່າທຸກໆຕ້ອງຕ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ມີ  
ຈະຕ້ອງມີຄຳວ່າທີ່ເລິກເຊິ່ງຂຶ້ນສະເໝີ ແລະຄອຍໆຍາວອອກຕາມຄວາມສາມາດຂອງນັກຮຽນ. ວິທີສອນ  
ຕ້ອງປະກອບທີ່ໂດ່ເຫັງຢ່າງນັ້ນກໍຄື ບໍ່ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນອ່ານຕ້ອງຕ້ອງແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນ ແຕ່ໃຫ້ເຮັດດັ່ງນີ້:

1. ຫ້າມອ່ານໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຟັງເທື່ອລະນ້ອຍ ແລະຖາມນັກຮຽນຢູ່ສະເໝີວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈຫລືບໍ່.  
ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈກໍໃຫ້ຢຸດອ່ານ ແລ້ວອະທິບາຍຈົນຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈ.
  2. ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກຕາມຫ້າມຈົນລຽນ.
  3. ຖາມຄຳຖາມກ່ຽວກັບຕ້ອງ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຕອບດ້ວຍຄວາມແນ່ໃຈ.
  4. ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສຽບຕ້ອງສູ່ຫ້າມຟັງ.
-

CYCLE 44

M-1

ṇáam kwāa

prettier than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi ṇáam kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house is prettier than  
that one.

kwàaṇ kwāa

more spacious than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi kwàaṇ kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house is more spacious  
than that one.

khèṣṇ kwāa

less space than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi khèṣṇ kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house has less space  
than that one.

thýyk kwāa

cheaper than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi thýyk kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house is cheaper than  
that one.

phéṣṇ kwāa

more expensive than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi phéṣṇ kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house is more expensive  
than that one.

sǔuṇ kwāa

higher than

hýan lǎṇ ṇiṇi sǔuṇ kwāa  
lǎṇ nàṇ

This house is higher than  
that one.

M-2

lɛɛn wáj

run fast

lɔt kán nǐi lɛɛn wáj  
thǎw kán káp kán nán

This car runs as fast as  
that one.

láakháa

price

lɔt kán nǐi láakháa thǎw  
kán káp kán nán

This car has the same price  
as that one.

njǎj thɔɔ

as big as

lɔt kán nǐi njǎj thɔɔ  
kán káp kán nán

This car is as big as that  
one.

mǎj thǎw

as new as

lɔt kán nǐi mǎj thǎw  
kán káp kán nán

This car is as new as that  
one.

C-1

(njǎj kwǎa)

(bigger than)

A. hýan lǎn nǐi njǎj kwǎa  
lǎn nán mɛɛn bɔɔ?

This house is bigger than  
that one, isn't it?

(njǎj thɔɔ)

(as big as)

B. bɔɔ mɛɛn, hýan lǎn nǐi  
njǎj thɔɔ kán káp lǎn  
nán

No, this house is as (big)  
as that one.

C-2

(lɛɛn wáj)

(run fast)

A. lɔt kʰán nɪi lɛɛn wáj  
 thāw kán káp kʰán nán,  
 mɛɛn bɔɔ?

This car runs as fast as  
 that one, doesn't it?

(lɛɛn wáj kwāā)

(run faster than)

B. bɔɔ mɛɛn, lɔt kʰán nɪi  
 lɛɛn wáj kwāā kʰán nán

No, this one runs faster  
 than that one.

ຈົງທຽບຂະໜາດ ຄຸນພາບ ແລະຄຸນຄ່າຂອງສິ່ງຂອງທີ່ທຸກຄົນເຫັນຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງນີ້ເບິ່ງດູ! (ໃຫຍ່ ນ້ອຍ ດີ ຖີກ) ບັດນີ້ ຫ້ມໄປທຽບການກະທຳຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! (ເຮັດວຽກ ແລນ ຂັບຄືນ...). ໃຈຄຳເວົ້າໃຫ້ຫມິດ.

NOTES

1) Two things may be equal or unequal as far as some quality (goodness, etc.) is concerned; consequently, there are in language, constructions that may be labeled 'Comparison of Equality' and 'Comparison of Inequality'.

(a) The Comparison of Inequality construction in Lao is:

NP<sup>1</sup> + V<sub>s</sub> + kwāā + NP<sup>2</sup>

h́yan lǎn nɪi      ńáam      kwāā      lǎn nán  
 (this house      pretty      more      that one)

'This house is prettier than that one.'

(b) The Comparison of Equality construction is:

NP<sup>1</sup> + V<sub>s</sub> + thāw kan káp + NP<sup>2</sup>  
lōt khán nīi kāw thāw kan káp khán nà  
 (This car old equal to that one.)

'This car is as old as that one'.

When the stative verb refers to 'size', thōj may replace thāw in construction like the one above:

lōt khán nīi njāj thōj kan 'This car is as big as  
káp khán nà that one.'

The stative verb may be replaced by V + Adverb (lēen wāj) in either of the constructions above:

lōt khán nīi lēen wāj kwāa 'This car runs faster than  
khán nà that one.'

lōt khán nīi lēen wāj thāwkan 'This car runs as fast as  
káp khán nà that one.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ càw bōō?  
 (Is she taller than you?)

(b) mīa càw \_\_\_\_\_ mīa láaw  
 (Your wife's as pretty as his.)

(c) láaw njāān \_\_\_\_\_ càw  
 (He walks faster than you do.)

- (d) lỳaη nìi \_\_\_\_\_ lỳaη nàη  
(This story is more interesting than that one.)
- (e) láaw pen khòn \_\_\_\_\_ càw  
(He's as intelligent a person as you are.)
- (f) láaw kháp lốt \_\_\_\_\_ phỳan càw  
(He drives faster than your friend.)
- (g) khôj mĩi nẻn \_\_\_\_\_ càw  
(I have more money than you.)
- (h) phắj phắj koo b๓๓ \_\_\_\_\_ láaw  
(Nobody is as evil (bad as he is.)
- (i) pỳm hủa nìi \_\_\_\_\_ hủa nàη  
(This book is as cheap as that one.)
- (j) mầak mủaη nủaj nìi \_\_\_\_\_ nủaj nàη  
(This mango is as big as that one.)
- (k) móoη nủaj nìi \_\_\_\_\_ nủaj nàη  
(This watch is more expensive than that one.)
- (l) hầasíp kíp! \_\_\_\_\_  
(50 kip. That's very expensive.)
- (m) mỳy nìi làaw khắaj \_\_\_\_\_ mỳy wáan nìi  
(He is selling it cheaper today than yesterday.)
- (n) \_\_\_\_\_ nàη  
(It's much more delicious than that.)

Answers: (a) sủuη kwầầ (b) nầam thầw kan káp (c) wắj kwầầ (d) nầa sỏncaj kwầầ (e) salầat thầw kan káp (f) wắj kwầầ (g) lầaj kwầầ (h) sủa thầw kan káp (i) lầakhầa thầw kan káp (or) thỳyk thầw kan káp (j) njắj th๓๓ kan káp (k) phẻεη kwầầ (l) phẻεη lầaj (m) thỳyk kwầầ (n) sẻεp lầaj kwầầ



CYCLE 45

M-1

ḡáam kwāā mūū

the prettiest

náj sǎam khón nìi càw khít  
wāā njín phūūdaj ḡáam kwāā  
mūū?

Which of these three women do  
you think is the prettiest?

nâahāk kwāā mūū

the loveliest

náj sǎam khón nìi càw khít  
wāā njín phūūdaj nâahāk  
kwāā mūū?

Which of these three women do  
you think is the loveliest?

khîihàaj kwāā mūū

the ugliest

náj sǎam khón nìi càw khít  
wāā njín phūūdaj khîihàaj  
kwāā mūū?

Which of these three women do  
you think is the ugliest?

hìaphòoj kwāā mūū

the best-mannered

náj sǎam khón nìi càw khít  
wāā njín phūūdaj hìaphòoj  
kwāā mūū?

Which of these three women do  
you think is the best-mannered?

khîi aaj kwāā mūū

the most bashful

náj sǎam khón nìi càw khít  
wāā njín phūūdaj khîi aaj  
kwāā mūū?

Which of these three women do  
you think is the most bashful?

M-2

ṇáam thāw kan

equally pretty

njín sǎam khón nǐi ṇáam  
thāw kan

These three women are equally  
pretty.

kēṇ thāw kan

equally smart

njín sǎam khón nǐi kēṇ  
thāw kan

These three women are equally  
smart.

dii thāw kan

equally nice

njín sǎam khón nǐi dii  
thāw kan

These three women are equally  
nice.

dàjhāp kaan sýksǎa thāw kan

equally educated

njín sǎam khón nǐi dàjhāp  
kaan sýksǎa thāw kan

These three women have equal  
education.

míi aanjūʔ thāw kan

the same age

njín sǎam khón nǐi míi  
aanjūʔ thāw kan

These three women are the  
same age.

míi wiak lǎaj thāw kan

have equal amount of work

njín sǎam khón nǐi míi  
wiak lǎaj thāw kan

These three women have equal  
amount of work.

míi ṇéndyan thāw kan

have equal salary

njín sǎam khón nǐi míi  
ṇéndyan thāw kan

These three women have equal  
salaries.

C-1

(ḡáam kwāā mūū)

A. náj sǎam khón nìi càv  
khít wāā njín phūūdaj  
ḡáam kwāā mūū

(the prettiest)

Of these three women who  
do you think is the  
prettiest?

(ḡáam thāw kan)

B. khôj khít wāā njín sǎam  
khón nìi ḡáam thāw kan

(equally pretty)

I think these three women  
are equally pretty.

C-2

(ḡáam kwāā mūū)

A. náj sǎam khón nàv mii  
njín phūū n̄yḡ ḡáam  
kwāā mūū, mēēn bōō?

(the prettiest)

Of these three women there's  
one who is the prettiest,  
don't you think?

B. bōō mēēn, khôj khít wāā  
khácàv ḡáam thāw kan

No, I think they are  
equally pretty.

NOTES

- 1) The construction for Comparison of Inequality when more than two objects are being compared is:

NP (Number of Objects) + NP (Subject) +  $V_s$  kwāā + mūū

náj sǎam khón nìi      njín phūūdaj      ḡáam kwāā      mūū  
(of these 3 persons      which woman      pretty      more      group)

'Which of these three women is the prettiest?'

mū 'group' always occurs in this construction. The classifier phū is used before daj because it is the classifier for njín. Observe the following construction with a different classifier:

náj săam nūaj nìi mâak kùaj nūaj daj sèsp kwāā mū

'Which of these three bananas is the most delicious?'

- 2) The construction of Comparison of Equality when three or more objects are being compared is:

NP (Subject) + V<sub>s</sub> + thāw kan

njín săam khóon nìi sūun thāw kan

'These three women are equally tall.'

thāw kan 'equal, equally' may also occur after NP:

njín săam khón nìi míi aanjū? thāw kan

(These three women have age equal)

'These three women are the same age.'

#### APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) náj sīi khón nìi lùuk phūudaj nâahāk \_\_\_\_\_

(Which of the four children is the most loveable?)

(b) náj săam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njín phūudaj \_\_\_\_\_

(Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?)

(c) pým hók hūa nìi \_\_\_\_\_

(These six books are priced the same.)

- (d) phūsáaj hāa khón nīi mīi nēn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (These five boys have equal amounts of money.)
- (e) sāaη māj sǒη khón nīi hēt wìak \_\_\_\_\_  
 (These two carpenters work equally skillfully.)
- (f) náj 3 khón nīi thāhāan phūudaj kháp lǒt \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Which of these three soldiers drives the fastest?)
- (g) náj 3 khón nīi nākhiān phūudaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Which of these three students is the most studious?)
- (h) náj 3 too nīi kāj toodaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Which is the biggest of these three chickens?)
- (i) kēsēw sǎam nūaj nān mīi \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Those three bottles have equal amounts of water in them.)
- (j) náj 3 khón nān sāaη phūudaj pīan jaan dāj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Of those three artisans which can change a tire the fastest?)

---

Answers: (a)kwāā mūū (b)khīiaaj kwāā mūū (c)láakhāa thāw kan  
 (d)lǎaj thāw kan (e)kēη thāw kan (f)wáj kwāā mūū  
 (g)dú?mān kwāā mūū (h)njāj kwāā mūū (i)nām thāw kan  
 (j)wáj kwāā mūū

CYCLE 46

M-1

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <u>pỳm</u> , <u>hũa</u>                           | book, (classifier)                   |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa pỳm<br>jưư sớoη hũa         | Now I have two books left.           |
| <u>ηén</u> , <u>kíp</u>                           | money, kip                           |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa ηén<br>jưư sớoη kíp         | Now I have two kips left.            |
| <u>khâw</u> , <u>thớoη</u>                        | rice, bag                            |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa khâw<br>jưư sớoη thớoη      | Now I have two bags of rice left.    |
| <u>paa</u> , <u>too</u>                           | fish, (classifier)                   |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa paa<br>jưư sớoη too         | Now I have two fish left.            |
| <u>lùukpyyn</u> , <u>lùuk</u>                     | bullet, (classifier)                 |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa<br>lùukpyyn jưư sớoη lùuk   | Now I have two bullets left.         |
| <u>lābêet mýy</u> , <u>lùuk</u>                   | hand grenade, (classifier)           |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa<br>lābêet mýy jưư sớoη lùuk | Now I have two hand grenades left.   |
| <u>lâw</u> <u>biạ</u> , <u>kèew</u>               | beer, bottle                         |
| diawnlì khôj nján lýa lâw<br>bia jưư sớoη kèew    | Now I have two bottles of beer left. |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <u>pàaj</u> , <u>khámkhǔan</u> , <u>phēen</u>         | sign, slogan, sheet (classifier)                        |
| diawǹi khôj nján lǎa pàaj<br>khámkhǔan jūu sǒŋ phēen | Now I have two slogan signs<br>left.                    |
| M-2   |   |
| <u>nén</u> , <u>dooláa</u>                            | money, dollar   |
| càw nján lǎa nén jūu cák<br>dooláa?                   | How many dollars do you have<br>left?                   |
| <u>thǒŋ</u> , <u>nūaj</u>                             | sack, (classifier)                                      |
| càw nján lǎa thǒŋ jūu cák<br>nūaj?                    | How many sacks do you have<br>left?                     |
| <u>mâak</u> <u>kùaj</u> , <u>nūaj</u>                 | banana, (classifier)                                    |
| càw nján lǎa mâak kùaj<br>jūu cák nūaj?               | How many bananas do you have<br>left?                   |
| <u>bótkhwáam</u> , <u>lỳaŋ</u>                        | article, story  |
| càw nján lǎa bótkhwáam<br>jūu cák lỳaŋ?               | How many articles (in a<br>newspaper) do you have left? |
| <u>sámáasik</u> , <u>khón</u>                         | member, person  |
| càw nján lǎa sámáasik<br>jūu cák khón?                | How many members do you have<br>left?                   |
| <u>khón</u> , <u>khòpkhúa</u>                         | people, family  |
| càw nján lǎa khón jūu cák<br>khòpkhúa?                | How many families do you<br>have left?                  |

phâa sēt nâa, phỷyn

càw nján lỷa phâa sēt  
nâa jưư cák phỷyn

towel (classifier)

How many towels do you have  
left?

pseη, thũu khêsw, an

càw nján lỷa pseη thũu  
khêsw jưư cák an

brush, brush teeth (classifier)

How many tooth brushes do  
you have left?

C-1

(khâw) (sớη thớη)

A. diawnỉi khácàw nján lỷa  
khâw jưư sớη thớη,  
mếen bớớ?

(rice, two sacks)

Now they have two sacks of  
rice left, isn't that right?

(khâw)

B. mếen lếsw, diawnỉi  
khácàw nján lỷa jưư  
sớη thớη

(rice)

Yes, that's right, now they  
have two sacks (of rice) left.

C-2

(mâak kùaj)

A. càw nján lỷa mâak kùaj  
jưư cák nưưaj?

(bananas)

How many bananas do you  
have left?

(hâa)

B. khớj nján lỷa mâak  
kùaj jưư hâa nưưaj

(five)

I have five bananas left.



C-3

(sɔɔŋ phǎyn)

(two objects of cloth)

A. cào nján lǎa njǎn juu  
sɔɔŋ phǎyn?

Of what objects of cloth do  
you have two left?

(phâasētnâa)

(towels)

A. khôj nján lǎa phâasētnâa  
juu sɔɔŋ phǎyn?

I have two towels left.

ຫ້ານລອງພານັກຮຽນຂອງຫ້ານໄລເລກກັນເບິ່ງດູ! ຈິ່ງຕັ້ງເລກໂຈດຂນ ແລວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປັນຜູ້ໄລແລວ  
ໃຫ້ຄຳຕອບແກ່ຫ້ານເບິ່ງດູ! ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ມວນນຂອຍໄດ້ຈຸຫມາກກວາຍ 25 ຫນວຍໆລະ 5 ກີບ.  
ຂອຍໄດ້ກິນຫມາກກວາຍຈັກຫນວຍຂອຍກີບຈໍ; ຂອຍຈໍໄດ້ວາກອນຈຸຫມາກກວາຍຂອຍມີເວັ້ນຢູ່ 260 ກີບ.  
ນັ້ນແລງວານນຂອຍຍັງເຫລືອຫມາກກວາຍຢູ່ 21 ຫນວຍ. ຖາມວ່າ 1. ມວນນຂອຍກິນຫມາກກວາຍ  
ຈັກຫນວຍ? 2. ດຽວນຂອຍຍັງເຫລືອເວັ້ນຢູ່ຈັກກີບ? 3. ຂອຍສິຈຸຫມາກກວາຍໄດ້ອີກຈັກຫນວຍ?"

ຫມາຍເຫດ: ສິ່ງທີ່ຈະກ່າວຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ ແມ່ນວຽກຫ້ານຈະຕ້ອງພຍາຍາມເຮັດໃຫ້ບັນລຸຜົນ:

1. ການອອກສຽງ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງເວົ້າພາສາລາວໃຫ້ໃກ້ສຳນຽງລາວທີ່ສຸດເທົ່າທີ່ຈະເວົ້າໄດ້.
2. ຫລັກການເວົ້າ. ແມ່ນການເວົ້າໃຫ້ຖືກຕາມຫລັກ ບໍ່ແມ່ນຈັບຫນ້າໃສ່ຫລັງ ຈັບຫລັງໃສ່ຫນ້າ.
3. ຄຳສັບ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງໃຊ້ຄຳໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງແລະແມ່ນຢຳ; ໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ກົງກັບຄວາມຫມາຍ.
4. ຄວາມຄອງໄວ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງສາມາດເວົ້າໄດ້ດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວທີ່ມະນະດາ ແລະສມໍ່ສະເມີ.
5. ຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ. ນັກຮຽນຕ້ອງຄວາມສາມາດເຂົ້າໃຈເນື້ອເວລາຟັງຄົນອື່ນເວົ້າ.

CYCLE 47

M-1

khâw

rice

khâw háw mót lèɛw

Our rice is all gone.

mâak phét

pepper

mâak phét háw mót lèɛw

Our (green, red) pepper is all gone.

nâm paa

fish sauce

nâm paa háw mót lèɛw

Our fish sauce is all gone.

kya

salt

kya háw mót lèɛw

Our salt is all gone.

nâmtaan

sugar

nâmtaan háw mót lèɛw

Our sugar is all gone.

phiktháj

black pepper

phiktháj háw mót lèɛw

Our black pepper is all gone.

khâwcīī

bread

khâwcīī háw mót lèɛw

Our bread is all gone.

sīin

meat

sīin háw mót lèɛw

Our meat is all gone.

M-2

khâw

rice

khâw háw kàj si mót lèsw

Our rice is almost gone.

nàmmán bəe

butter

nàmmán bəe háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our butter is almost gone.

nàmmán mū

lard

nàmmán mū háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our lard is almost gone.

nàmmán sálát

salad dressing

nàmmán sálát háw kàj si  
mót lèsw

Our salad dressing is almost gone.

phákbūa

onion

phákbūa háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our onions are almost gone.

phákthiam

garlic

phákthiam háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our garlic is almost gone.

mâak tɛɛŋ

cucumbers

mâak tɛɛŋ háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our cucumbers are almost gone.

mâak thūa

beans

mâak thūa háw kàj si mót  
lèsw

Our beans are almost gone.

M-3

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| mót lèɛw        | All gone.        |
| kàj si mót lèɛw | Almost all gone. |

M-4

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| <u>nàmpaa</u>         | fish sauce                  |
| nàmpaa háw nján jūu   | We still have fish sauce.   |
| <u>kya</u>            | salt                        |
| kya háw nján jūu      | We still have salt.         |
| <u>phiktháj</u>       | black pepper                |
| phiktháj háw nján jūu | We still have black pepper. |
| <u>phákbūa</u>        | onions                      |
| phákbūa háw nján jūu  | We still have onions.       |
| <u>khâwcīī</u>        | bread                       |
| khâwcīī háw nján jūu  | We still have bread.        |
| <u>sīin núa</u>       | beef                        |
| sīin núa háw nján jūu | We still have beef.         |
| <u>mâakmàj</u>        | fruit                       |
| mâakmàj háw nján jūu  | We still have fruit.        |

C-1

(màakphét)

(pepper)

A. màakphét háw mót lèsw  
bɔɔ?

Are we out of pepper?

B. əə, mót lèsw

Yes, we are out of it.

C-2

(nàmmán sálát)

(salad dressing)

A. nàmmán sálát háw kàj si  
mót lèsw bɔɔ?

Are we nearly out of salad  
dressing ?

B. əə, kàj si mót lèsw

Yes, we are almost out of it.

C-3

(mâakphét)

(pepper)

A. mâakphét háw mót lèsw  
bɔɔ?

Are we out of pepper?

B. bɔɔ, mâakphét háw nján  
jɯ

No, we still have some.

---

ຖາມຫາສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆທີ່ແຕ່ລະຄົນມີຢູ່ບ່າງຄູ່! ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງມີຢູ່ບໍ່ຫລືໃຈຫມິດແລ້ວ? ຍັງບໍ່ຫມິດ, ຍັງເຫລືອ  
ຢູ່ບໍ່ ຫລື ຫມິດແລ້ວ. ໃກ້ສິ່ງຫມິດແລ້ວບໍ່ ຫລືວ່າຍັງຫລາຍຢູ່?

---

NOTES

- 1) mót means 'to be used up'. It is used to indicate that the supply of something is exhausted: nàmpaa mó<sup>h</sup>t lə̀sw 'The fish sauce is all gone.'

When kàj si precedes mót, it indicates that the supply is nearly used up.

The manner in which something was consumed can be indicated by putting a verb before mót: kin mó<sup>h</sup>t 'eaten up', etc.

- 2) lǎa is used to indicate that something remains from an amount which was originally set aside for some special purpose. Observe the use of lǎa in **sentences**:

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <u>khôj nján lǎa pým jūu sǝŋ hǎa</u> | 'I have two books left.'                   |
| (to me still remains book 2)         | (of the ones I brought back from Germany.) |

The classifier phrase indicating the amount is not immediately next to its NP but follows jūu.

- 3) nján ... jūu is used to indicate that a certain situation still continues to exist. It may be used without lǎa but with some difference in meaning. Compare:

|                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <u>mâak kwuaj nján jūu</u> | 'We still have bananas.'           |
|                            | (There's no need to buy any more). |

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <u>mâak kwuaj nján lǎa jūu</u> | 'We still have bananas (left over from making a banana cake).' |
|--------------------------------|--|

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks:

- (a) càw nján \_\_\_\_\_ sámásik \_\_\_\_\_ cák khón  
(How many members do you have left?)
- (b) nàmmán bæe háw \_\_\_\_\_ mót lèsw  
(Our butter is almost gone.)
- (c) \_\_\_\_\_ háw mót lèsw  
(Our garlic is all gone.)
- (d) kya háw \_\_\_\_\_  
(We still have salt.)
- (e) mâakphét háw mót lèsw \_\_\_\_\_  
(Are we out of pepper?)
- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ háw nján jūu  
(We still have beef.)
- (g) əə, \_\_\_\_\_  
(We're out of it.)
- (h) khôj nján lýa paa jūu \_\_\_\_\_  
(I have two fish left.)
- (i) khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ aahǎan \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw  
(They ate up the food.)

(j) diawni khôj nján lǎa \_\_\_\_\_ jūu \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Now I have two kips left.)

(k) \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw  
 (Time's up!)

(l) càw nján lǎa \_\_\_\_\_ jūu cák \_\_\_\_\_?  
 (How many bananas do you have left?)

---

Answers: (a) lǎa... jūu (b) kàj si (c) phákthiam (d) nján jūu  
 (e) bōō (f) siin nua (g) mót lèsw (h) sǒŋ too (i) kin...  
 mót (j) nén... sǒŋ kīp (k) mót wéeláa (l) mâak kùaj  
 ... nūaj.



CYCLE 48

M-1

ḡḡn

money

khácàw mót ḡḡn lèsw

They are already broke.

khwáam khít

idea, thought

khácàw mót khwáam khít  
lèsw

They are already out of ideas.

kamláncaj

will power, encouragement

khácàw mót kamláncaj lèsw

They are already discouraged.

khwáam penhūaḡ

worry, concern

khácàw mót khwáam penhūaḡ  
lèsw

They are already free of  
concern

thòot

punishment, penalty

khácàw mót thòot lèsw

They have already paid their  
debt to society.

wéeláa

time

khácàw mót wéeláa lèsw

Their time is up already.

sǎnnjáa

contract, agreement

khácàw mót sǎnnjáa lèsw

Their contract is already over.

wǎḡ

hope

khácàw mót wǎḡ lèsw

They have no more hope.

M-2

khácàw nján míi kamláncaj                      They are still of a mind  
 jũũ    (to... )

khwáam ótthón    patience

khácàw nján míi khwáam                              They still have patience.  
 ótthón jũũ

khámthăam    question

khácàw nján míi khámthăam                        They still have questions.  
 jũũ

panhăa    problem

khácàw nján míi panhăa jũũ                        They still have problems.

khwáam sǎmphán, kan                                  relations, one another

khácàw nján míi khwáam                              They still have relations  
 sǎmphán kan jũũ    with one another.

kĩatsán    dislike

khácàw nján kĩatsán kan                              They still dislike one another  
 jũũ

hăkphésɛŋ kan    love one another

khácàw nján hăkphésɛŋ kan                        They still love one another.  
 jũũ

C-1

(mót nén)

(to be broke)

A. càw mót nén lèsw bɔɔ?

Are you broke?

B. əə, khôj mót nén lèsw

Yes, I'm broke.

C-2

(míi kamláncaj)

(of a mind)

A. khácàw nján míi  
kamláncaj jūu bɔɔ?

Are they still of a mind  
(to... )?

B. əə, khácàw nján míi  
kamláncaj jūu

Yes, they are.

C-3

(mót khwáam penhūaŋ)

(free of concern)

A. càw mót khwáam penhūaŋ  
lèsw bɔɔ?

Are you already free of  
concern?

B. bɔɔ, khôj nján míi  
khwáam penhūaŋ jūu

No, I am still { concerned  
worried.

CYCLE 49

M-1

aasǎj, h́yan

live, dwell; house

láaw nján aasǎj jūu h́yan  
càw jūu boo?

Is he still living in your  
house?

pen thāhǎan

to be in the military service

láaw nján pen thāhǎan  
jūu boo?

Is he still in the service

wāanǎan

to be out of work

láaw nján wāanǎan jūu  
boo?

Is he still out of work?

kháa, wìak

to be attached to, work

láaw nján kháa wìak jūu  
boo?

Is he still tied up with  
his work?

pennîi

to be indebted (to)

láaw nján pennîi càw jūu  
boo?

Is he still indebted to you?

ôok paj, pátíbat nán

go out, carry out a mission or duty

láaw nján ôok paj pátíbat  
nán jūu boo?

Is he still going out on the  
mission?

thỳk khǎn

to be locked up

láaw nján thỳk khǎn  
jũũ bɔɔ?

Is he still locked up?

lǒntháan

to lose one's way

láaw nján lǒntháan jũũ  
bɔɔ?

Is he still lost?

M-2

ôok thāhǎan

leave the military service

láaw ôok thāhǎan tɛɛ don  
lèɛw

He left the service a long  
time ago.

míi wìak hēt

to have work to do

láaw míi wìak hēt tɛɛ  
don lèɛw

He got a job a long time ago.

wǎanwìak

to be free of work

láaw wǎanwìak tɛɛ don lèɛw

He has had spare time for  
a long time.

sàjnfi, mót

pay off one's debt, entirely

láaw sàjnfi mót tɛɛ don  
lèɛw

He paid off his debts a  
long time ago.

thỳk pɔɔj

to be released, to be let free

láaw thỳk pɔɔj tɛɛ don  
lèɛw

He was released a long time  
ago.

nĭi, câak

go away, escape; from

láaw nĭi câak khôj  
tĕĕ don lè̄ɿw

He left me a long time ago.

sáw

stop

láaw sáw ôok paj patíbat  
nĭan tĕĕ don lè̄ɿw

He stopped going out on the mission a long time ago.

C-1

(aasǎj jŭu hĭan càw)

(live in your house)

A. láaw nján aasǎj jŭu  
hĭan càw jŭu boo?

Is he still living in your house?

B. ɛɛ, láaw nján aasǎj jŭu  
hĭan khôj jŭu

Yes, he is still living in my house.

C-2

(ôok thāhĭan)

(leave the military service)

A. láaw ôok thāhĭan lè̄ɿw  
boo?

Has he already left the service?

B. ɛɛ, láaw ôok thāhĭan tĕĕ  
don lè̄ɿw

Yes, he left the service a long time ago.

C-3

(kháa wĭak)

(tied up with the work)

A. láaw nján kháa wĭak  
jŭu boo?

Is he still tied up with the work?

B. boo, láaw wǎan wĭak tĕĕ  
don lè̄ɿw

No, he was free (of work) a long time ago.

CYCLE 50

M-1

lɛɛn, dii

run; good, well

lɔt láaw nján lɛɛn dii  
jũũ bɔɔ?

Is his car still running well?

míi, sáphàap

have; condition, state

lɔt láaw nján míi sáphàap  
dii jũũ bɔɔ?

Is his car still in good  
condition?

kák, thýyk kák

detain; to be detained

lɔt láaw nján thýyk kák  
jũũ bɔɔ?

Is his car still being  
detained?

phée

break down

lɔt láaw nján phée jũũ  
bɔɔ?

Is his car still broken down?

jaan

rubber, tire

lɔt láaw nján bɔɔ míi  
jaan jũũ bɔɔ?

Is his car still without  
tires?

kháa, tom

to be stuck (to), mud

lɔt láaw nján kháa tom  
jũũ bɔɔ?

Is his car still stuck in  
the mud?

pɛɛn

fix, repair

lɔt láaw nján pɛɛn jũũ  
bɔɔ?

Is his car still being fixed?

sỳy, phūū sỳy

lōt láaw nján bᵒᵒ mīi  
phūū sỳy jūū bᵒᵒ?

buy, buyer

Is he still unable to find  
a buyer for his car?

M-2

taaj

lōt láaw taaj lèsw

die

His car is already broken down

kāw, lǎaj

lōt láaw kāw lǎaj lèsw

old; much, many, very

His car is already very old.

pseṅ, lèsw

lōt láaw pseṅ lèsw lèsw

repair, fix; complete, finish

His car has already been fixed

lèen, lèen dàj

lōt láaw lèen dàj lèsw

run, able to run

His car is already running.

khǎaj

lōt láaw khǎaj lèsw

sell

His car has already been sold.

lāk, khǎw

lōt láaw thỳyk khǎw lāk  
lèsw

steal, they

His car has already been  
stolen.

fáj, mâj

lōt láaw thỳyk fáj mâj

fire, catch fire

His car was already burned up.

dàj khýyn

lōt láaw dàj khýyn lèsw

gain back, get back

He's already gotten his car  
back.



C-1

(lɛɛn dii)

(running well)

A. lɔ̄t càw nján lɛɛn dii  
jūu bɔɔ?

Is your car still running well?

B. əə, lɔ̄t khôj nján lɛɛn  
dii jūu

Yes, my car is still running well.

C-2

(thÿyk khăw lāk

(be stolen)

A. lɔ̄t láaw thÿyk khăw lāk  
lèɛw, mɛɛn bɔɔ?

His car has already been stolen, isn't that right?

B. əə, lɔ̄t láaw thÿyk khăw  
lāk lèɛw

That's right, his car has already been stolen.

C-3

(lɛɛn dii)

(running well)

A. lɔ̄t láaw nján lɛɛn dii  
jūu bɔɔ?

Is his car still running well?

B. bɔɔ, lɔ̄t láaw phée lèɛw

No, his car is broken down.

---

"ຍັງບໍ່ໄປ" "ຍັງມີເງິນຢູ່" "ຍັງເຫລືອຢູ່" "ສິບໂມງຍັງຫາມາດີ" ຫາມາຈົງພາມັກຮຽນຂຍາຍການໃຊ້  
ຄຳວ່າ "ຍັງ" ອອກໃຫກວາງເບິ່ງດູ! ພອມກັນນັ້ນກໍຊ້ໃຫມັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈເຖິງແຕ່ລະສະພາບການ.

---

NOTES

(For Cycles 48, 49, 50)

- 1) When mót is used with abstract Nouns like kamláncaj 'will, spirit', it refers to an absence or lack of something. mót kamláncaj 'to be discouraged', mót wǎn 'to have no hope' mót thoot 'to be no longer under punishment'.
- 2) khwáam is a nominalizer, i.e. when it is placed before VP, the VP is changed into NP:

|               |   |                   |   |                      |
|---------------|---|-------------------|---|----------------------|
| <u>khwáam</u> | + | VP                | = | NP                   |
| <u>khwáam</u> |   | <u>pen hūan</u>   |   | <u>khwáampenhūan</u> |
| ....          |   | 'to be concerned' |   | 'worry, concern'     |

The nouns formed in this manner are all Abstract Nouns.

- 3) míi kamláncaj jūu means 'to still have one's mind on (doing something) or 'not to have given up the idea of (doing something)'. láaw nján míi kamláncaj pen saaw nāa jūu 'He hasn't given up the idea of being a farmer yet.'
- 4) kan after VP indicates 'mutuality' or 'reciprocity' in an action; it functions somewhat like a reflexive pronoun (myself, himself, etc.) in English:

khácàw nján kǎtsán kan jūu 'They still dislike each other

- 5) When thâyk occurs before certain VP, it functions somewhat like be in the Passive in English:

láaw nján thâyk khǎn jūu 'He is still locked up.'

lōt láaw thâyk khǎw lāk lèsw 'His car has already been stolen.'

thâyk only occurs before verbs having a bad meaning, such as khǎn 'to lock up', fáj māj 'to burn up', etc. Most verbs such as khǎaj, etc. may occur with either 'active' or 'passive' meaning, thus khǎaj 'to sell' or 'to be sold', etc.

- 6) tĕĕ don lĕsw (lit. 'since a long time already') 'a long time ago' is used to indicate that a situation has been in effect for some time.
- lĕaw ôok thĕhĕan tĕĕ don lĕsw            'He left the military service a long time ago'.
- 7) hĕt wiak means 'to do any kind of work'. mĭi wiak hĕt means 'to have work to do, to have a job.' wĕan wiak means 'to be free of work'. It has nothing to do with employment. khĕa wiak means 'to be tied up in, or very much involved in your job or work.' wĕan nĕan means 'to be out of a job, unemployed'.
- 8) nĭi means 'debt'. pen nĭi Person means 'to be indebted to a person'. sĕj nĭi means 'to pay off debts'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) lĕaw \_\_\_\_\_ khwĕam ôthôn.  
(He's out of patience.)
- (b) môt \_\_\_\_\_ lĕsw  
(The contract has already expired.)
- (c) nĭan lĭa \_\_\_\_\_ jūu 2 khô  
(two questions still remain.)
- (d) cĕw pen \_\_\_\_\_ bôô?  
(Are you concerned, worried?)
- (e) pĕthĕet ciin dĕen nĭan mĭi \_\_\_\_\_ kĕp pĕthĕet phĕmĕa jūu  
(Red China still has relations with Burma.)

---

Answers: 1(a)môt (b) sĕnnĭa (c) khĕmthĕam (d) hĕan (e) khwĕam sĕmphĕn

- (f) càw nján mí \_\_\_\_\_ pen náaj khúu jūu bōō?  
(Haven't you given up the idea of being a teacher yet?)
- (g) khacàw nján kfiatsán \_\_\_\_\_ jūu  
(They still dislike each other.)
- (h) càw mí \_\_\_\_\_ bōō?  
(Do you have work to do?)
- (i) lōt jūu hân \_\_\_\_\_ thâyk  
(Cars are sold cheap there.)
- (j) khôj nján lýa wéeláa jūu \_\_\_\_\_  
(I still have ten minutes left.)
- (k) hýan láaw \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw  
(His house has already burned down.)
- (l) láaw thâyk khăn \_\_\_\_\_  
(How long was he locked up?)
- (m) phýan càw thâyk pōōj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Your friend was released a long time ago.)
- (n) càw nján \_\_\_\_\_ láaw jūu cák kfiip  
(How many kip do you still owe him?)
- (o) láaw nján \_\_\_\_\_ jūu hýan khôj  
(He's still living at my house.)
- (p) khôj bōō pen nfi càw \_\_\_\_\_  
(I don't owe you a single kip!)

---

Answers: (f)kamláncaj (g)kan (h)wíak hēt (i)khǎaj (j)síp  
náathíi (k)thâyk fáj māj (l)don paandaj (m)tēē  
don lèsw (n)pen nfi (o)aasǎj(p)cák kfiip

- (q) khôj \_\_\_\_\_ môt tēē don lèsw  
(I paid off my debts a long time ago.)
- (r) lōt láaw pēē \_\_\_\_\_  
(His car has already been fixed.)
- (s) cāw \_\_\_\_\_ thāāj hūup \_\_\_\_\_ bōō?  
(Do you still know how to take pictures?)
- (t) hýan láaw \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw bōō?  
(Has his house been built yet?)
- (u) pátuu nján \_\_\_\_\_ jūū  
(The door is still open.)
- (v) khácāw nján \_\_\_\_\_ jūū  
(They still love each other.)
- (w) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ jūū sǎj?  
(Where did he get lost?)
- (x) láaw thýyk pōōj lèsw phō wāā (láaw) \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw  
(He has been released already because he has already paid his debt to society.)
- (y) khôj bōō dàj wàw nján phōwāā \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw  
(I didn't say anything because I was already out of ideas.)

---

Answers: (q)sàj nīi (r)lèsw lèsw (s)nján... pen jūū (t)púk  
lèsw (u)khǎj (v)hākphēē kan (w)lōn tháan (x)môt  
thòot (y)môt khwáamkhīt

CYCLE 51

M-1

deen

red

s̄ya khôj s̄i deen

My shirt is red.

khăaw

white

s̄ya khôj s̄i khăaw

My shirt is white.

lÿan

yellow

s̄ya khôj s̄i lÿan

My shirt is yellow.

fàa

sky

s̄ya khôj s̄i fàa

My shirt is blue.

dam

black

s̄ya khôj s̄i dam

My shirt is black.

khÿaw

green

s̄ya khôj s̄i khÿaw

My shirt is green.

M-2

nàmtaan

sugar

s̄ya càw s̄i njăn, s̄i  
nàmtaan mēn bō?

What color is your shirt,  
it's brown, isn't it?

tháw

grey

s̄ya càw s̄i njăn, s̄i  
tháw mēn bō?

What color is your shirt,  
it's grey, isn't it?

khǎaw ōn

light green

s̄yā càw s̄i njǎn, s̄i khǎaw  
ōn, mēēn boo?

What color is your shirt,  
it's light green, isn't it?

lǎn kēē

dark yellow

s̄yā càw s̄i njǎn, s̄i lǎn  
kēē, mēēn boo?

What color is your shirt,  
it's dark yellow, isn't it?

dam dēēn

blackish red

s̄yā càw s̄i njǎn, s̄i dam  
dēēn, mēēn boo?

What color is your shirt,  
it's blackish red, isn't it?

M-3

sōn

pants

sōn láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color are his pants?

kārāvát

neck tie

kārāvát láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color is his necktie?

kêep

shoes

kêep láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color are his shoes?

s̄in

Lao skirt

s̄in láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color is her Lao skirt?

thǒnthàw

socks

thǒnthàw láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color are his socks?

kápaw

brief-case

kápaw láaw s̄i njǎn?

What color is his brief-case?

C-1

(kárāvát)

( necktie )

A. kárāvát càw sǐi njǎŋ?

What color is your tie?

(dɛɛŋ)

(red)

B. kárāvát khôj sǐi dɛɛŋ.

My tie is red.

C-2

(kêɛp)

(shoes)

A. kêɛp càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi  
nàmtaan mɛɛn bɔɔ?

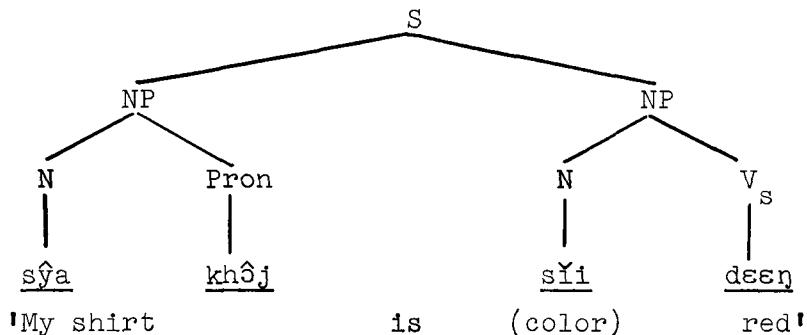
What color are your shoes?  
They are brown, aren't they?

B. mɛɛn lɛɛw, kêɛp khôj sǐi  
nàmtaan.

Yes, my shoes are brown.

NOTES

- 1) sǐi 'color' normally proceeds the word for colors, i.e., sǐi dɛɛŋ '(color) red', sǐi khǎaw '(color) green', etc.
- 2) Sentences with sǐi in the predicate are normally verbless.





3) Verbs of color usually occur as modifiers of sǐi and are questioned with njǎn 'What (kind)?'

Q: s̄ya càw sǐi njǎn?                    'What color's your shirt?'

A: sǐi khǎaw                                '(It's) green.'

4) Color verbs may be modified by the addition of kĕĕ 'dark (in shade) and ɔɔn 'light (in shade)', thus sǐi khǎaw ɔɔn means 'light green' and sǐi dĕɛŋ kĕĕ, 'dark red.' Mixtures are sometimes indicated by using two color verbs such as sǐi dam dĕɛŋ 'reddish black', or sǐi khǎaw lyǎn 'yellowish white'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
  - (a) h̄ya lám n̄i \_\_\_\_\_ (What color is this boat?)
  - (b) s̄ya ph̄yyn n̄an \_\_\_\_\_ (That shirt is red.)
  - (c) m̄aak kl̄an n̄ūaj nj̄āj \_\_\_\_\_, (That large orange is  
mĕĕn b̄oo? green, isn't it?)
  - (d) láaw míi c̄ook \_\_\_\_\_ b̄oo? (Does he have a blue glass?)
  - (e) k̄āj too n̄an s̄i \_\_\_\_\_ (That chicken's brown.)
  - (f) s̄ya f̄on láaw \_\_\_\_\_ (Her raincoat is light  
green.)
  - (g) \_\_\_\_\_ càw s̄i dam (Your shoes are black.)
  - (h) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw s̄i njǎn? (What color is her Lao skirt?)
  - (i) k̄ápaw kh̄ôj \_\_\_\_\_ (My briefcase is dark brown.)
  - (j) k̄arāvát càw s̄i \_\_\_\_\_ (Your tie is yellow.)

---

Answers: (a) sǐi njǎn (b) sǐi dĕɛŋ (c) sǐi khǎaw (d) sǐi f̄aa  
(e) n̄amtaan (f) sǐi khǎaw ɔɔn (g) kĕĕp (h) s̄in (i) sǐi  
n̄amtaan kĕĕ (j) lyǎn

CYCLE 52

M-1

njāan, wáj

walk; fast, quick

láaw njāan wáj phòot

He walks too fast.

sàa, hētwiak

slow, work

láaw hētwiak sàa phòot

He works too slow.

khōōj, wàw

gentle; speak, say

láaw wàw khōōj phòot

He speaks too softly.

dyn, hēsēn, sỳak

pull, strong, rope

láaw dyn sỳak hēsēn phòot

He pulls too hard on the rope.

dan, wàw

loud, speak

láaw wàw dan phòot

He speaks too loud.

don, jūu, hân

long time, stay, there

láaw jūu hân don phòot

He stayed there too long.

njàak, māk

difficult, like

láaw māk njàak phòot

He likes to make things harder than they are.

lǎaj, kin

much, many; eat

láaw kin lǎaj phòot

He eats too much.

M-2

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| láaw njāāŋ wáj paandaj?                | How fast does she walk?              |
| <u>nāam</u> , <u>fòon</u>              | pretty, beautiful, dance             |
| láaw fòon nāam paandaj?                | How well does she dance?             |
| <u>hían</u> , <u>kēŋ</u>               | learn, study; good, smart, clever    |
| láaw hían kēŋ paandaj?                 | How is he doing in his studies?      |
| <u>hòon</u> <u>phéen</u> , <u>mūan</u> | sings songs; melodious               |
| láaw hòon phéen mūan paandaj?          | How well does she sing?              |
| <u>dàj</u> <u>pháasǎa</u> , <u>dii</u> | able to speak a language; well, good |
| láaw dàj pháasǎa láaw dii paandaj?     | How well can he speak Lao?           |
| <u>njōk</u> , <u>nàmnák</u>            | lift, weight                         |
| láaw njōk nàmnák dàj lǎaj paandaj?     | How much weight can he lift?         |

M-3

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <u>njāāŋ</u> , <u>wáj</u>              | walk, fast                  |
| láaw njāāŋ bǔw wáj paandaj             | He doesn't walk very fast.  |
| <u>sūun</u> , <u>khÿn</u> , <u>mán</u> | high, ascend, it            |
| mán khÿn bǔw sūun paandaj              | It doesn't go up very high. |
| láaw hían bǔw wáj paandaj              | He doesn't learn very fast. |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <u>hén</u> , lōt   | strong, powerful; car                    |
| lōt láaw lén bōō hén<br>paandaj                                | His car doesn't have much<br>power.      |
| <u>khīan</u> , nām   | write; pretty, beautiful                 |
| láaw khīan bōō nām paandaj                                     | His handwriting is not very<br>pretty.   |
| <u>hīan</u> , waj  | learn, fast                              |
| láaw hīan bōō wāj paandaj;                                     | He doesn't learn very fast.              |
| M-4  |  |
| <u>kháplōt</u> , wāj   | drive, fast                              |
| láaw bōō kháplōt wāj<br>paandaj                                | He didn't drive very fast.               |
| <u>ôok</u> <u>kamlán</u> , <u>kaaj</u> , <u>lāj</u> <u>lāj</u> | exercise, physical, often                |
| láaw bōō ôok kamlán kaaj<br>lāj lāj paandaj                    | He doesn't do much physical<br>exercise. |
| <u>aw</u> <u>hāj</u> , <u>lāj</u>                              | give, much                               |
| láaw bōō aw hāj lāj paandaj                                    | He didn't give very much.                |
| <u>aw</u> <u>paj</u> , <u>mót</u>                              | take; all, completely                    |
| láaw bōō aw pým paj móť  | He didn't take all the books.            |
| <u>kin</u> , <u>mót</u>  | eat, all entirely                        |
| láaw si bōō kin móť  | He's not going eat all of it.            |

M-5

njāāŋ wáj wáj dēē

Walk faster, please.

wàw khᵛᵛj khᵛᵛj dēē

Speak softly, please.

kháplᵛt sàa sàa dēē

Drive slowly, please.

āān daŋ daŋ dēē

Read loudly, please.

kin lǎaj lǎaj dēē

Eat a lot, please.

C-1

(wàw wáj)

A. càw wàw wáj phòot. wàw  
sàa sàa dēē.

You speak too fast. Speak  
slowly, please.

(wàw sàa sàa)

B. khᵛᵛthòot. khᵛᵛj si wàw  
sàa sàa.

I'm sorry. I'll speak  
slowly.

C-2

(fᵛᵛn ṅáam)

A. láaw fᵛᵛn ṅáam paandaj?

How well does she dance?

(fᵛᵛn bᵛᵛ ṅáam)

B. láaw fᵛᵛn bᵛᵛ ṅáam paandaj

She doesn't dance very well.

C-3

(kháplᵛt wáj)

A. láaw si kháplᵛt wáj bᵛᵛ?

Is he going to drive fast?

(kháplᵛt wáj)

B. bᵛᵛ, láaw si bᵛᵛ kháplᵛt  
wáj

No. He's not going to drive  
fast.

C-4

(khǎan nǎam)

A. láaw khǎan nǎam bɔɔ?

Is his handwriting pretty?

(khǎan bɔɔ nǎam)

láaw khǎan bɔɔ nǎam paandaj

His handwriting is not very pretty.

ຈົງສິ່ງເກດເບິ່ງຈຸດປະສົງຂອງແຕ່ລະພາກຂອງບົດຮຽນນີ້ ແລ້ວທົບທວນຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນຕໍ່ກົງເບິ່ງ  
 ດູ! ຈົງຂຍາຍການຝຶກຫັດໃນພາກ C ອອກອີກ ແລະແຕ່ງເຮອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນ! ອະທິບາຍຮູບພາບຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

- 1) phòot 'to be in excess' normally occurs after stative verbs: láaw nǎan wáj phòot 'He walks too fast'. The negative form of phòot is bɔɔ ... paandaj 'Not very'. The position of bɔɔ in the sentence is important: Compare láaw bɔɔ nǎan wáj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast' or 'He isn't walking very fast' (because he doesn't want to) with láaw nǎan bɔɔ (dàj) wáj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast' (because he is unable to walk faster).
- 2) The form paandaj is used after the stative verb in questions to find out the manner in which an activity is being carried out: láaw hòon phéen mǎan paandaj 'How well does she sing?'

APPLICATION

1) Write out a reasonable answer to the following questions:

(a) láaw wàw dan paandaj? láaw wàw \_\_\_\_\_

(b) mía càw njāāŋ wáj paandaj? láaw njāāŋ \_\_\_\_\_

(c) láaw jūū hân don paandaj? \_\_\_\_\_

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(d) láaw át pátuu \_\_\_\_\_

(He closed the door too quickly.)

(e) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ hían \_\_\_\_\_ dii paandaj

(He's not learning very fast (because he doesn't want to).)

(f) láaw hòŋ phéŋ \_\_\_\_\_ mūaj paandaj

(She doesn't sing very melodiously (because she has a very poor voice.)

(g) càw āān wáj \_\_\_\_\_

(You read very fast.)

(h) láaw wàw pháasǎa láaw \_\_\_\_\_

(He speaks Lao too slowly.)

---

Answers: (a) dan phòot (or) bᵃᵃ dan paandaj (b) wáj phòot (or) bᵃᵃ wáj paandaj (c) hók aathit (or) don phòot (or) bᵃᵃ don paandaj (d) wáj phòot (e) bᵃᵃ (f) bᵃᵃ (g) lǎaj (h) sàa phòot

CYCLE 53

M-1

āān wáj

read fast

láaw āān wáj bōō?

Does he read fast?

wàw cèēŋ

speak clearly

láaw wàw cèēŋ bōō?

Did he speak clearly?

athībaaj lā-īat

explain thoroughly

láaw athībaaj lā-īat bōō?

Did he explain it thoroughly?

hían dii

be a good student

láaw hían dii bōō?

Is he a good student?

hían kēŋ

to be a good learner

láaw hían kēŋ bōō?

Is he a good student?

njāāŋ njàak

have trouble walking

láaw njāāŋ njàak bōō?

Does he have trouble walking?

M-2

kēŋ

smart

kēŋ sǒmkhúan

Pretty smart.

cèēŋ

clear

cèēŋ sǒmkhúan

Pretty clear.

hàaj hēsŋ

serious

hàaj hēsŋ sǒmkhúan

Pretty serious.



|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| <u>máw</u>    | to be drunk       |
| máw sǒmkhúan  | Pretty drunk.     |
| <u>mūan</u>   | enjoyable         |
| mūan sǒmkhúan | Pretty enjoyable. |

C-1

|                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| A. láaw āan wáj boo? | Does he read fast? |
| B. wáj sǒmkhúan      | Pretty fast.       |

C-2

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| A. láaw āan wáj paandaj? | How fast does he read? |
| B. wáj sǒmkhúan          | Pretty fast.           |

C-3

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. láaw hían kēŋ sǒmkhúan boo? | Is he a pretty good student? |
| B. kēŋ sǒmkhúan jūū            | Pretty good (smart).         |

NOTES

- 1) sǒmkhúan 'suitably, properly' is used after stative verbs to indicate a degree which is neither too much in one direction nor the other.

láaw āan wáj sǒmkhúan 'He reads fairly fast.'

- 2) When njàak 'to be difficult' occurs after an action verb, it indicates that the action is taken with difficulty:

athibaaŋ njàak 'It's difficult to explain.'

APPLICATION

1) Answer the following questions with an indication that the action referred to is done fairly well:

- (a) láaw wàw pháasǎa láaw dii bɔɔ? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (b) láaw lónj khândaj wáj paandaj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (c) láaw lóɔj nàm kɛŋ paandaj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (d) kàncaj sɪɪ náathíi njàak paandaj? \_\_\_\_\_

Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide.

- (e) láaw lāw lýaŋ nàw \_\_\_\_\_ dii  
 (He told the story in detail.)  
 (f) láaw kin lâw bia lǎaj kɛsw. láaw \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He drank several bottles of beer. He's pretty drunk.)  
 (g) láaw kháp lɔt \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He drives pretty fast.)  
 (h) paj bɛŋ sɪnɛe \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Going to the movies is pretty good fun .)  
 (i) át pɔɔŋ-jlām nàw phùn \_\_\_\_\_ bɔɔ?  
 (Is it difficult to close that window over there?)  
 (j) láaw áthɪbaaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (His explanations are not very thorough.)

---

Answers: (a) dii sǔmkhúan (b) wáj sǔmkhúan (c) kɛŋ sǔmkhúan  
 (d) njàak sǔmkhúan (e) lā-íat (f) maw sǔmkhúan (g) wáj  
 sǔmkhúan (h) mūan sǔmkhúan (i) njàak (j) bɔɔ lā-íat  
 paandaj

- (k) tít-tᵛᵛ káp phūū nàṅ \_\_\_\_\_  
 (It's not very difficult to contact that person.)
- (l) pīan jaṅ njàak \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Changing a tire is fairly difficult.)
- (m) láaw phím nǎṅsǎy \_\_\_\_\_  
 (She types fairly well.)
- (n) aakaan khᵛᵛ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ sǎmkhúan  
 (He is rather seriously ill.)

---

Answers: (k)bᵛᵛ njàak paandaj (l)sǎmkhúan (m)kēṅ sǎmkhúan  
 (n)hàaj hᵛᵛ

CYCLE 54

M-1

kin

eat

jāā kin lǎaj!

Don't eat too much!

kháplōt wáj

drive fast

jāā kháplōt wáj lǎaj!

Don't drive too fast!

fōt

be noisy

jāā fōt lǎaj!

Don't be too noisy!

lùà

misbehave

jāā lùà lǎaj!

Behave yourself!

khíikhàan

be lazy

jāā khíikhàan lǎaj!

Don't be too lazy!

cōm

complain, grumble

jāā cōm lǎaj!

Don't complain too much!

M-2

tē'tòŋ

touch (with hands)

kárūnáa jāā tē'tòŋ

Please don't touch.

tan tháaŋ

block the way

kárūnáa jāā tan tháaŋ

Please don't block the way.

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <u>hēt sǎn daŋ</u>      | make noise                      |
| kárūnáa jāā hēt sǎn daŋ | Please don't make noise.        |
| <u>lōpkuan</u>          | disturb                         |
| kárūnáa jāā lōpkuan.    | Please don't disturb (anyone).  |
| <u>jīap, njāa</u>       | step on, grass                  |
| kárūnáa jāā jīap njāa   | Please don't step on the grass. |
| <u>sūup jaa</u>         | smoke                           |
| kárūnáa jāā sūup jaa    | Please don't smoke.             |
| M-3                     |                                 |
| <u>khâw</u>             | enter                           |
| hâam khâw               | Do not enter.                   |
| <u>sūup jaa</u>         | smoke                           |
| hâam sūup jaa           | Do not smoke.                   |
| <u>pêet</u>             | open                            |
| hâam pêet               | Do not open.                    |
| <u>sūaŋ</u>             | pass, race                      |
| hâam sūaŋ               | Do not pass.                    |
| <u>lūaŋlám</u>          | trespass                        |
| hâam lūaŋ làm           | Do not trespass.                |
| <u>thīm khīi njyā</u>   | dump trash                      |
| hâam thīm khīi njyā     | No dumping.                     |

dét dôokmàj

pick flowers

hâam dét dôokmàj

Do not pick flowers.

C-1

A. khôj bōō jāak hâj láaw  
kin lǎaj

I don't want him to eat  
too much.

càw bôok láaw hâj khôj  
dɛɛ

Would you please tell him  
for me.

B. jāā kin lǎaj

Don't eat too much.

C-2

A. khácàw bôok njǎn háw?

What did they tell us?

(tɛʔtòɔŋ)

(touch)

B. khácàw bôok háw wāā  
kárūnāa jāā tɛʔtòɔŋ

They told us. Please don't  
touch.

C-3

(pàaj)

(sign)

A. pàaj nàn bôok njǎn?

What does that sign say?

(sûup jaa)

(smoke)

B. hâam sûup jaa

No smoking.

---

ການຝຶກຫັດເພີມເຕີມສຳລັບບັນດາຄົນທີ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນ ໃຫ້ມີຄວາມຮູ້ພຽງພໍໃນການໃຊ້ສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງໜຶ່ງ ທີ່ມີໂຕຂະໜາດ  
ປະຕິບັດຕາມຄຳບອກຂອງນາຍຄູ. ການຝຶກຫັດຄວນຈະໃຫ້ເປັນໄປດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວຫັ້ມມະດາ.

---

NOTES

- 1) The request form in Lao is the Verb Phrase without NP (subject): paj kin khâw 'Go eat!' The request may be softened by putting kârūnaa (Lit. 'kindness') 'please' before NP, kârūnaa wàw sàa sàa 'Please speak slower' or by putting dēē after VP: njāan wāj wāj dēē 'Walk faster, please.'
- 2) The negative request form is: jāā 'don't' + VP: jāā kin lǎaj 'Don't eat too much.' This request form may also be softened by putting kârūnaa before it: kârūnaa jāā tan thāan 'Please don't block the way.'
- 3) In written Lao hām 'It is forbidden to' is normally used. One sometimes sees signs like this: hām sūup jāā 'No Smoking'. hām is rarely used in spoken Lao in this construction.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
 

|                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) _____ jāā sūup ja               | (Please don't smoke.)         |
| (b) (A sign) _____ lūanlām          | (No Trespassing.)             |
| (c) jāā _____ lǎaj                  | (Don't be too lazy.)          |
| (d) āan dan dan _____               | (Read loudly, please.)        |
| (e) _____ wāj wāj                   | (Walk fast.)                  |
| (f) _____ tōop<br>khámthām khōo nān | (Don't answer that question.) |

---

Answers: (a) kârūnaa (b) hām (c) khīikhāan (d) dēē (e) njāan  
(f) jāā

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (g) (Sign) _____ thāāj<br>hùup jūū nīi | (No picture taking<br>here.)            |
| (h) jāā khúakin _____                  | (Don't cook too much.)                  |
| (i) _____ thée lón jūū hân             | (Don't dump it out<br>there.)           |
| (j) wáan wàj phùn _____                | (Please put it over<br>there.)          |
| (k) (Sign): hām _____                  | (Don't enter.)                          |
| (l) _____ kīn aahǎan phét<br>lǎaj      | (Don't eat too much hot<br>spicy food.) |

---

Answers: (g)hām (h)lǎaj (i)jāā (j)dēē (k)khâw (l)jāā



CYCLE 55

M-1

sǎj

where

càw paj sǎj máa?

Where have you been (to)?

njǎn

what

càw paj hēt njǎn máa?

(You just come back) what  
did you do?

M-2

wāt

pagoda, temple

khôj paj wāt máa

I've been to the temple.

kinkhâw

to eat (meal)

khôj paj kin khâw máa

I've been to eat.

hǎa mǎo

see the doctor

khôj paj hǎa mǎo máa

I've been to see the doctor.

sák jaa

to get a shot

khôj paj sák jaa máa

I've come back from getting  
a shot.

sǎn káp khǎn

warehouse

khôj paj sǎn káp khǎn  
máa

I've been to the warehouse.

C-1

A. càw paj sǎj máa?

Where have you been?

(hóonhían)

B. khôj paj hóonhían máa

I've been to school.

C-2

A. càw paj hēt njǎn máa?

(You just come back) What did you do?

(kinkhâw)

B. khôj paj kinkhâw máa

I've been to eat.

NOTES

- 1) The construction paj ... máa is used to indicate that someone is returning from having been to some place or having done something:

khôj paj wāt máa

'I've just been to the temple.'

khôj paj kin khâw máa

'I've been out to eat.'

The type of question may reflect the difference referred to above:

càw paj sǎj máa?

'Where have you been?'

càw paj hēt njǎn máa?

'What have you been doing?'

(Lit. What do you come from doing?)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

- (a) khôj \_\_\_\_\_ kin khâw \_\_\_\_\_ (I've been to eat.)  
 (b) càw paj \_\_\_\_\_ máa? (What have you been doing?)  
 (c) khôj paj \_\_\_\_\_ máa (I've been to get a shot.)

2. Answer the following questions according to the actual situation:

- (d) càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?  
 (e) càw paj sǎj máa?  
 (f) càw bᵒᵒ paj hēt njǎŋ máa bᵒᵒ?  
 (g) càw bᵒᵒ paj sǎj máa bᵒᵒ?

3. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (h) láaw paj khǎj kácεε pátuu nàŋ máa  
 (i) phyan khôj paj tiisék jᵘᵘ páthèet wiat náam máa  
 (j) láaw paj khâw thᵑew sūamóoŋ khᵑŋ

---

Answers: 1(a)paj ... máa 1(b)hēt njǎŋ 1(c)sák jaa  
 2Your answers will depend on what you have been doing very recently. 3(a)He just come back from unlocking that door. 3(b)My friend has just come back from fighting in Vietnam. 3(c)He's been standing in a line for half an hour.

CYCLE 56

M-1

phùakcàw máa tɛɛ səj?

Where did you all come from?

pỳm, hũa

book (classifier)

pỳm hũa nỉ máa tɛɛ səj?

Where did this book come from?

lốt, khán

car (classifier)

lốt khán nỉ máa tɛɛ səj?

Where did this car come from?

hýabin, lám

airplane (classifier)

hýabin lám nỉ máa tɛɛ  
səj?

Where did this airplane  
come from?

pyyn, kábôok

gun (classifier)

pyyn kábôok nỉ máa tɛɛ  
səj?

Where did this gun come from?

cià, phɛɛn

paper, sheet (classifier)

cià phɛɛn nỉ máa tɛɛ  
səj?

Where did this paper come  
from?

hýa, lám

boat (classifier)

hýa lám nỉ máa tɛɛ səj?

Where did this boat come  
from?

M-2

tálâat .

market

phùak khôj máa tēē tálâat

We came from the market.

aw máa, hóonhían

bring, school

láaw aw pỳm hũa nìi máa  
tēē hóonhían

He brought this book from  
school.

pâaksán

Paksane

lõt khán nìi máa tēē  
pâaksán

This car came from Paksane.

lũan phābaan

Luang Phrabang

hýa lám nìi máa tēē lũan  
phābaan

This boat came from Luang  
Prabang.

aw... máa, hóonkaan

bring, office building

khôj aw của phēēn nìi máa  
tēē hóonkaan

I brought this piece of  
paper from the office.

tamluat

policeman

tamluat aw pỳyn kábôok  
nìi máa

The policeman brought this  
gun.

C-1

A. cày máa tēē sǎj?

Where are you coming from?

(hýan khôj)

(my house)

B. khôj máa tēē hýan khôj

I come from my house.

C-2

(hýabin lám nǐi) (this airplane)

A. hýabin lám nǐi máa tɛɛ sǎj? Where did this airplane come from?

(baaŋkɔɔk) (Bangkok)

B. máa tɛɛ baaŋkɔɔk It came from Bangkok.

C-3

(pým hǔa nǐi) (this book)

A. pým hǔa nǐi máa tɛɛ sǎj? Where did this book come from?

(hóoŋhían) (school)

B. khɔɔj aw máa tɛɛ hóoŋhían I brought it from school.

---

ຈົງສິມມຸດສະຖານະການຂັ້ນ ຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປັນຕົວສະແດງໂດຍການສົນທະນາຫລືຖາມເອົາລາຍລະອຽດ ຕ່າງໆຈາກກັນແລະກັນ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າຄົນສອງຄົນລົມກັນຢູ່ເດີນຍົນ, ຄົວຄົດໂດຍສານ ຫລືຢູ່ຕາມສະຖານທີ່ ອື່ນໆອີກ. ກ່ອນຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດໂດຍຂະເຈົ້າເອງ ຈົງໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່າຫາມໂດຍາຂະເຈົ້າຝຶກຫັດບົດຮຽນ ຈົນເຫັນວ່າດີສົມຄວນແລ້ວ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ອາດຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາເບິ່ງໆ.

---

NOTES

tɛɛ + Location is used to refer to the point of origin of something (i.e. the starting point of a trip, the place where something was made, etc.). It is similar in usage to câak. Neither câak nor tɛɛ refer to the birthplace of a person.

Q: hýabin lám nîi máa tɛɛ sǎj 'Where did the plane come from?'

A: máa tɛɛ baan̄kôok 'It came from Bangkok.'

APPLICATION

1. How would you find out where certain things originated, such as Japanese cars, German beer, etc.?
2. How would you find out where a certain vehicle had just come from, such as an airplane, bus, etc.?

---

Answers: to both 1 and 2, are: ... máa tɛɛ sǎj

CYCLE 57

M-1

aw paj, kāj, khǎaj

take, chicken, sell

láaw si aw kāj paj khǎaj

He is taking the chickens to sell.

sỳy paj, āan

buy and take, read

láaw si sỳy pỳm paj āan

He is buying the book to read.

thếε, hũa, bûat

shave, head, enter the priesthood

láaw si thếε hũa bûat

He is having his head shaved to enter the priesthood.

tēεntoo, bun

get dressed, festival

láaw si tēεntoo paj bun

He is dressing up to go to the festival.

càan, bḗn, lùuk

hire; look at, look after; offspring

láaw si càan khón máa  
bḗn lùuk

He is hiring someone to come and look after his children.

hòonkhḥo, sḥḥj

request; help, assist

láaw si hòonkhḥo hḥj  
khácàw máa sḥḥj

He is requesting them to come and help.

pót...ḥok, kḥep

remove, take off; shoe

láaw si pót kḥep ḥok wàj

He is removing his shoes and putting them away.

làn, mỳy

wash, hand

láaw si làn mỳy kin khâw

He is washing his hands in order to eat.



M-2

sỳy, nàmsǐi

buy, paint

láaw si sỳy nàmsǐi máa hēt  
njǎṅ?

What is he buying the paint  
for?

aw...máa

bring

láaw si aw khôj máa hēt  
njǎṅ?

What is he bringing me here  
for?

thếe hũa

shave one's head

láaw si thếe hũa hēt njǎṅ?

What is he having his head  
shaved for?

danfáj

build a fire

láaw si danfáj hēt njǎṅ?

What is he starting a fire for?

khỳn paj

go up

láaw si khỳn paj hēt njǎṅ?

What is he going up there  
for?

lón máa

come down

láaw si lón máa hēt njǎṅ?

What is he coming down here  
for?

côot lôt

park a car

láaw si côot lôt hēt njǎṅ?

What is he parking the car for?

nám { paj  
máa

follow

láaw si nám khácàw paj hēt  
njǎṅ?

What is he following them  
for?

C-1

(tɛɛŋtoɔ)

A. láaw si tɛɛŋtoɔ hēt njǎŋ?

(get dressed)

Why is he getting dressed?

(tɛɛŋtoɔ paj bun)

B. láaw si tɛɛŋtoɔ paj  
bun

(get dressed to go to the  
festival)

He is getting dressed to go  
to the festival.

C-2

A. càw si hēt njǎŋ?

(càaŋ khón)

B. khôj si càaŋ khón

(máa)

A. càw si càaŋ khón máa  
hēt njǎŋ?

What are you going to do?

(hire someone)

I'm going to hire someone.

(come)

What are you going hire  
someone for?

(bɛŋ)

B. khôj si càaŋ khón máa  
bɛŋ lùuk

(to look after the children)

I'm hiring someone to come  
to look after my children.

C-3

A. càw hēt njǎŋ?

(làaŋ mýy)

B. khôj làaŋ mýy

(āan nǎŋsǎy)

A. càw si làaŋ mýy paj  
āan nǎŋsǎy boɔ?

What are you doing?

(washing my hands)

I'm washing my hands.

(to read)

Are you washing your hands  
in order to read?

(kinkháw)

(to eat)

B. bᵛᵛ, khᵛj si làaᵇ mýy  
paj kinkhâw.

No, I'm washing my hands in  
order to eat.

ໃນບົດນີ້ທ່ານຄົງເຫັນແລ້ວວ່າ ເຮົາໃຈຊຸດຳກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດກັນ ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ໄປລາງມືກັບຂ້າ".  
ຈິງຖາມຄຳຖາມທີ່ກຣຽມຈະຕ້ອງຕອບດ້ວຍປໂຍກທີ່ກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດກັນເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

- 1) In English Verb Phrases of Purpose may be joined to other VP by to, as in:

|    |   |                 |   |    |   |              |
|----|---|-----------------|---|----|---|--------------|
| NP | + | VP              | + | to | - | VP (Purpose) |
| He |   | brought chicken |   | to |   | sell.        |

Compare this with Lao:

|      |   |                   |      |              |
|------|---|-------------------|------|--------------|
| NP   | + | VP                | +    | VP (Purpose) |
| láaw |   | <u>aw kāj máa</u> |      | <u>khǎaj</u> |
|      |   | brought chicken   | (to) | sell.'       |

- 2) bûat means 'to enter the Buddhist priesthood'. All young Lao men of the Buddhist religion are supposed to spend some period of time during their lives living as monks in a monastery. One's head is shaved and all worldly possessions are given away before entry.
- 3) a bun is a temple fair. Each temple has at least one bun a year as an occasion for reading certain Buddhist scriptures and also as a means of raising money to take care of temple needs. Many kinds of amusements (dances, songs, games, etc.) and many kinds of food are available.

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw sí jyym pým khôj \_\_\_\_\_  
(He will borrow my book to read.)
- (b) jūū hýan láaw bōō míi nàm. láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_ làan  
(There's no water in his house. He'll take his car out to wash it.)
- (c) láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_ sōŋ paj hâj phyan láaw.  
(He'll take pictures to send to his friend.)
- (d) láaw sí pót kêəp khūū māj \_\_\_\_\_  
(He'll take off his new shoes to put them away.)
- (e) láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_ pɛɛ nǎŋsǎy hâj láaw.  
(He'll bring you to translate the book for him.)
- (f) láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_ kúat bəŋ wíak khōŋ phùakháw.  
(He'll come down to check our work.)
- (g) láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_ khón doojsǎan.  
(He'll stop his bus to pick up passengers.)
- (h) láaw jâak pen khúubaa. láaw sí \_\_\_\_\_  
(He would like to be a monk priest. He'll shave his head in order to enter the priesthood.)
- (i) láaw bōok hâj khôj \_\_\_\_\_ khúakin.  
(He told me to build a fire to cook with.)
- (j) láaw sí khýn \_\_\_\_\_ jūū sàŋ thíi sōŋ.  
(He'll go up to sleep on the second floor.)

---

Answers: (a) paj āān (b) aw lōt láaw paj (c) thāāj hùup (d) bōok wǎj (e) aw càw máa (f) lōŋ máa (g) cōot lōt aw (h) thěe hǎa būat (i) danfáj (j) paj nōon

CYCLE 58

M-1

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <u>kàw móon</u> , <u>hâa móon khēŋ</u>            | 9:00, 5:30                                       |
| tēē kàw móon hăa hâa móon<br>khēŋ                 | From nine to five-thirty.                        |
| <u>wán can</u> , <u>wán súk</u>                   | Monday, Friday                                   |
| tēē wán can hăa wán súk                           | From Monday through Friday.                      |
| <u>sàw</u> , <u>khām</u>                          | morning, night                                   |
| tēē sàw hăa khām                                  | From morning to dark.                            |
| <u>mỳy nìi</u> , <u>mỳy ȳyn</u>                  | today, tomorrow                                  |
| tēē mỳy nìi hăa mỳy ȳyn                          | From today to tomorrow.                          |
| <u>mýaŋ</u> , <u>wíaŋcan</u> , <u>lǔaŋphābaaŋ</u> | city, Vientiane, Luang Phrabang                  |
| tēē mýaŋ wíaŋcan hăa mýaŋ<br>lǔaŋphābaaŋ          | From the city of Vientiane<br>to Luang Phrabang. |
| <u>hýan</u>                                       | house  |
| tēē hýan khôj hăa hýan càw                        | From my house to yours.                          |

M-2

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <u>sǎj</u>                               | where (question)                |
| tēē sǎj hăa sǎj?                         | From where to where?            |
| <u>mỳy</u> , <u>daj</u> , <u>mỳy daj</u> | day, which (question), what day |
| tēē mỳy daj hăa mỳy daj?                 | From what day to what day?      |

wéeláa, wéeláa daj

tɛɛ wéeláa daj hǎa wéeláa  
daj?

time, when (question)

From when to when?

móon, cák móon

tɛɛ cák móon hǎa cák móon?

clock, watch, o'clock; what time?

From what time to what time?

câak, thǎn

câak sǎj thǎn sǎj?

from; to reach, get to

From where to where?

M-3

kháplõt

láaw si kháplõt { câak  
wíañcan paj lǎan { tɛɛ  
phābaan

drive

He is going to drive from  
Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

khǐi, hýabin

láaw si khǐi hýabin { câak  
wíañcan paj lǎan { tɛɛ  
phābaan

ride, airplane

He is going to fly from  
Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

lõtdoosǎan

láaw si khǐi  
lõtdoosǎan { câak  
wíañcan paj { tɛɛ  
lǎan phābaan

inter-city bus

He is going to take an inter-  
city bus from Vientiane to  
Luang Phrabang.

dəentháan

make a trip

láaw si dəentháan { cáak  
wíançan paj lǔan { tɛɛ  
phābaan

He is going to make a trip from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

M-4

hòot, sâan, thánǎn

reach, get to; build, street

phēn cá? sâan thánǎn { cáak  
bàan nǐi paj { thǎn { tɛɛ  
                                    hǎa      bàan nàn  
                                    hòot

They will build a road from this village to that village.

sôomséem

mend, repair, restore

phēn si sôomséem  
thánǎn { cáak      bàan  
          { tɛɛ  
nǐi paj { thǎn  
          { hǎa      bàan nàn  
          { hòot

They will repair the road from this village to that one.

phúun

pile up, heap up

phēn cá? phúun thánǎn { cáak  
bàan nǐi paj { hòot  
                                    hǎa      bàan nàn  
                                    thǎn

They are going to raise the level of the road from this village to that one.

M-5

khôj si kháp lǔt cón { hòot  
lǔan phābaan { thǎn

I'll drive until I get to Luang Phrabang.

aanjū?, jūu nám

láaw jūu nám ph<sup>33</sup>m<sup>33</sup> láaw

con { thǎŋ  
hòot } aanjū? láaw

dàj sáaw-ét pīl

age, live with

He lived with his parents  
until he reached the age of 21.

thâa, mýa (bàan)

khôj si thâa láaw

con { hòot  
thǎŋ } wéeláa

mýa bàan

wait for; go home, return home

I'll wait for him until it's  
time to go home.

phānjāanjāam, sútthàaj

khôj si phānjāanjāam paj

con { thǎŋ  
hòot } mýy sútthàaj

try, attempt; last, final

I'll keep trying until the  
last day.

C-1

A. láaw kháp lōt tēē sǎj  
hǎa sǎj?

He drove from where to where?

B. láaw kháp lōt tēē hýan  
láaw hǎa hóonkaan láaw

He drove from his house to  
his office.

C-2

A. càw si jūu nīi tēē mýy  
daj hǎa mýy daj?

You will be here from what  
day to what day?

B. khôj si jūu nīi tēē mýy  
wáncaan hǎa mýy wán aathit

I will be here from Monday  
to Sunday.



C-3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. cằw si khápłōt câak<br>wíañcan paj thǎn sǎj?            | You are going to drive from<br>Vientiane to where?      |
| B. khōj si khápłōt câak wíañcan<br>paj thǎn lǎn phābaan    | I'm going to drive from<br>Vientiane to Luang Phrabang. |
| A. lèew cằw si hēt njǎn?                                   | Then what will you do?                                  |
| B. khōj si khǎi hýabin câak<br>lǎn phābaan paj mýan<br>sǎn | I'll fly from Luang Phrabang<br>to Muong Sing.          |

C-4

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. cằw si thāa láaw con thǎn<br>cák móon? | Until what time are you going<br>to wait for him? |
| B. khōj si thāa con thǎn<br>síp sǎw mǎon  | I'll wait for him until twelve<br>o'clock.        |

ຫລັງຈາກການຝຶກຫັດຈົນລົງນິດແລ້ວ ຫານລອງຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຮຽນພາສາລາວໄປຮອດ  
ເດືອນໃດ? ຫລືວ່າຂະເຈົ້າຈະຮຽນພາສາລາວແຕ່ເດືອນໃດໄປຫາເດືອນໃດ? ແລະນັ້ນງູ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນແຕ່  
ຈັກໂມງຫາຈັກໂມງ? ປະດິດເຮືອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນຕົ້ນອີກເບິ່ງດູ! ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານແຕ່ງເຮືອງຫຼືເປັນຫນ້າສົນໃຈ  
ຂຶ້ນ ມັນຈະຈອຍໃນການຮຽນຂອງນັກຮຽນໂດດຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ເຮືອງຫຼືທ່ານແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນກໍ່ຄວນພະຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມັນ  
ເຫມາະສົມກັບວຽກການອື່ນໆຂອງນັກຮຽນ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ ສຳລັບພວກທີ່ເປັນນັກການທູດ ຫຼື ທ່ານກໍ່ຄວນ  
ແຕ່ງເຮືອງຫຼືກຽວກັບວຽກບ້ານການເມືອງ; ຫລືຖ້າຫາກຂະເຈົ້າເປັນພັດທະນາກອນກໍ່ແຕ່ງໄປໃນດ້ານການ  
ປູກການຝັງແລະລົງສິດ ແລະດ້ານການສ້າງສາຕ່າງ, ດັ່ງນັ້ນຕັ້ງໄປ.

NOTES

In Lao there are several ways to refer to an extent of space or period of time that is bounded on both ends.

- 1) tɛɛ ... hǎa is used if 'static' space or duration of time is referred to:

tɛɛ mýaŋ wíañcaŋ hǎa mýaŋ                      'From Vientiane to Luang  
lǔaŋ phābaŋ    Prabang.'

tɛɛ kàw móoŋ hǎa hāa móoŋ                      'from 9:00 a.m. to  
khǎŋ    5:30 p.m.'

- 2) If emphasis is on motion between two points in space, câak / tɛɛ ... paj (hǎa) is used.

láaw sí kháplōt { câak wíañcaŋ paj (hǎa) lǔaŋ phābaŋ  
tɛɛ

'He will drive from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'

Frequently the means of transportation is indicated in constructions of this type (khīi hýa, etc.).

- 3) If emphasis is on reaching a certain limit or goal. thǎŋ 'to reach', hǎa 'to or towards', or hòot 'to arrive at' may be used:

phǎn cá? sāaŋ thánǎn { câak bàan nìi paj { thǎŋ  
tɛɛ    hǎa bàan nàn  
    hòot

'They will build a road from this village to that village'  
The reference is usually to a known goal or limit.

- 4) con ... { hòot is used to indicate that some activity  
thǎŋ will proceed only until a certain limit is reached. It  
may not be known when that limit will be reached.

khōj sí thāa láaw con { hòot wéeláa mýa bàan  
thǎŋ

'I will wait for her until it's time to go home. (but no longer)'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) khàcàw hían \_\_\_\_\_ kàw móon sàw \_\_\_\_\_ bāāj sīī móon  
(They study from 9:00 to 4:00 p.m.)
- (b) jūū mýaŋ améelíkaa khón sūan màak hēt kaan tēē \_\_\_\_\_  
hǎa \_\_\_\_\_?  
(In America most people work from what day to what day?)
- (c) \_\_\_\_\_ tēē wíañcan hǎa lǔaŋ phābaaŋ kin wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_  
(It takes one hour to fly from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.)
- (d) càw dàj hían pháasǎa láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bóthían daj \_\_\_\_\_  
bóthían daj?  
(You studied Lao from what lesson to what lesson?)
- (e) càw si kháplōt \_\_\_\_\_ wíañcan \_\_\_\_\_ pāaksée bōō,  
lǔy wāā càw si khīī hýa paj?  
(Are you going to drive a car or go by boat from  
Vientiane to Pakse?)
- (f) phùak khón cīin cá? sǎaŋ thánōn tēē mýaŋ khàcàw paj \_\_\_\_\_  
mýaŋ daj?  
(The Chinese are going to build a road from their city  
to what city?)

---

Answers: 1(a) tēē... hǎa (b) mýy daj... mýy daj (c) khīī  
hyabīn... nýŋ sūamóon (d) tēē... hǎa  
(e) {cāak ... paj (f) {hōōt  
tēē thǎŋ

- (g) \_\_\_\_\_ wíançan \_\_\_\_\_ mýan phóon hóon mfi hók  
síp killóomēt  
(It is 60 kilometers from Vientiane to Phonhong.)
- (h) khón améelikan baankhón jūu nám phǝmǝ khácàw \_\_\_\_\_  
aanjū? dàj sáaw-ét pii  
(Some Americans live with their parents up to age 21.)
- (i) khácàw si nān līn jūu nīi \_\_\_\_\_ wéeláa mýa bàn  
(They will sit here playing until it's time to go home.  
(and no longer).'
- (j) khácàw si \_\_\_\_\_ phāk jūu mýan nīi \_\_\_\_\_ sǝn  
aathit  
(They won't stay in this town as long as 2 weeks.)

---

Answers: (g) { tǝǝ ... paj hǎa (h) con { hòt thǝn (i) con { hòt thǝn  
(j) bǝǝ... thǝn

CYCLE 59

M-1

cép thòṅ stomach ache  
 láaw cép thòṅ He has a stomach ache.

pûat hũa a headache  
 láaw pûat hũa He has a headache.

pen khâj to have fever  
 láaw pen khâj He has a fever.

pen wát to have a cold  
 láaw pen wát He has a cold.

thôok thòṅ to have diarrhea  
 láaw thôok thòṅ He has diarrhea.

pen aj to have a cough  
 láaw pen aj He has a cough.

wín hũa to be dizzy  
 láaw wín hũa He is dizzy.

M-2

pen njǎṅ what's wrong  
 láaw pen njǎṅ? What's wrong with him?

bṵṵ sábaaj sick  
 láaw bṵṵ sábaaj bṵṵ? Is he sick?

kháj khÿn

getting better

láaw kháj (khÿn) dēē  
lèēw bōō?

Is he getting better?

aakaan

condition

aakaan khōōŋ láaw pen  
néēwdaj?

How is his condition?

bōō sábaaj lǎaj

very sick

láaw bōō sábaaj lǎaj bōō?

Is he very sick?

hǎaj, sáw

recover

láaw { hǎaj  
sáw } lèēw bōō?

Has he recovered?

M-3

bōō hàaj héēŋ paandaj!

Not very serious.

hàaj héēŋ lǎaj!

Very serious (critical).

dii khÿn dēē lèēw

A little better!

dii khÿn lǎaj lèēw!

Much better!

sūt sóom lón kwāākāw

Worse than before!

phóopaan kāw

Still the same.

C-1

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| A. càw pen njǎŋ? | What's wrong with you? |
| B. khôj cép thòŋ | I have a stomach ache. |

C-2

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A. láaw bɔɔ sábaaj bɔɔ?                       | Is he sick?                      |
| B. mɛɛn lèsw, láaw bɔɔ<br>sábaaj, láaw pen aj | Yes, he is sick; he has a cough. |

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສົມມຸດເອົາຂໍ້ດຽວນີ້ ຂະດັ້ງໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມເພື່ອນຄົນນຶ່ງທີ່ກຳລັງນອນຮັກສາຕົວຢູ່ໂຮງຫມໍ.  
ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຄົນນຶ່ງສົມມຸດເປັນຄົນເຈັບຊຶ່ງຈະເປັນຜູ້ຕອບຄຳຖາມກ່ຽວກັບອາການຂອງລາວ.

NOTES

- 1) cép means 'to hurt'. It is used to refer to the feeling one has right after an injury; hence it is usually temporary. pûat means 'to ache'. It normally refers to a more lasting sensation than cép. cép húa would refer to a bump on the head, whereas, pûat húa would refer to the 'headache' that might come from the bump. In some cases the above distinction doesn't exist and cép is one kind of painful sensation and pûat is another.
- 2) pen + name of disease may also be used to indicate what particular ailment one has, such as láaw pen wát 'He has a cold.' tít wát means 'to catch cold.'
- 3) wín 'to be dizzy' may be followed by húa 'head'. wín húa means 'to be dizzy (in the head)'. thóok means 'to pour out (as with liquids, etc.)'; when thóok occurs with thòŋ it means 'dysentery, diarrhea'.

- 4) Either of the following may be used interchangeably to inquire about the health of a person:

láaw pen njǎŋ? 'What's wrong with him?'

láaw bᵛᵛ sábaaj bᵛᵛ? 'Is he sick?'

aakaan khᵛᵛŋ láaw pen nᵛᵛwdaaj? 'How is his condition?'

To inquire whether a person's sickness is subsiding:

láaw kháj (khÿn) dᵛᵛ lᵛᵛw bᵛᵛ? 'Is he getting better?'

láaw hǎaj (sáw) lᵛᵛw bᵛᵛ? 'Has she recovered?'

- 5) khÿn 'up, go up' and lón 'down, go down' are both used after stative verbs to indicate a situation that is in process of change; khÿn indicates an 'upward' change (dii khÿn 'getting better'); whereas, lón indicates a 'downward' change (sūt sóom lón 'becoming worse, worsening'.) kwāā kāw (lit. 'than old') 'than before' may occur after lón or khÿn. phᵛᵛpaan kāw (lit. equal in extent to old) 'still the same' is used to refer to conditions that have not undergone change.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences according to the English:

(a) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ thᵛᵛŋ (He has a stomach ache.)

(b) khᵛᵛj \_\_\_\_\_ sábaaj \_\_\_\_\_ (I'm very sick.)

(c) \_\_\_\_\_ (The situation hasn't changed.)

(d) càw \_\_\_\_\_ (What's the matter with you?)

(e) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ aj \_\_\_\_\_ (Does he have a cough?)

(f) \_\_\_\_\_ khâjwát (He has flu.)

Answers: 1(a)cᵛᵛp (b)bᵛᵛ... lǎaj (c)phᵛᵛpaan kāw (d)pen njǎŋ  
(e)pen ... bᵛᵛ (f)láaw pen



- (g) láaw hǎaj lèsw bɔɔ? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Has he recovered yet? Not yet.)
- (h) khɔj púat hǎa lǎaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (My head hurts worse than before.)
- (i) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ thɔɔn  
 (He doesn't have a stomach ache.)
- (j) láaw máa hēt kaan bɔɔ dàj phɔwāá láaw cép \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He couldn't come to work because he had a bad stomach ache.)
- (k) wéeláa háw bɔɔ sábaaj háw khúan cǎ? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (When we aren't well, we should go to the doctor's.)
- (l) thāan mɔɔ bɔɔk wāá láaw \_\_\_\_\_, láaw âat cǎ? tɔɔn  
 paj nɔɔn jɔɔ hooɔmɔɔ  
 (The doctor said he was very sick. He may have to go to the hospital.)
- (m) háw bɔɔ khúan paj jɔɔ kàj khón thɔɔ \_\_\_\_\_ phɔwāá  
 háw âat cǎ? \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (We shouldn't go stay with people who have colds because we might catch cold.)
- (n) mỳ wáan nǐi láaw púat hǎa tɔɔ wāá láaw bɔɔ phākphɔɔn,  
 mỳ nǐi aakaan khɔɔn láaw \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (Yesterday he had a headache but he didn't rest. Today his condition has become much more serious.)

---

Answers: (g)nján (bɔɔ hǎaj) (h)kwāá kǎw (i)bɔɔ cép (j)thɔɔn  
 lǎaj (k)paj hǎa mɔɔ (l)bɔɔ sabaaj lǎaj (m)pen wát...  
 tít wát (n)hǎaj hésɔn khýn

CYCLE 60

M-1

máa kaan

come to work

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ  
máa kaan?

Why doesn't he come to work?

thǎam

question, ask

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ thǎam?

Why did he ask?

tɔɔp

answer

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ  
tɔɔp?

Why doesn't he answer?

phākphɔɔn

take a rest

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ  
phākphɔɔn?

Why doesn't he take a rest?

kin

eat

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ kin?

Why did he eat (it)?

dàj paj

get to go

pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ  
dàj paj?

Why didn't he get to go?

M-2

bɔɔ sábaaj

sick

phɔwāā láaw bɔɔ sábaaj

Because he is sick.

khâwcaj

understand

phɔwāā láaw bɔɔ khâwcaj

Because he doesn't understand.

hùu

phɔwāā láaw bɔɔ hùu

know

Because he didn't know.

míi wéeláa

phɔwāā láaw bɔɔ míi wéeláa

have time

Because he doesn't have time.

hǐw

phɔwāā láaw hǐw

to be hungry

Because he is hungry.

máa sàa

phɔwāā láaw máa sàa

came late

Because he came late.

M-3

sỳy, māj, míi

láaw sỳy lɔt māj phɔwāā  
láaw míi nɛn lǎaj

buy, new, have

He bought a new car because  
he has a lot of money.

khǎaj, kāw

láaw sỳy lɔt māj phɔwāā  
láaw dàj khǎaj lɔt kāw  
láaw

sell, old

He bought a new car because  
he has sold his old car.

aw, mía

láaw sỳy lɔt māj phɔwāā  
láaw si aw mía

pick, get, take; wife

He bought a new car because  
he is getting married.

tɛɛŋ nǎan

láaw sỳy lɔt māj phɔwāā  
láaw si tɛɛŋ nǎan

get married

He bought a new car because  
he is getting married

dəentháan

travel

láaw sỳy lōt māj phōwāā  
láaw si dəentháan

He bought a new car because  
he is going to make a trip.

C-1

A. pen njǎn láaw cỳn bōō  
máa kaan?

Why didn't he come to work?

B. phōwāā láaw bōō sábaaj

Because he is sick.

C-2

A. pen njǎn láaw cỳn sỳy  
lōt māj?

Why did he buy a new car?

B. láaw sỳy lōt māj phōwāā  
láaw si aw mía

He bought a new car because  
he is getting married.

C-3

A. láaw hēt njǎn?

What did he do?

B. láaw phākphōōn

He took a vacation.

A. pen njǎn láaw cỳn  
phākphōōn?

Why did he take a vacation?

B. láaw phākphōōn phōwāā  
láaw míi wéeláa

He took a vacation because  
he had the time.

---

ຂ້າງເທິງນີ້ແມ່ນບັນຫາສາມຊຸດຂຶ້ນ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສື່ຖາມແລະໂຕວາຕິກັນເບິ່ງຄູ່ວ່າ ເປັນຫຍັງ? ຫລື ດວຍເຫດໃດ? ເຫດການແນວໃດຈຶ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນ ຫລືເປັນໄປໃນຫນ້າຂອງຕາງໆ.

---

NOTES

- 1) The word order in the pen njǎŋ type of question is:

pen njǎŋ + NP + cŷŋ + VP

pen njǎŋ + láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ máa  
 (Why he then not come)

'Why didn't he come?'

- 2) pen njǎŋ is always in sentence initial position. hēt njǎŋ 'Why, for what purpose' always comes after the MV in the sentence. láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ juu hǎan tát phǔm?

- 3) The usual response to pen njǎŋ + Sentence is phɔwǎa + Sentence:

Q: pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ máa? 'Why didn't he come?'

A: phɔwǎa láaw bɔɔ sábaaj 'Because he was ill.'

cŷŋ never occurs in responses with phɔwǎa.

In highly stylized spoken or written language the question may be answered as follows:

Q: pen njǎŋ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ máa? 'Why didn't he come?'

A: láaw bɔɔ sábaaj láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ máa 'He was ill; he, therefore, didn't come.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) mỳy nǐi \_\_\_\_\_ láaw cŷŋ bɔɔ máa hoonhían  
 (Why didn't he come to school today?)

---

Answers: 1(a) pen njǎŋ

- (b) láaw bᵒᵒ tᵒᵒp khám thǎam khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ láaw bᵒᵒ hùu khám tᵒᵒp  
(He didn't answer their question because he didn't know the answer.)
- (c) láaw bᵒᵒ jâak míi mía láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ tᵒᵒᵏᵏáan  
(He doesn't want a wife, so he hasn't got married.)
- (d) láaw bᵒᵒ thâa khácàw phᵒwāā láaw \_\_\_\_\_, mᵒᵒn bᵒᵒ?  
(He didn't wait for them, because he didn't have much time, is that so?)
- (e) thâawāā láaw míi ᵏᵒn lǎaj \_\_\_\_\_ si sỳy lᵒt māj  
(If he had a lot of money, he'd buy a new car.)
- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ thǎam hǎa khácàw?  
(Why did he ask for them?)
- (g) lᵒt khán nàᵏ lᵒᵒn bᵒᵒ dīl paandaj láaw cỳᵏ \_\_\_\_\_  
(That car doesn't run very well, so he's selling it cheap.)
- (h) khácàw hᵒt wìak \_\_\_\_\_ khácàw cỳᵏ bᵒᵒ phākphᵒᵒn.  
(Their work is not yet finished, so they are not resting.)
- (i) láaw kinkhâw lᵒᵒw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ hǐw  
(He's already eaten, so he isn't hungry.)
- (j) \_\_\_\_\_ càw cỳᵏ bᵒᵒ bᵒᵒk láaw, càw bᵒᵒ jâak háj láaw hùu bᵒᵒ?  
(Why didn't you tell him? Didn't you want him to know?)

---

Answers: (b)phᵒwāā (c)cỳᵏ (d)bᵒᵒ míi wéeláa lǎaj (e)láaw cỳᵏ  
(f)pen ᵏjǎᵏ... cỳᵏ (g)khǎaj thỳy (h)ᵏjǎᵏ bᵒᵒ lᵒᵒw  
(i)láaw cỳᵏ (j)pen ᵏjǎᵏ

CYCLE 61

M-1

iiduuton

pity

khôj iiduuton láaw

I pity him.

hāk

love

khôj hāk láaw

I love her.

jàan

to be afraid

khôj jàan láaw

I am afraid of him.

hěn caj

to empathize

khôj hěn caj láaw

I empathize with him.

aaj

to feel bashful

khôj aaj láaw

I feel bashful (in front of) him.

sán

dislike, hate

khôj sán láaw

I hate him.

keencaj

to have consideration for

khôj keencaj láaw

I have consideration for him.

M-2

phūsǎaw

young unmarried girl

càw míi khúam hùsýk néεw  
daj ທັ້ ພູສ້າວ ພູນີ?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this young un-  
married girl?

náaj thāhāan

military officer

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ náaj thāhāan phūu  
nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this military  
officer?

khónsàj

servant

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ khónsàj phūu nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this servant?

nāk thòot

prisoner

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ nākthòot phūu nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this prisoner?

khón khɔ́otháan

beggar

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ khón  
khɔ́otháan phūu nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this beggar?

phɔ́ɔkhàa

merchant

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ phɔ́ɔkhàa phūu nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this merchant?

thāān mɔ́o

doctor

càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw  
daj tɔɔ thāān mɔ́o phūu nīi?

What kind of feelings do you  
have towards this doctor?

C-1

A. càw bɔ́ɔ hěn caj láaw bɔ́ɔ?

Don't you empathize with him?

B. khɔ́j hěn caj láaw

I empathize with him.



C-2

- A. càw mǐi khúam hùusýk                      What kind of feelings do you  
néewdaj tɔɔ phɔɔkhàa                      have towards this merchant?  
phuu nǐi?
- B. khôj mǐi khúam hùusýk                      I have a feeling of empathy  
hěncaj láaw                                      with him.

---

ໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນເລົ່າເຮືອງຂອງບຸກຄົນຕ່າງໆທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກດີ ແລະໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຍອກເຖິງຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ  
 ຂອງຫົນຕ່າງບຸກຄົນເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍເຫດຜົນວ່າເປັນຫຍັງຈຶ່ງເປັນດັ່ງນັ້ນ.

---

NOTES

1) Verbs of Emotion may be:

(a) Transitive Verb:

khôj hāk láaw                                      'I love her.'  
càw sǎn khôj bɔɔ?                                'Do you hate me?'

(b) Stative Verbs:

láaw aaɰ càw                                      (She is shy of you.) 'Your presence  
 causes her to be shy.'

(c) Or compounds with -caj 'heart, soul, spirit':

khôj hěncaj láaw                                'I empathize with him'. (I associate  
 myself with his feelings.)

khôj keencaj láaw                                'I have consideration for his feelings.'

keencaj may be used in the negative jāā keencaj with the  
 meaning 'Don't be afraid of imposing on me (by making a  
 request, etc.)'

- 2) khúam is a noun formative (like -ness in English). Noun Compounds with khúam as the head of the compound are Abstract Nouns: khúam hùusýk 'feeling', khúamhāk 'love', khúamhēncaj 'empathy', khúamaaj 'bashfulness', khúam penhūāŋ 'concern', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences:

- (a) phùak khôj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw phōwāā láaw pen khón khii khaan  
(We don't pity him because he is a lazy person.)
- (b) khácàw si tēēŋŋaan kan dyan nāa phōwāā khácàw \_\_\_\_\_  
māa sōŋ pii lēsw  
(They'll get married next month since they have been in love for 2 years.)
- (c) láaw bōō míi \_\_\_\_\_ njǎŋ \_\_\_\_\_ khácàw  
(He doesn't have any feelings toward them.)
- (d) phyan láaw \_\_\_\_\_ láaw tēē khácàw sōōj njǎŋ láaw  
bōō dàj  
(His friends empathize with him but they can't help him any.)
- (e) láaw aw lōt khôj paj sàj dooj bōō \_\_\_\_\_  
(He took my car and used it without considering me.)

---

Answers: 1(a)bōō iiduuton (b)hāk kan (c)khúam hùusýk... tōō  
(d)hēn caj (e)keencaj khôj

- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ nāpthŷy náaj khᵒᵒᵒ khácàw  
(Some servants don't respect their bosses.)
- (g) náaj thīī dīī cá? tòᵒᵒ \_\_\_\_\_ khón khᵒᵒᵒ láaw  
(A boss that is good must love and empathize with his people.)
- (h) láaw bᵒᵒk wāā láaw \_\_\_\_\_ phᵒᵒ khàa thīī bᵒᵒ sátsŷy  
(He said he dislikes merchants that are not honest.)
- (i) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ wāā khᵒᵒj cá? hēt hāj láaw \_\_\_\_\_  
(He's afraid I will make him shy.)
- (j) phēn bᵒᵒk bᵒᵒ hāj láaw aaj \_\_\_\_\_ phēn pen thāān mᵒᵒ  
(He told her not to be shy because he is a doctor.)

2. Express how you feel about the following:

- (a) The President      (b) The Lao people      (c) dogs  
(d) your wife or sister      (e) your children  
(f) dishonest people      (g) your religion  
(h) meeting strangers

---

Answers: 1(f)khónsàj baan khón (g)hāk lē hěn caj (h)sāj  
(i)jāan... aaj (j)phᵒwāā 2Your answers will  
depend on how you feel about each of these.

CYCLE 62

M-1

khít

think

khôj khít wāā láaw bōō máa

I didn't think he was coming.

hùu

know

khôj hùu wāā láaw bōō máa

I knew she wasn't coming.

khâwcaj

understand

khôj khâwcaj wāā láaw bōō  
máa

I understood he didn't come.

dàj njín

hear

khôj dàj njín wāā láaw  
bōō máa

I heard he didn't come.

wàw

say, speak

khôj wàw wāā láaw bōō máa

I said he didn't come.

bôok

tell

khôj bôok wāā láaw bōō máa

I told you he didn't come.

M-2

sya

believe

càw sya wāā jāān daj?

What do you believe?

tôop

answer

càw tôop wāā jāān daj?

How did you answer?

thǎam

càw thǎam wāā jāān daj?

to question

What did you ask?

hùusýk

càw hùusýk wāā jāān daj?

feel

How do you feel about that?

sǒnsǎj

càw sǒnsǎj wāā jāān daj?

suspect

What did you suspect?

thúaj

càw thúaj wāā jāān daj?

predict, guess

What did you predict?

M-3

lỳan, mỳan

khǒj hùu lỳan mỳan láaw

about, story, matter; city, country

I know about Laos.

kaan mỳan

khǒj hùu lỳan kaan mỳan

politics

I know about politics.

sǒnkháam

khǒj hùu lỳan sǒnkháam

war

I know about war.

pûuk, khâw

khǒj hùu lỳan kaan pûuk  
khâw

grow, raise; rice

I know about growing rice.

lỳan, sát

khǒj hùu lỳan kaan lỳan  
sát

feed, nourish, raise; animal

I know about raising animals.

C-1

- A. càw khít wāā láaw sí máa bōō? Do you think he will come?
- B. khōj khít wāā láaw sí máa I think he will come.

C-2

- A. càw khāwcaj wāā jāāndaaj How did you understand it?
- B. khōj khāwcaj wāā láaw sí bōō máa I understood he was not coming

C-3

- A. càw hùu njǎŋ? What do you know?
- B. khōj hùu lỳaŋ mỳaŋ láaw I know about Laos.

---

ບິດນມຈຸດປະສົງຢາກໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ວ່າ" ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳນີ້ເວລາໃດ? ມັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈດີແລ້ວບໍ່?

---

NOTES

- 1) Verbs of saying, thinking, etc. frequently have sentences as complements; when they do, wāā occurs obligatorily as a connective:

khōj khít wāā láaw bōō máa 'I didn't think he was coming.

láaw hùu wāā càw bōō sábaaj 'He knew you were very ill.'

lǎaj



- (d) phùak nāk-hían thǎam khôj \_\_\_\_\_ jūu náj mýaŋ láaw  
(The students asked me about raising animals in Laos.)
- (e) khôj hùusýk wāā láaw \_\_\_\_\_ náj lýaŋ nīi paandaj  
(I don't feel he is very interested in this matter.)
- (f) khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ láaw pen thāhǎan wíatnáam nǎa.  
(They suspect he is a North Vietnamese soldier.)
- (g) láaw hùu lýaŋ kaan mýaŋ tēē wāā láaw bōō hùu \_\_\_\_\_  
(He knows politics but he doesn't know war.)
- (h) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw âat cá? bōō hùu lýaŋ kaan lýaŋ sát  
dīi paandaj  
(The villagers suspect that he may not know much about  
raising animals.)
- (i) khôj bōō \_\_\_\_\_ thǎam láaw phōwāā láaw bōō hùu  
lýaŋ nīi  
(I don't want to ask him because he doesn't know anything  
about this.)
- (j) (j) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bōō dàj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw bōō míi wéeláa  
(He was unable to answer that he didn't have time.)

---

Answers: (d) lýaŋ kaan lýaŋ sát (e) bōō sǒncaj (f) sǒnsǎj wāā  
(g) lýaŋ sǒnkháam (h) sáaw bāan sǒnsǎj wāā (i) jâak  
(j) tōop... wāā



CYCLE 63

M-1

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <u>njàak</u>                  | to be difficult, hard                           |
| khôj khít wāā njàak lǎaj      | I think it's very difficult.                    |
| <u>sádûak</u>                 | to be convenient                                |
| khôj khít wāā sádûak lǎaj     | I think it's very convenient.                   |
| <u>njûn, njûn njàak</u>       | to be confused; to be complicated and difficult |
| khôj khít wāā njûn njàak lǎaj | I think it's very complicated.                  |
| <u>kandaan</u>                | to be dangerous (as of environment)             |
| khôj khít wāā kandaan lǎaj    | I think it's very dangerous.                    |
| <u>pôot, pháj</u>             | to be free from, danger                         |
| khôj khít wāā pôot pháj lǎaj  | I think it's very safe.                         |
| <u>sòok, dii</u>              | luck; good, well                                |
| khôj khít wāā sòok dii lǎaj   | I think it's very good luck.                    |

M-2

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| njàak boo?  | Is it difficult?  |
| sádûak boo? | Is it convenient? |
| sá'âat boo? | Is it clean?      |
| pýan boo?   | Is it dirty?      |
| phéen boo?  | Is it expensive?  |
| thýyk boo?  | Is it cheap?      |

M-3

sɔɔj

mán njàak lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ  
hâj khácàw máa sɔɔj

help, assist

It's so difficult he let  
them come help.

phāk

mán sádûak lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ  
jâak máa phāk jūū n̄i

stay (temporary)

It's so convenient he wants  
to come stay here.

khǎɔ, njàaj, bɔɔn, ȳyn

mán njûŋ njàak lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳŋ khǎɔ njàaj paj bɔɔn  
ȳyn

ask, move, place, other

The situation is so mixed  
up he wants to move to  
another place.

sian

mán kandaan lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳŋ bɔɔ sian

to take a risk

The situation is so dangerous  
he doesn't risk it.

tòŋkaan, thāhǎan

mán p̄ɔtpháj lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳŋ bɔɔ tòŋkaan thāhǎan

need, soldier

The situation is so safe he  
doesn't need any soldiers.

s̄yy, f̄ik, s̄ɛɛp

mán s̄ɛɛp lǎaj láaw c̄ȳŋ  
s̄yy f̄ik.

buy; more, again; delicious

It was so delicious he  
bought more.

M-4

wlak

wlak n̄i njàak bɔɔ?

task, work

Is this job difficult?

hóonhéem, dàjhāp

hotel, receive

phāk jūū hóonhéem nīi  
dàjhāp khwáam sádúak bōō?

Does this hotel have all  
the conveniences?

panhāa

problem, trouble

panhāa nīi njūn njàak bōō?

Is this problem complex?

síiwit, thén, phúu

life, on, mountain

síiwit jūū thén phúu  
kandaan bōō?

Is life in the mountains  
dangerous?

khêet, pótṣṣj

area, liberate

khêet pótṣṣj nīi pṣot  
pháj bōō?

Is this liberated area safe?

aahāan

food

aahāan nīi sèsp bōō?

Is this food delicious?

M-5

wlak nīi njàak lǎaj láaw  
cṽn hāj khácàw máa sṣj

This work is so complicated  
and difficult he had them  
come help.

hóonhéem nīi hāj khwáam  
sádúak lǎaj láaw cṽn jâak  
máa phāk jūū nīi

This hotel affords so many  
conveniences he likes to  
stay here.

wlak nīi njūn jàak lǎaj  
láaw cṽn khṣo njàaj paj  
bṣn ṽyn

The work here is so complicated  
he asked to move to another  
place.

síiwit jūū thén phúu kandaan  
lǎaj láaw cṽn bṣ jâak sian

Life in the mountains is so  
dangerous he doesn't want  
to risk it.

khêet pótphāj nīi pōtphāj  
lǎaj láaw c̄ȳn bōō tōonkaan  
thāhāan

This liberated area is so  
safe he doesn't need any  
soldiers.

khánōm nīi sèep lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳn cá? s̄ȳ f̄ik

This cake is so delicious  
he'll buy some more.

C-1

A. sádūak bōō?

Is it convenient?

B. khōj khīt wāā sádūak lǎaj.

I think it's very convenient.

C-2

A. aahāan nīi sèep bōō?

Is this food delicious?

B. aahāan nīi sèep lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳn cá s̄ȳ f̄ik

This food is so delicious  
he'll buy some more.

C-3

A. w̄lak nīi njàak lǎaj láaw  
c̄ȳn hāj khácàw máa sōōj,  
mēēn bōō?

This work is so difficult  
that he had them come and  
help, didn't he?

B. mēēn lèew, w̄lak nīi njàak  
lǎaj láaw c̄ȳn hāj khácàw  
máa sōōj

That's right, this work is  
so difficult that he had  
them come and help.

C-4

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>A. pen njǎŋ láaw c̄yŋ hâj<br/>khácàw máa s̄w̄j?</p>              | <p>Why did he have them come<br/>to help?</p>                                |
| <p>B. láaw hâj khácàw máa s̄w̄j<br/>phōwāā w̄lak n̄i njàak lǎaj</p> | <p>He had them come to help<br/>because this work is very<br/>difficult.</p> |

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຈຄຳວິເສດ (ງ່າຍ ຍາກ ແຊບ...) ດ້ວຍການຊີ້ແຈງເຖິງສິ່ງຕ່າງໆ ຫລືກິຣຍາອາການຕ່າງໆ ພ້ອມທັງຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຂອງຂະເຈົ້າຫມົດສິ່ງຂອງຫລືກິຣຍາອາການຕ່າງໆເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ. ແລະເປັນຫຍັງ?

NOTES

- 1) The Subject is not expressed in Lao when the reference is to a general situation, except in certain situations:

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| Q: kandaan b̄w̄?                          | 'Is (it) dangerous?'         |
| A: <u>b̄w̄</u> <u>kandaan</u> <u>lǎaj</u> | '(It) isn't very dangerous.' |

In more complex sentences mán 'it' must be used:

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <u>mán</u> <u>njàak</u> <u>lǎaj</u> <u>láaw</u> <u>c̄yŋ</u> <u>hâj</u> | 'It's so difficult he let |
| <u>khácàw</u> <u>máa</u> <u>s̄w̄j</u>                                  | them come help.'          |

- 2) The So + Adjective + that + Sentence construction in English is expressed in Lao by:

|                  |   |             |   |              |   |                |
|------------------|---|-------------|---|--------------|---|----------------|
| V <sub>s</sub>   | + | <u>lǎaj</u> | + | NP (subject) | + | <u>c̄yŋ...</u> |
| <u>njàak</u>     |   | <u>lǎaj</u> |   | <u>lǎaw</u>  |   | <u>c̄yŋ</u>    |
| (It is difficult |   | very        |   | he           |   | then...)       |

'It's so difficult that he... '

The such + Adjective + NP + that + S construction is expressed in Lao:

|              |   |                   |   |             |   |              |   |          |
|--------------|---|-------------------|---|-------------|---|--------------|---|----------|
| NP           | + | V <sub>s</sub>    | + | lǎaj        | + | NP (Subject) | + | c̄ȳŋ... |
| <u>wl̄ak</u> |   | <u>n̄as̄õncaj</u> |   | <u>lǎaj</u> |   | <u>l̄aaw</u> |   | c̄ȳŋ    |
| (work        |   | interesting       |   | very        |   | he           |   | then...) |

'such interesting work that he...')

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) l̄aaw kh̄it w̄ā wl̄ak n̄i nj̄aak lǎaj l̄aaw c̄ȳŋ j̄aak h̄aj càw s̄õj l̄aaw
- (b) kh̄õj kh̄õpcaj lǎaj lǎaj th̄i càw h̄aj khw̄aam s̄ad̄uak
- (c) l̄aaw m̄i wl̄ak nj̄uŋ lǎaj l̄aaw c̄ȳŋ b̄õ h̄u w̄ā cá? h̄et nj̄ãŋ k̄õn
- (d) kh̄ac̄aw b̄õ j̄aak n̄ãŋ k̄aj l̄aaw ph̄õw̄ā kh̄ȳaŋ n̄uŋ l̄aaw b̄õ s̄á?âat
- (e) l̄aaw kh̄it w̄ā l̄aaw s̄òok dii lǎaj ph̄õw̄ā th̄ah̄ãan w̄latkon b̄õ h̄ẽn l̄aaw

---

Answers: 1(a)He thinks the work here is so hard that he would like to have you help him. (b)I am very appreciative that you have made it convenient. (c)He had such complicated work to do that he didn't know what to do first. (d)They don't want to sit near him because his clothes are dirty. (e)He thought he was very lucky because the Viet Cong didn't see him.

- (f) kaan hēt wìak jūu hóonkaan khôj bᵊᵊ sádûak dii paandaj  
 (g) thāhǎan bᵊᵊ hâj phùakháw paj phᵊwāā tháan sên nîi bᵊᵊ  
 pᵊᵊtpháj  
 (h) kaan dæntháan jūu náj khêet nîi kandaan lǎaj  
 (i) aahǎan phéεη phᵊwāā bàn mýan njûη njàak  
 (j) wéeláa kaan paj máa sádûak thūk sîη thūk jāāη kᵊᵊ thýyk

---

Answers: (f)The work at my office is not very convenient.  
 (g)The soldiers wouldn't let us go because this path is not safe. (h)Travelling in this area is very dangerous. (i)Food is expensive because the country is in a very precarious (difficult and dangerous) situation. (j)When going and coming are convenient everything is cheap.

CYCLE 64

M-1

s̄ya

believe, trust

càw s̄ya wāā láaw si s̄nā?  
sàn bōō?

You believe that he will win,  
is that so?

sárúp (aw)

summarize, conclude

càw sárúp aw wāā láaw si  
s̄nā? sàn bōō?

You conclude that he will win,  
is that so?

wǎŋ

hope

càw wǎŋ wāā láaw si s̄nā?  
sàn bōō?

You hope that he will win,  
is that so?

ká?

estimate, calculate, guess

càw ká? wāā láaw si s̄nā?  
sàn bōō?

You calculate that he will  
win, is that so?

fǎn

to dream

càw fǎn wāā láaw s̄nā?  
sàn bōō?

You dreamed that he won,  
is that so?

thámnaaj

foretell

càw thámnaaj wāā láaw si  
s̄nā? sàn bōō?

You foretell that he will  
win, is that so?

nēēcaj

to be sure, certain, confident

càw nēēcaj wāā láaw si  
s̄nā? sàn bōō?

You are sure that he will  
win, is that so?



M-2

sānā?

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya wāā  
láaw si s̄nā?

win

That's how I see it. I  
believe that he will win.

sěj, sěj̀dàj

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya wāā  
láaw si sěj̀dàj

take an exam, pass an exam

That's the way I see it. I  
believe that he will pass  
the exam.

dàj khỳn sà̀n, sà̀n

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya  
wāā láaw si dàj khỳn sà̀n

to be promoted, rank, grade,  
story, level

That's how I see it. I  
believe that he will be  
promoted.

dàjhāp, sămrēt

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya  
wāā láaw si dàjhāp khwáam  
sămrēt

receive, complete, to be successful

That's how I see it. I  
believe that he will be  
successful.

phāājphè̀ɛ

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya wāā  
láaw si dàjhāp khwáam  
phāājphè̀ɛ

to be defeated

That's the way I see it.  
I believe that he will be  
defeated.

sěj̀tók

wāā sà̀n lè̀ɛw, khôj s̄ya  
wāā láaw si sěj̀tók.

to fail an exam

That's how I see it. I  
believe that he will not  
pass the examination.

M-3

khǎan

write

khǎan cāṅ sǐi bōō?

You write it like this, huh?

tát

cut

tát cāṅ sǐi bōō?

You cut it like this, huh?

hōō

wrap, pack

hōō cāṅ sǐi bōō?

You pack it like this, huh?

pá? wàj

leave, abandon

pá? wàj cāṅ sǐi bōō?

You leave it like this, huh?

aw jōōṅ kan khÿn

to stack something up

aw jōōṅ kan khÿn cāṅ sǐi  
bōō?

You stack them up like this,  
huh?

kó?, kan

to hook, each other

aw kó? kan cāṅ sǐi bōō?

You hook them together like  
this, huh?

M-4

khīt

think

khōj khīt wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ  
lèew

I think so.

sāa

to believe

láaw sāa wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ lèew

He believes it's that way.

sánǎe

khácàw sánǎe wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ  
lèsw

to propose

That's what they proposed.

paakót

paakót wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ lèsw

appear

It appears to be so.

hěn

khôj hěn wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ lèsw

see

That's how I see it.

sǎṅkêet hěn

khôj sǎṅkêet hěn wāā (cāṅ)  
sàṅ lèsw

observe, notice

That's what I have noticed.

C-1

A. càw s̄ya wāā láaw si s̄ṅ  
dàj boo?

Do you believe he will pass  
the exam?

B. ɛə, khôj s̄ya wāā láaw  
si s̄ṅ dàj

Yes, I believe he will pass  
the exam.

C-2

A. càw thámnáaj wāā láaw si  
dàj kh̄yn sàṅ, sàṅ boo?

You predict that he will get  
promoted, is that so?

B. wāā sàṅ lèsw, khôj thámnáaj  
wāā láaw si dàj kh̄yn sàṅ  
jāāṅ nēē nōon

Yes, I predict that he will  
certainly be promoted.

C-3

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| A. càw sárúp aw wāā jāān daj?        | What have you concluded?                |
| B. khōj sárúp aw wāā láaw si sěṅ dàj | I concluded that he will pass the exam. |

C-4

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| A. càw sḃa wāā láaw bṵṵ máa sàṅ bṵṵ? | You believed that he wasn't coming, huh? |
| B. əə, khōj sḃa wāā (cāṅ) sàṅ lèṅw   | Yes. That's what I believed.             |

C-5

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| A. càw si khān cāṅ sī bṵṵ?   | You are going to write it like this, huh? |
| B. bṵṵ, khōj si khān cāṅ sàṅ | No. I'm going to write it like that.      |

---

ສະແດງໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນເບິ່ງຫຼືຄູ້ວ່າ ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງ "ຈິ່ງຊິນ" ແລະ "ຈິ່ງຊິ" ມີຢ່າງໃດ. ແລະຄຳວ່າ "ຊິນບໍ່" ແລະ "ວ່າຊິນແລ້ວ" ເດ? ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳເຫລົ່ານີ້ໃນເວລາໃດ ແລະໃນກໍລະນີໃດ?

---

NOTES

- 1) sàn 'like that' occurs with boo after Sentences:

càw s̄ya wāā láaw si s̄nā? s̄n b̄oo? 'You believe he will win,  
is that so?

sàn b̄oo? is similar in usage to mēēn b̄oo? except that mēēn b̄oo? is used primarily to check the truth value of statements; whereas, sàn b̄oo? is used to check an opinion or a guess, and hence is more informal. The usual answer to sàn b̄oo? questions is wāā s̄n l̄ēw which means 'That's how I see it' or 'That's what I had in mind'.

- 2) cān s̄n 'like that' and cān s̄i 'like this' are used in statements and questions relating to how something is done.

kh̄ian cān s̄i b̄oo? 'You write it like this, huh?

kh̄an s̄n means 'In that case'. It is heard often in conversation.

APPLICATION

- (a) láaw b̄oo h̄ian kh̄ôj j̄an wāā láaw si s̄ntók.  
 (b) kh̄ôj w̄n wāā s̄n l̄ēw  
 (c) láaw s̄ya wāā khwáam ph̄n̄j̄aanj̄aam j̄ū s̄j khwáam s̄m̄rēt  
j̄ū h̄an  
 (d) m̄y kh̄ýnn̄i càw f̄n̄ wāā j̄ān̄ daj?  
 (e) khón láaw s̄an l̄āj s̄ya khwáam f̄n̄

---

Answers: 1(a)He doesn't study. I'm afraid he'll fail.  
 (b)I hope so. (c)He believes that where there is striving (trying) there will be success.  
 (d)What did you dream last night? (e)Most Laos believe in dreams.

- (f) háw cá? sárúp aw bᵒᵒ dàj wāā wīak láaw cá? bᵒᵒ sāmṛēt
- (g) thāawāā fāāj nṽṽ sānā? íik fāāj nṽṽ koo cá? tòᵒᵒ phāājphèè
- (h) láaw sṽa wāā sájsānā? lē? khwāam phāājphèè pen khᵒᵒᵒ khūū  
kan
- (i) pii kaaj nīi láaw sḗntók láaw nēēcaj wāā pii nīi láaw  
si sḗndàj
- (j) wāā sàᵒ lèew khᵒᵒj sṽa wāā láaw si dàj khṽṽn sàᵒ

- 
- Answers: (f) We can not conclude that his work will fail.  
 (g) If one side wins, the other side must lose.  
 (h) He believes that victory and failure are pairs.  
 (i) Last year he failed; he is certain he will pass  
 this year. (j) Certainly, I believe he will be promoted.

CYCLE 65

M-1

|  |   |
|--|---|
| láaw si paj tállâat, lèew láaw<br>si paj hóonmǎo | He will go to the market, then<br>he will go to the hospital. |
| láaw si kinkhâw lèew láaw si<br>paj hēt kaan.    | He will eat, then he will go<br>to work.                      |
| láaw si āan nǎn sǎy lèew láaw<br>si paj nǎon.    | He will read, then he will<br>go to bed.                      |
| láaw si sáw mǎaj lèew láaw<br>si aâp nàm         | He will rest, then he will<br>take a shower.                  |

M- 2

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <u>kya</u> , <u>mǔu</u>                       | feed (animal), pig                                     |
| láaw si kya mǔu lèew láaw<br>si hēt njǎn?     | He will feed the pigs, then<br>what is he going to do? |
| <u>tát</u> , <u>njâa</u>                      | cut, grass   |
| láaw si tát njâa lèew láaw<br>si hēt njǎn?    | He will cut the grass, then<br>what is he going to do? |
| <u>sāk</u> <u>khǎanūn</u>                     | wash clothes   |
| láaw si sāk khǎanūn<br>lèew láaw si hēt njǎn? | He will wash clothes, then<br>what is he going to do?  |
| <u>jjym</u> , <u>nén</u>                      | borrow, money  |
| láaw si jjym nén lèew láaw<br>si hēt njǎn?    | He will borrow money, then<br>what is he going to do?  |

pīan, phâa puu tó?

change, table cloth

láaw si pīan phâa puu tó?  
lèsw láaw si hēt njǎn?

He will change the table cloth  
then what is he going to do?

C-1

A. càw si hēt njǎn dēē?

What are you going to do?

B. khōj si paj kinkhâw  
lèsw khōj si máa sáw  
mǎaj

I will go to eat, then I will  
come to rest.

C-2

A. càw si āān nǎnsǎy lèsw  
càw si hēt njǎn?

You will read, then what will  
you do?

B. āān nǎnsǎy lèsw khōj si  
paj kya mǎu

After reading I will go feed  
the pigs.

---

ຄຳວ່າ "ແລ້ວ" ໃນຫນ້າ ຈຶ່ງສອນແຕ່ຕາມຄວາມໝາຍຫມັ້ນມີຢູ່ເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ! ຢ່າຟ້າວອະທິບາຍຄວາມໝາຍ  
ຢ່າງອ່ອນ. ເຮົາຈະຕ້ອງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າເຈັດອລະຢ່າງ ຂະເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງຈະຮູ້ຈັກໃຈຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລະດ້ວຍຄວາມ  
ຫມັ້ນໃຈ. ຈຶ່ງຢູ່ ຄຳວ່າແລ້ວມີຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງອ່ອນອີກ. ແຕ່ເຮົາບໍ່ຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຫມົດໃນ  
ເວລາມາດອກ. ໃນບົດຕໍ່ໄປຍັງຈະມີອີກ.

---



NOTES

- 1) In the construction  $S^1 + \text{lèew} + S^2$  (láaw si paj tálâat lèew láaw si paj hóornǎo 'He's going to the market and then to the hospital.') lèew is a sentence connective and there is an indication that the activity referred to in the first sentence preceded that of the second sentence.
- 2) dèe in a question indicates that the questioner is expecting a multiple answer.

Q: láaw si hēt njǎn dèe?

What (things) is he going to do?'

A: láaw si aān nǎnsǎy lèew  
láaw si paj kin khâw

'He'll read a book and then go eat.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:
- (a) láaw kin khâw lèew láaw si máa hǎa càw boo?
- (b) taam thámmādaa mǎa càw kin khâw lèew càw māk hēt njǎn?
- (c) khácàw si paj bēn sínée lèew khácàw si paj sǎj dèe?
- (d) càw si kháp lōt paj sǎy lèew lǎaw sàaj mēen boo?
- (e) hían lèew cǎn hāk, bōō mēen hāk lèew cǎn hían

---

Answers: (a) Will he eat and then come to see you? (b) Usually when you have eaten, what do you like to do then? (c) They'll go to the movies and then where will they go? (d) You will drive straight ahead then you'll turn left, won't you? (e) Study then love; don't love and then study.

- (f) thâawāā càw m̄yaj koo phākphōōn sǎa, sáw m̄yaj lèsw c̄yŋ  
paj hēt wiak f̄ik
- (g) m̄ya háw lian̄ m̄u háw tōōŋ kya mán hāj f̄im lèsw háw cá?  
dàj láakháa dii
- (h) láaw si p̄ian phāa puu tó? lèsw láaw cá? paj khúakin
- (i) thâawāā càw j̄âak mí h̄yan càw âat cá? tōōŋ j̄yym n̄én câak  
thānāakhāan
- (j) láaw si tát nj̄âa lèsw láaw si paj âap nàm

---

Answers: (f)If you're tired, rest; when you're rested, go back to work. (g)When we raise pigs, we must feed them full, then we'll get a good price (for them). (h)She'll change the tablecloth then she'll go cook. (i)If you want to have a house, you may have to borrow money from the bank. (j)He'll cut the grass and then go take a bath.

CYCLE 66

M-1

kûat, bõn

check; look at

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj  
kûat bõn

I haven't got around to  
checking it yet.

sāk, khyan nūn

wash (cloth only), clothes

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj  
sāk khyan nūn

I haven't got around to  
washing clothes yet.

pēē

translate

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj pēē

I haven't got around to  
translating it yet.

khian, cótmǎaj

write, letter (epistle)

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj  
khian cótmǎaj

I haven't got around to  
writing the letter yet.

sõn

send

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj  
sõn cótmǎaj

I haven't got around to  
mailing the letter yet.

sýksǎa

study

khôj nján bõõ thán dàj  
sýksǎa bõn

I haven't got around to  
studying yet.

M-2

át, pátuu

close, door

càw át pátuu lèew lǎy nján?

Did you close the door yet?

khǎj

open

càw khǎj pátuu lèew lǎy nján?

Did you open the door yet?

làn, mýy

wash, clean; hand

càw làn mýy lèew lǎy nján?

Did you wash your hands yet?

swāaj, nâa

wash (face or body only)

càw swāaj nâa lèew lǎy  
nján?

Did you wash your face yet?

thũu, khêew

to rub, scrub

càw thũu khêew lèew lǎy  
nján?

Did you brush your teeth yet?

wǐi, phǒm

comb, hair (head only)

càw wǐi phǒm lèew lǎy nján?

Did you comb your hair yet?

tyan

warn

càw tyan khácàw lèew lǎy  
nján?

Did you warn them yet?

M-3

máa lèew

Yes, (... already came.)

sáw lèew

Yes, (... already stoped.)

mót lèew

Yes. (... already gone.  
'finished')

M-4

njǎn

Not yet.

M-5

lóm, káp

to chat, talk; with

càw thán dàj lóm káp láaw  
bɔɔ?

Did you get a chance to chat  
with him?

phòɔ

to meet, find

càw thán dàj phòɔ káp  
láaw bɔɔ?

Did you get a chance to meet  
her?

hě̄n, phǒn

see, result

càw thán dàj hě̄n phǒn  
njǎn bɔɔ?

Were you able to see any  
results (in the time  
available)?

hūam, phithíi

to join, participate, attend;  
ceremony

càw thán dàj hūam phithíi  
bɔɔ?

Did you get to the ceremony  
in time to participate?

fán, thèet

to hear a sermon

càw thán dàj fán thèet  
bɔɔ?

Did you get a chance to  
hear the sermon?

M-6

āan, tēē, pým

read; only, but; book

khôj thán dàj āan pým tēē  
sǒɔj hǔa

I was able to read only two  
books (in the time available).

wàw, nám, khám

Speak; with, along; word

khôj thán dàj wàw nám láaw  
tēē sǒŋ sǎam khám

I had a chance to speak  
only 2 or 3 words with him.

mòot fáj, mâj

to put out a fire, burn

khôj thán dàj mòot fáj kǒn  
mán si mâj hýan

I was able to put out the  
fire before the house  
burned down.

cáp mýy, káp } páj  
                  } máa

to shake, hand, return

khôj thán dàj cáp mýy káp  
phēn kǒn phēn si káp paj

I had a chance to shake  
hands with him before he  
returned.

C-1

A. càw át pátuu lèew lýy nján?

Did you close the door yet?

B. át lèew

Yes.

C-2

A. càw khían cótmǎaj lèew  
lýy nján?

Did you write the letter  
yet?

B. nján.

Not yet.

C-3

A. càw làan mýy lèew lýy  
nján?

Did you wash your hands  
yet?

B. làan lèew, khôj làan mýy  
khôj lèew

Yes, I've already washed  
my hands.

C-4

A. càw thán dàj phòw káp  
láaw bəw?

Did you get to meet him?

B. thán, khōj thán dàj phòw  
káp láaw kəwŋ láaw cá?  
káp paj

Yes, I got to meet him before  
he returned.

C-5

A. láaw kŷap bəw dàj wàw nám  
khácàw məen bəw?

He almost didn't get to  
talk to them, isn't that so?

B. məen lèew, láaw thán dàj  
wàw nám khácàw tēē səwŋ  
sǎam khám

That's right. He only got  
to say 2 or 3 words to them.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເບິ່ງວ່າຜູ້ໃດກະຫາກການສິ່ງໃດຜ່ານໄດ້ຍັງ. ຖ້າຄຳຕອບແມ່ນ "ບໍ່" ຫລື "ຍັງ" ກໍຈົ່ງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າ  
ໃຫ້ເຫດຜົນວ່າ ເປັນຫຍັງ? ຫລືຖ້າຕອບວ່າ "ແລ້ວ" ກໍຈົ່ງຖາມວ່າ ຕໍ່ໄປຂະເຈົ້າຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ?

NOTES

- 1) thán dàj means 'to have been able to do something in the available time'. It may occur in the negative with the meaning 'not to have got something done when it was supposed to have been done.'

khōj thán dàj mòot fáj kəwŋ  
mán si māj hyan

'I was able to put out the  
fire before the house  
burned down.'

khōj nján bəw thán dàj sǎn  
pým cǎw

'I haven't got your book  
read yet.'

khōj thán dàj sǎn pým tēē  
səwŋ hǎa

'I've only got two books read.'

- 2) lèsw and nján are 'aspect words', i.e., they indicate the state of an action, whether it is completed (lèsw) or whether it remains incomplete (nján). nján is a preverb and occurs before bɔɔ + VP:

khôj nján bɔɔ thán dàj pɛɛ 'I haven't got around to translating it yet.'

nján may occur alone in (a) responses to questions:

Q: càw wíi phóm lèsw lýy nján 'Have you combed your hair yet?'

A: nján 'Not yet.' Or (b) in parallel sentences like the question above.

- 3) When an affirmative sentence with lèsw and the negative form of the same sentence with nján are joined with lýy 'or', the negative sentence is reduced to nján and follows the affirmative sentence:

Affirmative: càw thǔu khêsw lèsw 'You have brushed your teeth.'

Negative: càw nján bɔɔ thǔu khêsw 'You haven't brushed your teeth yet.'

When combined with lýy: càw thǔu khêsw lèsw lýy nján?  
'Have you brushed your teeth yet or not?'

#### APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khôj \_\_\_\_\_ khĩan cótmǎaj hǎa phyan khôj  
(I haven't had a chance to write a letter to my friend yet.)

(b) láaw khĩan cótmǎaj \_\_\_\_\_ tɛɛ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ thán dàj sɔɔ  
(He's written a letter, but he hasn't had a chance to mail it yet.)

---

Answers: 1(a)nján bɔɔ thán dàj (b)lèsw... nján bɔɔ



- (c) càw dàjhāp khāāw câak khácàw \_\_\_\_\_?  
(Have you had any news from them yet or not?)
- (d) láaw nján bᵛᵛ thán \_\_\_\_\_ phᵛwāā láaw nján bᵛᵛ  
thán dàj \_\_\_\_\_  
(He hasn't been able to eat breakfast yet, because he's  
hasn't had a chance to wash his face yet.)
- (e) láaw bᵛᵛ míi wǐi láaw \_\_\_\_\_ nján bᵛᵛ thán dàj wǐi phᵛm  
(He hasn't got a comb so he hasn't yet been able to comb  
his hair.)
- (f) láaw pᵛᵛ nǎnsǎy hāj khácàw lèsw tᵛᵛ wāā khácàw \_\_\_\_\_  
aw nᵛn hāj làaw  
(He has already translated the book for them, but they  
haven't yet got around to paying him.)
- (g) càw bᵛᵛk láaw át pátuu \_\_\_\_\_?  
(Have you told him to close the door yet or not?)
- (h) thāwāā pátuu \_\_\_\_\_ pᵛᵛ wāā làaw nján bᵛᵛ thán máa  
(If the door isn't opened yet, that means he hasn't  
arrived yet.)
- (i) khᵛj nján bᵛᵛ \_\_\_\_\_ khᵛj phᵛwāā khᵛj nján bᵛᵛ  
míi wéeláa  
(I haven't yet been able to wash my clothes because I  
haven't had time yet.)
- (j) láaw nján bᵛᵛ thán dàj \_\_\_\_\_ khᵛᵛn khácàw  
(He hasn't yet been able to come inspect their work.)

---

Answers: (c)lèsw lǎy nján (d)kin khāw sàw... swāāj nāa (e)cᵛᵛ  
(f)nján bᵛᵛ thán dàj (g)lèsw lǎy nján (h)nján bᵛᵛ  
thán khǎj (i)thán dàj sāk khᵛan nᵛᵛ (j)māa kᵛat bᵛᵛ  
wǎk

CYCLE 67

M-1

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <u>pɛɛŋ</u> , <u>lōtdút</u>           | fix, repair; bulldozer                   |
| láaw pɛɛŋ lōtdút lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?  | Has he finished fixing the<br>bulldozer? |
| <u>hâj</u> <u>sămphàat</u>            | to give an interview                     |
| láaw hâj sămphàat lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ? | Has he finished giving the<br>interview? |
| <u>nāp</u> , <u>ŋén</u>               | to count, money                          |
| láaw nāp ŋén lèɛw lè[ɛw]<br>bɔɔ?      | Has he finished counting<br>money?       |
| <u>sŷypsŷan</u>                       | to investigate                           |
| láaw sŷypsŷan lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?     | Has he finished the<br>investigation?    |
| <u>sôɔpsŷan</u>                       | to interrogate                           |
| láaw sôɔpsŷan lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?     | Has he finished the<br>interrogation?    |
| <u>banthŷk</u> , <u>sŷan</u>          | to record; sound, voice                  |
| láaw banthŷk sŷan lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ? | Has he finished recording?               |
| <u>màan</u> , <u>pyyn</u>             | to dismantle, disassemble                |
| láaw màan pyyn lèɛw<br>lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?    | Has he finished taking the<br>gun apart? |

M-2

|                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| lèɛw lèɛw           | Yes, (he has) finished.             |
| bᵒᵒ, nján bᵒᵒ lèɛw  | No, (he has) not finished yet.      |
| nján, nján bᵒᵒ lèɛw | Not yet, (he has) not finished yet. |

M-3

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <u>átsɿaŋ</u>              | to record sound                             |
| láaw átsɿaŋ lèɛw lè[ɛw]    | He has finished recording.                  |
| <u>èe</u>                  | to decorate                                 |
| láaw èe hýan lèɛw lè[ɛw]   | He has finished decorating the house.       |
| <u>thǎaŋ, pāa</u>          | to clear (a forest), forest                 |
| láaw thǎaŋ pāa lèɛw lè[ɛw] | He has finished clearing the wood.          |
| <u>thǎj, náa</u>           | to plow, a plow, rice field                 |
| láaw thǎj náa lèɛw lè[ɛw]  | He has finished plowing the rice field.     |
| <u>kɿaw, khâw</u>          | to cut (with a sickle), rice                |
| láaw kɿaw khâw lèɛw lè[ɛw] | He has finished harvesting the rice.        |
| <u>fàat</u>                | to strike, slap, flail                      |
| láaw fàat khâw lèɛw lè[ɛw] | He has finished threshing the rice by hand. |
| <u>khàat</u>               | harrow                                      |
| láaw khàat náa lèɛw lè[ɛw] | He has finished harrowing the rice field.   |

M-4

tam

láaw tam khâw nján bᵛᵛ  
lèɛw

to pound (in a mortar)

He hasn't finished polishing  
the rice.

hũn, súk

láaw hũn khâw nján bᵛᵛ  
súk

cook by boiling; to be cooked,  
ripe

He hasn't finished cooking  
the rice.

nỹn

láaw nỹn khâw nján bᵛᵛ  
súk

cook by steaming

He hasn't finished cooking  
the (sticky) rice.

M-5

lěem, sᵛᵛ

lěem sᵛᵛ lèɛw lè[ɛw]  
láaw si hēt njǎn?

sharpen, sharp, crayon

What is he going to do after  
he finishes sharpening the  
pencils?

wǐi, nũn khỹan

wǐi phǒm lèɛw lè[ɛw]  
láaw si nũn khỹan bᵛᵛ?

comb, get dressed

Is he going to get dressed  
after he finishes combing  
his hair?

C-1

A. càw pɛɛn lᵛt lèɛw lè[ɛw]  
bᵛᵛ?

Have you finished fixing your  
car?

B. lèɛw lèɛw

Yes, I have.

C-2

A. càw màan pyyn càw lèɛw  
lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?

Have you finished taking  
your gun apart?

B. bɔɔ, nján bɔɔ lèɛw

No, I haven't finished yet.

C-3

A. càw āān cótmǎaj lèɛw  
lè[ɛw] bɔɔ?

Have you finished reading  
the letter?

B. nján, nján bɔɔ lèɛw

No, I haven't finished yet.

C-4

A. càw kûat pým lèɛw lè[ɛw]  
bɔɔ?

Have you finished checking  
the book?

B. ɛɛ, khôj kûat pým lèɛw  
lè[ɛw]

Yes, I have finished checking  
the book.

C-5

A. láaw nŷn khâw súk lèɛw  
bɔɔ?

Has he finished cooking the  
rice?

B. bɔɔ, láaw nŷn khâw nján  
bɔɔ súk

No, he hasn't finished  
cooking the rice.

C-6

A. khúakin lèɛw lè[ɛw] láaw  
sí hēt njǎn?

What is he going to do when  
he finishes cooking?

B. khúakin lèɛw lè[ɛw] láaw  
sí èen háw máa kin khâw

When he finishes cooking he  
will call us to the table.

NOTES

- 1) lèɛw as an Aspect particle indicating 'action completed at a particular time' and as a secondary verb meaning 'to complete some activity' may occur in one sentence, thus

láaw pɛɛŋ lɔt lèɛw lèɛw 'He has already finished making repairs on the car.'

In normal speech the second lèɛw occurs in reduced form as lè.

- 2) The response to ... lèɛw lè[ɛw] bɔɔ? questions may be:

Question: càw pɛɛŋ lɔt càw 'Have you finished fixing  
lèɛw lèɛw bɔɔ? your car yet?'

Affirmative

Response: (a) lèɛw lè[ɛw] 'Yes, I have.'

(b) ɛɛ, khɔ̃j pɛɛŋ 'Yes, I've finished making  
lɔt lèɛw lèɛw the repairs to my car  
already.'

Negative: (a) bɔɔ, njan bɔɔ 'No, I haven't finished  
lèɛw yet.'

(b) njan, njan bɔɔ 'No, I haven't finished  
lèɛw yet.'

- 3) VP + lèɛw lèɛw corresponds closely in meaning to English past participial constructions 'having...ed', etc. When VP + lèɛw lèɛw precedes NP + VP, there is an indication that the action referred to in the initial VP occurred before that in the second VP. Compare English and Lao:

English: having done his work, he went to bed (or) After he did...

Lao: hēt wɪak lèɛw lèɛw, láaw paj nɔ́n

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) tháaη \_\_\_\_\_ dúτ \_\_\_\_\_ phōn c̄yη bᵒᵒ hâj lōt tháaw  
 (The road is not yet completed so they don't let cars pass through.)
- (b) m̄ya nján \_\_\_\_\_ phùak thāhāan pháa kan màn pyyn ôok sēt lē sāj nàm mán  
 (When the firing is over, the soldiers as a group take their guns apart and oil them simultaneously.)
- (c) phᵒᵒ náa thǎj náa \_\_\_\_\_ láaw c̄yη \_\_\_\_\_ thán khàat  
 (The farmer hasn't finished plowing so he hasn't started harrowing yet.)
- (d) m̄ya kīaw khāw \_\_\_\_\_ phùak phᵒᵒ náa pháa kan fàat khāw  
 (When the harvesting is done, the farmers as a group knock the heads off the rice stalks.)
- (e) m̄ya wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_ mēē khàa nāp bēη nēn khᵒᵒη láaw  
 (When everything is sold out, the female vendor counts her money [to see how much she took in]).
- (f) thāawāā láaw hēt wàak nīi \_\_\_\_\_ láaw si bᵒᵒ m̄ya hyan  
 (If he hasn't finished doing this work, he will not go home.)

---

Answers: 1(a) nján ... bᵒᵒ lèew (b) lèew (c) nján bᵒᵒ lèew ...  
 nján bᵒᵒ (d) lèew lèew (e) khǎaj khᵒᵒη mót lèew (f) bᵒᵒ  
 lèew

- (g) ph̄ya cá? hēt náa phēn tōn thǎan pāā, \_\_\_\_\_ phēn  
c̄ȳn aw thǎj máa thǎj

(In order to farm one has to clear the forest; once the forest is cleared, one brings a plough in and ploughs [the land]).

- (h) lǎn câak s̄opsũan \_\_\_\_\_ taml̄uat koo p̄ōj khácàw  
káp bàn

(After the interrogation is completed, the police lets them go home.)

- (i) s̄opsũan \_\_\_\_\_, nján cá? tōn míi kaan banth̄yk  
fik

(All aspects of the interrogation haven't been completed yet, there still are more tape recordings that have to be made.)

- (j) m̄ya èe h̄yan \_\_\_\_\_ láaw si séen m̄ū máa kin lian

(When the decoration of the house has been finished, she will invite guests in to eat.)

---

Answers: (g) thǎan pāā lèew (h) lèew lèew (i) lèew nján b̄ōj lèew  
(j) lèew lèew



CYCLE 68

M-1

hētwiak

work

càw hētwiak hâj phǎj?

Who do you work for?

khïan pỳm

write the book for

càw khïan pỳm hâj phǎj?

Who do you write the book for?

kháp lōt

drive the car

càw kháp lōt hâj phǎj?

Who do you drive the car for?

púk hýan

build the house

càw púk hýan hâj phǎj?

Who do you build the house for?

tát phǒm

cut the hair

càw tát phǒm hâj phǎj?

Who did you cut the hair for?

fâw hýan

watch the house

càw fâw hýan hâj phǎj?

Who do you watch the house for?

phím nǎnsỷ

type the letter

càw phím nǎnsỷ hâj phǎj?

Who do you type the letter for?

M-2

paj aw

going to get

khôj si paj aw hâj láaw

I am going to get (it) for him.

sōn nǎnsỷ

send the letter

khôj si sōn nǎnsỷ hâj láaw

I will send the letter for him.

pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t

khôj si pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t hâj láaw

fix the car

I will fix the car for him.

lànŋ lɔ̄t

khôj si lànŋ lɔ̄t hâj láaw

wash the car

I will wash the car for him.

khúakin

khôj si khúakin hâj láaw

cook

I will cook for him.

mian pým

khôj si mian pým hâj láaw

arrange the books

I will arrange the books for him.

M-3

kúlíi

kúlíi si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?

the coolie

What is the coolie going to do for you?

khónsàj

khónsàj si hēt njǎŋ hâj  
càw?

the servant

What is the servant going to do for you?

sāāŋmàj

sāāŋmàj si hēt njǎŋ hâj  
càw?

the carpenter

What is the carpenter going to do for you?

léekhǎanūkaan

léekhǎanūkaan si hēt njǎŋ  
hâj càw?

the secretary

What is the secretary going to do for you?

náajsaān

the mechanic

náajsaān si hēt njǎn hâj  
càw?

What is the mechanic going  
to do for you?

sāāntátphǒm

the barber

sāāntátphǒm si hēt njǎn  
hâj càw?

What's the barber going to  
do for you?

C-1

A. càw si pɛɛn lōt hâj phǎj?

Who are you going to fix the  
car for?

B. khōj si pɛɛn hâj láaw

I will fix (the car) for him.

C-2

A. phǎj si aw paj hâj càw?

Who will take it for you?

B. khónsàj si aw paj hâj khōj

The servant will take it for  
me.

C-3

A. náajsaān si hēt njǎn hâj  
càw?

What's the mechanic going  
to do for you?

B. láaw si pɛɛnlōt hâj khōj

He will fix the car for me.

---

ບົດນີ້ມີຈຸດປະສົງທີ່ຈະສອນການໃຈຄຳວ່າ "ໃຫ້". ຢ່າລືມຂຍາຍການຝຶກຫັດໃນພາກ C ແລະຖ່າຍເອິ້ດ  
ໄດ້ກໍຈົງປະດິດເຮືອງຂນອີກເບິ່ງດູ!

---

NOTES

- 1) hâj in the construction VP + hâj + NP indicates that the activity referred to in VP is either done (a) for the benefit of, or (b) in place of the person(s) referred to in NP.

láaw kháp lōt hâj khōj

'He drives for me (in place of me).'

láaw tát phōm hâj khōj

'He cuts my hair (for my benefit).'

hâj has many other meanings but the most of them relate in some way to one or the other of the two categories stated above. hâj parallels English for in only a few instances.

- 2) hâj kan indicates that some activity is carried out for the mutual benefit of the parties participating in it. khácàw khúakin hâj kan 'They cook for each other'.

- 3) hâj + NP may contrast with eeṅ 'oneself' in use.

khōj si khúakin hâj láaw phōwāā

'I'll cook for him, because he can't cook for himself.'

láaw khúakin eeṅ bōṅ dàj

- 4) pháa kan + VP is used to indicate that all the members of a group engage in simultaneous and identical action.

phōṅ náa pháa kan fàat khâw

'All the farmers flail rice stalks at the same time.'

- 5) khǎw occurs in informal usage for khácàw 'they'. It is commonly used with children. It may also be used for unidentified persons. phēn is also used for 'they', but it is used only for persons of higher status. It also means 'he, she'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) láaw wàw wāā láaw jāak máa hētwiak \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He said he would like to come work for me.)
- (b) khón kháplōt khōj si paj kháplōt \_\_\_\_\_ sōŋ mỳy  
 (My chauffeur will go drive for him two days.)
- (c) phùak nāk-hían bōō jāak sīa nēn khāā tátphōm khácàw  
 cỳŋ tátphōm \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Students don't like to spend money on haircuts, so they cut each other's hair.)
- (d) léekhāanūkaan bōok wāā láaw si phím nǎnsỳy \_\_\_\_\_  
 mỳy nīi  
 (The secretary said she would finish typing the letter for me today.)
- (e) khōj si khúakin \_\_\_\_\_ phōwāā láaw khúakin \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ bōō pen  
 (I'll cook for her because she doesn't know how to cook herself.)
- (f) láaw pēŋ lōt bōō pen láaw cỳŋ si càŋ náajsāā \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He doesn't know how to fix a car himself, so he will hire a mechanic to come fix it for him.)

---

Answers: 1(a)hāj khōj (b)hāj láaw (c)hāj kan (d)hāj khōj  
 hāj lēsw (e)hāj láaw... eŋ (f)māa pēŋ hāj láaw

- (g) s̄āāṁmàj s̄i \_\_\_\_\_ khôj koo b̄ōō h̄uu  
 (I don't know what the carpenter is going to do for me  
 either.)
- (h) khôj s̄i aw khōōṁ n̄i s̄āj l̄ōt paj khăaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (I'll put these things in the car and go sell them for  
 her.)
- (i) dékn̄ōōj \_\_\_\_\_ làaṁ l̄ōt \_\_\_\_\_ phōwāā khăw j̄âak  
 h̄āj khôj pháa paj s̄ūan s̄át  
 (The children all pitch in and wash the car for me  
 because they want me to take them to the zoo.)
- (j) khôj b̄ōō d̄iicaṁ nj̄ōōn wāā s̄āāṁ tátph̄ōm tátph̄ōm \_\_\_\_\_  
 s̄ān ph̄ōot  
 (I'm not happy due to the fact that the barber cut my  
 hair too short.)

---

Answers: (g)hēt nj̄ăṁ h̄āj khôj (h)h̄āj láaw (i)pháa kan...  
 h̄āj khôj (j)h̄āj khôj

CYCLE 69

M-1

hētkaan

to work

khôj jāak hētkaan

I want to work.

míi nén lǎaj

to have a lot of money

khôj jāak míi nén lǎaj

I want to have a lot of money.

līn kíláa

to engage in sport

khôj jāak līn kíláa

I want to engage in sports.

tii pīnpōŋ

play table tennis

khôj jāak tii pīnpōŋ

I want to play table tennis.

lēen

to run

khôj jāak lēen

I want to run.

hěn lǎaj myán

to see many cities

khôj jāak hěn lǎaj myán

I want to see many cities.

fán phéen

to listen to the song

khôj jāak fán phéen

I want to listen to the song.

M-2

máa

to come

khôj jāak hāj láaw máa

I want him to come.

jūu nám khôj

to stay with me

khôj jāak hāj láaw jūu  
nám khôj

I want him to stay with me.

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <u>tēṅṅáan</u>                   | to get married                           |
| khôj jâak hâj láaw tēṅṅáan       | I want him to get married.               |
| <u>tàṅcaj hían</u>               | to concentrate on studying               |
| khôj jâak hâj láaw tàṅcaj hían   | I want him to concentrate on studying.   |
| <u>sáw sūup jaa</u>              | to stop smoking                          |
| khôj jâak hâj láaw sáw sūup jaa  | I want her to stop smoking.              |
| <u>lèem hētkaan</u>              | to begin working                         |
| khôj jâak hâj láaw lèem hētkaan  | I want him to begin working.             |
| <u>pen thāhǎan</u>               | to become soldier                        |
| khôj jâak hâj láaw pen thāhǎan   | I want him to become soldier             |
| M-3                              |  |
| <u>náajkhúu</u>                  |  |
| náajkhúu jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ?  | What does the teacher want you to do?    |
| <u>rāthābaan</u>                 | the government                           |
| rāthābaan jâak hâj càw hēt njǎṅ? | What does the government want you to do? |



khúubaa

the monk

khúubaa jâak hâj càw hēt  
njǎŋ?

What does the monk want  
you to do?

(aàj) cua

the monk novice

(aàj) cua jâak hâj càw hēt  
njǎŋ?

What does the monk novice  
wants you to do?

déknòoj

the children

déknòoj jâak hâj càw hēt  
njǎŋ?

What do the children want  
you to do?

lùuk càw

your children

lùuk càw jâak hâj càw hēt  
njǎŋ?

What do your children want  
you to do?

C-1

A. càw jâak hēt njǎŋ?

What do you want to do?

B. khôj jâak fán phéŋ

I want to hear the songs.

C-2

A. càw jâak hâj khôj hēt  
njǎŋ?

What do you want me to do?

B. khôj jâak hâj càw jūu  
nám láaw

I want you to stay with him.

C-3

A. náajkhúu jâak hâj càw  
hēt njǎŋ?

What does the teacher want  
you to do?

B. phēn jâak hâj khōj  
tàncaj hían

He wants me to concentrate  
on studying.

---

ຂະວັງຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ຢາກ" ຢ່າງພິດພາດ. ສ່ວນນາກຂະເຈົ້າມັກເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍຢາກລາວ  
ໄປຕລາດ" ແຕ່ນັກຈະເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວໄປຕລາດ". ທັງນັກຍອມພາສາຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

---

NOTES

- 1) jâak + VP means 'to want, would like (to do something)'.

khōj jâak míi nēn lǎaj

'I would like to have lots  
of money.'

When the Subject of the sentence and the person performing the  
action are not the same person, jâak hâj + VP is used.

khōj jâak hâj láaw pen náaj  
khúu

'I want her to be a teacher.'

- 2) phòom kan means 'simultaneously' or 'at the same time'.

khōj khīt wāā khácàw sī bōō  
māa hòot phòom kan

'I don't think they will  
arrive simultaneously.'

- 3) ton 'oneself, itself, themselves' is used in place of láaw or  
khácàw when the subject of the sentence and the person(s)  
referred to later are the same person:

phòomēē thūk khón koo jâak hâj  
lùuk khōj ton tàncaj hían  
nánsǎy

'All parents would like to  
have their children concen-  
trate on studying.' (phòomēē  
and ton refer to the same  
people.)

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) aanjū? láaw nján bᵒᵒ thḗḅ síp pḗst pii tḗḗ láaw koo \_\_\_\_\_  
 hēt kaan lḗḗw  
 (She isn't 18 yet, but she would like to get a job.)
- (b) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ tḗḗ wā́ súkháphàap láaw bᵒᵒ dii.  
 (He would like to engage in sports, but his health isn't good.)
- (c) thāawā́ phū́ nḃḅ \_\_\_\_\_ phū́ nḃḅ \_\_\_\_\_ khácàw  
 âat cá? bᵒᵒ paj hòot \_\_\_\_\_  
 (If one person wants to walk and another wants to run, they may not arrive at the same time.)
- (d) khḥj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw máa hḗn khwáam cáréén khḥḥḅn bàn myán  
 (I would like to have him come see the growth and progress in the country.)
- (e) phᵒᵒmḗḗ thūk khón tā́ḅḅ koo \_\_\_\_\_ lùuk khḥḥḅn ton  
 tàncaj hían nḗḅsḃy  
 (Each individual parent would like to have his children concentrate on their studies.)

---

Answers: 1(a)jâak (b)jâak lîn kíláa (c)jâak njā́ḅḅ... jâak  
 lḗḗn... phᵒᵒm kan (d)jâak hâj (e)jâak hâj

- (f) khôj wǎŋ dii tɔɔ láaw khôj cɤŋ \_\_\_\_\_ súp jaa  
 (I wish him well, so I would like to have him stop smoking.)
- (g) phɔɔmɛɛ baankhón \_\_\_\_\_ tɛɛŋŋáan phýa cá? dàj  
 mót khwáam pen hūaŋ  
 (Some parents want their daughters to get married so as to  
 get rid of worrying [about them]).
- (h) khôj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ tɔɔ paj njòon wāá láaw  
 hían njáŋ bɔɔ cóp  
 (I would like to have him continue staying with me due to  
 the fact that he hasn't finished his studies yet.)
- (i) lāthábaan \_\_\_\_\_ pásáasón míi khwáam jūu dii kin dii  
 (The Government would like for the people to have a good  
 standard of living.)
- (j) khúubaa \_\_\_\_\_ àaj cua phānjáanjàam hām hían aw khwáam  
 hùu (The monk told the novice to study hard to gain knowledge

---

Answers: (f)jâak hâj láaw sáw (g)jâak hâj lùuksáaw khǒon ton  
 (h)jâak hâj... jūu nám khôj (i)jâak hâj (j)bôok hâj

CYCLE 70

M-1

khúakin

cook

khôj hâj láaw khúakin hâj  
(khôj)

I { had  
let her cook for me.

phát kêep

shine (my) shoes

khôj hâj láaw phát kêep  
hâj (khôj)

I { had  
let him shine (my) shoes  
for me.

làn thûaj sáam

wash dishes

khôj hâj láaw làn thûaj  
sáam hâj (khôj)

I { had  
let him wash dishes for  
for me.

phím nǎnsỷ

type the letter

khôj hâj láaw phím nǎnsỷ  
hâj (khôj)

I { had  
let her type the letter  
for me.

bôn lùuk

watch the children

khôj hâj láaw ôn lùuk  
hâj (khôj)

I { had  
let her watch the  
children for me.

fâw hýan

watch the house

khôj hâj láaw fâw hýan  
hâj (khôj)

I { had  
let him watch the house  
for me.

M-2

kháp lốt

drive the car

càw sɪ hâj phǎj kháp lốt  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } drive  
for you?

lànɲ lốt

wash the car

càw sɪ hâj phǎj lànɲ lốt  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } wash the  
car for you?

kûat

check

càw sɪ hâj phǎj kûat  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } check it  
for you?

tèem

draw

càw sɪ hâj phǎj tèem  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } draw it  
for you?

cāāj

pay

càw sɪ hâj phǎj cāāj  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } pay it  
for you?

tàj fáj

turn on

càw sɪ hâj phǎj tàj fáj  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } turn on  
the light for you?

mòot fáj

turn off

càw sɪ hâj phǎj mòot fáj  
hâj (càw)?

Who will you { have  
let } turn off  
the light for you?

C-1

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. láaw sí hâj càw hēt njǎn<br>hâj (láaw)?   | What will he have you do<br>for him.    |
| B. láaw sí hâj khôj phát kēep<br>hâj (láaw ) | He will have me shine shoes<br>for him. |

C-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. khácàw sí hâj phǎj bēn<br>lùuk hâj khacàw? | Who will they have look after<br>their children for them? |
| B. khácàw sí hâj phyan bàn<br>khácàw bēn hâj  | Their neighbor.   |

C-3

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. càw wāā sí hâj láaw hēt<br>njǎn hâj càw?     | What were you going to have<br>him do for you?  |
| B. khôj wāā sí hâj láaw phím<br>nǎnsǎy hâj khôj | I was going to have him<br>type letters for me. |

ໃນບົດນີ້ ກ່າວເຖິງການໃຊ້ "ໃຫ້" ສອງຕໍ່. ຫານຈົງພານີກຣຽນລົມຄົນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ມີຫຍັງແດ່ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງບໍ່ຈື່ ຫລື ຍັງໃຊ້ຢ່າງຜິດພາດດຽວ. ຖ້າຫາກມີກິຈິງຊ່ອມຄົນໃຫມ່ອີກ.

NOTES

- 1) hâj frequently occurs twice in a sentence, once with the meaning 'on behalf of, for the benefit of' (benefactive meaning as in Cycle 68) and once with the meaning 'to have, let, cause (someone to do something)' (causative meaning as in Cycle 69):

khôj hâj láaw khúakin hâj (khôj)      'I had her cook for me.'

NP after hâj (benefactive) may be omitted if it has the same referent as NP (Subject), as in the example above and in this example:

phùak náaj khúu hâj láaw kháp      'The teachers let him drive  
lôt hâj (khácàw)      for them.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English and check your answers:

- (a) thâwā láaw khúakin pen khôj si hâj láaw khúakin hâj khôj  
 (b) càw si hâj láaw bōj lùuk hâj càw bōj?  
 (c) phǎj si hēt wlak hâj phǎj khôj koo nján bōj hùu thā  
 (d) wéeláa càw bōj jūu càw si hâj phǎj fâw hýan hâj càw  
 (e) mýy wáan nii láaw hâj déknòj làan lôt hâj láaw, càw  
hùu bōj láaw aw nén hâj khǎw thāwdaj?

- Answers: (a) If she can cook, I will have her cook for me.  
 (b) Are you going to have her babysit for you?  
 (c) I have no idea yet who will work for who.  
 (d) When you're not home, who will you have watch the house for you?  
 (e) Yesterday he had the children wash the car for him, do you know how much money he gave them?



- (f) khôj jâak hâj láaw máa kûat bõn cák lõt hâj khôj phõwāā  
diawnñi lõt khôj lēēn bõõ khõõj dii paandaj
- (g) láaw bõõ khéøj hâj khón yyn hēt wìak hâj láaw phõwāā láaw  
bõõ s̄ya caj khácàw
- (h) thāawāā càw jâak hâj láaw lēēn wìak hâj càw, càw tòn s̄y  
lõt hâj láaw
- (i) khôj si hâj láaw khǎaj khõõn ñi hâj khácàw phõwāā khácàw  
bõõ míi wéeláa paj khǎaj eej
- (j) kaan hâj khón yyn títtõõ káp càw khõõn thii din âat cá?  
bõõ dàj phõn dii thõõ kaan thii háw paj títtõõ eej

- 
- Answers: (f) I would like for him to come check the motor of  
my car for me because my car isn't running very  
well at present.
- (g) He has never had other people work for him before,  
because he doesn't trust them.
- (h) If you want her to run errands for you, you have  
to buy her a car.
- (i) I'll have him sell these things for them because  
they don't have time to go sell (them) themselves.
- (j) Having other people contact the owner of the land  
may not get as good results as if we went to  
contact (him) ourselves.

II. Translate the above English sentences back into Lao and  
check your answers. Since your translation may differ  
at some points from the original, you should check with  
the instructor about these differences.

CYCLE 71

M-1

tó?

table

tó? nǐ hēt duàj njǎn?

What is this table made of?

wātcánáanūkōm

dictionary

wātcánáanūkōm hǔa nǐ hēt  
duàj njǎn?

What is this dictionary made  
of?

tùu

cabinet

tùu nǐ hēt duàj njǎn?

What is this cabinet made of?

dōok fáj fàa

light bulb

dōok fáj fàa hēt duàj  
njǎn?

What is the light bulb  
made of?

sǎaj sōo

chain

sǎaj sōo nǐ hēt duàj njǎn?

What is this chain made of?

sábuu

soap

sábuu hēt duàj njǎn?

What is soap made of?

M-2

sǎajsōoj

chain(jewelry)

sǎajsōoj nǐ hēt duàj khám

This chain is made of gold.

sǎaj ɛɛw

belt

sǎaj ɛɛw nǐ hēt duàj nǎn

This belt is made of leather.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <u>pōṅjiam</u>                                    | window  |
| pōṅjiam nīi hēt dùaj kèsw                         | This window is made of glass.                         |
| <u>pháathâat</u>                                  | tray  |
| pháathâat nīi hēt dùaj ḡn                         | This tray is made of silver.                          |
| <u>mìttát, lék</u>                                | scissors, iron  |
| mìttát nīi hēt dùaj lék                           | These scissors are made of iron.                      |
| <u>sǎajfáj, thóṅḍeṅ</u>                           | wires, copper   |
| sǎajfáj nīi hēt dùaj thóṅḍeṅ                      | These wires are made of copper.                       |
| <u>cōk, plastík</u>                               | cups, plastic   |
| cōk nīi hēt dùaj plastík                          | These cups are made of plastic.                       |
| <u>sábuu, khÿan khéemíi</u>                       | soap, chemical substances                             |
| sábuu hēt dùaj khÿan khéemíi                      | Soap is made of chemical substances.                  |
| M-3   |   |
| <u>thún, cì, thúnçì</u>                           | flag, paper, paper flag                               |
| thún thII hēt dùaj cì<br>èən wāā thúnçì           | A flag which is made of paper is called a paper flag. |
| <u>s̀yak, níilón, s̀yakníilón</u>                 | rope, nylon, nylon rope                               |
| s̀yak thII hēt dùaj níilón<br>èən wāā s̀yakníilón | A rope which is made of nylon is called a nylon rope. |

kh̄ȳaṇṇūṇ, kh̄õnsát

clothes, fur

kh̄ȳaṇṇūṇ th̄iī hēt dùaj  
kh̄õnsát èṇ wāā  
kh̄ȳaṇṇūṇkh̄õnsát

Clothes which are made of  
fur are called fur clothes.

tiaṇ, màj, tiaṇmàj

bed, wood, wooden bed

tiaṇ th̄iī hēt dùaj màj  
èṇ wāā tiaṇmàj

A bed which is made of  
wood is called a wooden bed.

M-4

kêep, jaṇ

shoes, rubber

háv èṇ kêep th̄iī hēt dùaj  
jaṇ wāā jāāṇ daj?

What do we call shoes that  
are made of rubber?

môo, din

pot, earth

háv èṇ môo th̄iī hēt dùaj  
din wāā jāāṇ daj?

What do we call pots that  
are made of earth(enware)?

phâaphés, mǎj

scarves, silk

háv èṇ phâaphés th̄iī hēt  
dùaj mǎj wāā jāāṇ daj?

What do we call scarves that  
are made of silk?

C-1

A. t̄u n̄uaj n̄i hēt dùaj  
njǎṇ?

What is this table made of?

B. t̄u n̄uaj n̄i hēt dùaj  
lék

This table is made of metal  
(iron).

C-2

A. háw èen thúnj thII hēt  
dùaj cía wāā jāān daj?

What do we call flags that  
are made of paper?

B. háw èen thúnj thII hēt  
dùaj cía wāā thúnj cía

We call them paper flags.

C-3

A. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thII  
hēt dùaj màj, mēēn bōō?

Silk rope is rope that  
is made of wood, is that  
right?

B. bōō mēēn, sỳakmǎj mēēn  
sỳak thII hēt dùaj mǎj

No that's not right, silk  
rope is rope made of silk.

C-4

A. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thII  
hēt dùaj njǎn?

What's a silk rope made of

B. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thII  
hēt dùaj mǎj

Silk rope is rope made of  
silk.

---

ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ອັນໃດເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ? ແລະເຮົາເອີ້ນມັນວ່າຢ່າງໃດ? ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫຽບຄຸນ  
ພາບຂອງສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ເຊັ່ນ: ໂຕະໄມ້ດີກວ່າໂຕະເຫລັກບໍ່? ຫລືວ່າແນວໃດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ.

---

NOTES

- 1) hēt dùaj means 'to be made of'. The response to the question ... hēt dùaj nǎj 'What is...made of?' is some type of material, such as glass, paper, iron, etc.
- Q: tùu nǐi hēt dùaj nǎj? 'What is this cabinet made of?'
- A: tùu nǐi hēt dùaj mǎj 'This cabinet is made of wood.'
- 2) thīi 'that, which, who' functions as a Noun Phrase substitute and as a connective in NP+thīi+VP constructions: thún thīi hēt dùaj cǐa 'A flag (that is) made of paper'.
- 3) háv èen ... wāa jān daj? (Lit. how do we call) 'What do we call...?' is used in requesting the name of something háv èen kēep thīi hēt dùaj jān wāa jān daj? 'What do we call shoes that are made of rubber?'

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences.

- (a) wēntaa hēt dùaj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Eye glasses are made of glass.)
- (b) tó? hēt dùaj \_\_\_\_\_ lē? lék  
(Tables are made of metal and wood.)
- (c) móon hēt dùaj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Watches are made of silver.)
- (d) lōt \_\_\_\_\_ lék  
(Cars are made of iron.)

---

Answers: 1(a)kèsw (b)mǎj (c)ńén (d)hēt dùaj

- (e) jaan lōt hēt dùaj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Car tires are made of rubber.)
- (f) s̀yak th̄i hēt dùaj mǎj `èn wāā \_\_\_\_\_  
(Rope that is made of silk is called silk rope.)
- (g) pátuu th̄i \_\_\_\_\_ `èn wāā pátuu k̀esw  
(Doors that are made of glass are called glass doors.)
- (h) kátāā th̄i hēt dùaj wǎaj `èn wāā \_\_\_\_\_  
(Baskets that are made of rattan are called rattan baskets.)
- (i) k̀eep \_\_\_\_\_ `èn wāā k̀eep nǎj.  
(Shoes that are made of leather are called leather shoes.)
- (j) th̄ōj th̄i hēt dùaj plaastík \_\_\_\_\_ th̄ōj plaastík  
(Bags that are made of plastic are called plastic bags.)

2) Answer the following questions:

- (a) h́aw `èn m̄ō th̄i hēt dùaj th̄ōj d̄esj wāā jāāj daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
(What do we call a pot that is made of copper?)
- (b) h́aw `èn w̄esj th̄i hēt dùaj khám wāā jāāj daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
(What do we call rings that are made of gold?)
- (c) h́aw `èn p̄akkaa th̄i hēt dùaj plaastík wāā jāāj daj??  
\_\_\_\_\_ (What do we call pens that are made of plastic?)

---

Answers: 1(e)jaan (f)s̀yak mǎj (g)hēt dùaj k̀esw (h)kátāā wǎaj  
(i)th̄i hēt dùaj nǎj (j)`èn wāā 2(a)m̄ō th̄ōj d̄esj  
(b)w̄esj khám (c)p̄akkaa plaastík

- (d) háw èen kápaw thII hēt dùaj nǎŋ wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call bags that are made of leather?)
- (e) háw èen hýan thII hēt dùaj màj phāj wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (What do we call houses that are made of bamboo?)
- (f) háw èen tǎŋ ìi thII hēt dùaj wǎaj wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call a chair that is made of rattan?)
- (g) háw èen sáam thII hēt dùaj lék wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call a dish that is made of metal?)
- (h) háw èen thǒŋ thàw thII hēt dùaj fāaj wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call socks that are made of cotton?)
- (i) háw èen sýa thII hēt dùaj mǎj wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call a blouse that is made of silk?)
- (j) háw èen sáam thII hēt dùaj cǎa wāā jāāŋ daj? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (What do we call plates that are made of paper?)

---

Answers: 2(d)kápaw nǎŋ (e)hýan màj phāj (f)tǎŋ ìi wǎaj  
 (g)sáam lék (h)thǒŋthàw fāaj (i)sýa mǎj (j)saam cǎa



CYCLE 72

M-1

khĩa

write

láaw khĩa ðuaj njǎŋ?

What did he write with?

tát

cut

láaw tát ðuaj njǎŋ?

What does he cut (it) with?

khút

dig

láaw khút ðuaj njǎŋ?

What did he dig with?

māt

tie

láaw māt ðuaj njǎŋ?

What did he tie with?

khâam mĕĕnàm

cross the river

láaw khâam mĕĕnàm ðuaj  
njǎŋ?

What did he cross the river  
with?

deentháaŋ

travel

láaw deentháaŋ ðuaj njǎŋ?

How did he travel?

M-2

tát, lĕaj

cut, saw

khácàw si tát ðuaj lĕaj

They will cut with saws.

māt, wǎaj

tie, rattan

khácàw si māt ðuaj wǎaj

They will tie (it) with rattan.

khút, cók

dig, hoe

khácàw si khút ðuaj cók

They will dig with hoes.

khâam mɛɛnəm, thɔɔnməj

cross the river, logs

khácàw si khâam mɛɛnəm  
dùaj thɔɔnməj

They will cross the river  
with logs.

dɛentháan, khɿan bin

travel, airplanes

khácàw si dɛen tháan dùaj  
khɿan bin

They will travel with  
airplanes.

thǎj náa, thǎj

plow the rice field, plows

khácàw thǎj náa dùaj thǎj

They plow the ricefield  
with plows.

pháaj h́ya, màj pháaj

paddle the boat, paddle

khácàw pháaj h́ya dùaj  
màj pháaj

They paddle the boat with  
paddles.

C-1

A. càw si khǎn dùaj njǎn?

What will you write with?

B. khǔj si khǎn dùaj pākkaa

I will write with a pen.

C-2

A. láaw si tát màj dùaj cók,  
mɛɛn bɔɔ?

He will cut wood with a hoe,  
is that right?

B. bɔɔ mɛɛn, láaw si tát màj  
dùaj lɿaj

No, he will cut wood with  
a saw.

---

ຈົງສົມມຸດປັນຫາຂ້າມ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ມັກຮຽນແກ້ເປັນພາສາລາວຍັງດູ! ຖ້າຫາກວ່າການກະທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ  
ດ້ວຍວິທີໃດວິທີນຶ່ງ ບໍ່ສຳເລັດຜົນ ຂະຈຳຄິດວ່າຈະມີທາງແກ້ໄຂໂຕຢ່າງໃດ?

---

NOTES

- 1) VP + dùaj + NP (Instrument) is used to indicate what device or means is used to perform some activity:

khácàw tát màj dùaj l̄yaj 'They cut the wood with a saw.'

khácàw si māt dùaj wǎaj 'They'll tie it up with rattan.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) láaw bᵛᵛ míi pâakkaa láaw c̄ȳŋ kh̄ian dùaj sᵛᵛdam.  
 (b) din jᵛᵛ n̄i kh̄es̄ŋ lǎaj cá? khút dùaj njǎŋ koo bᵛᵛ dàj  
 (c) th̄awāā tát dùaj l̄yaj-thámmādaa bᵛᵛ dàj láaw si tát dùaj l̄yaj-tát-lék  
 (d) kaan deen th̄aaŋ dùaj l̄ot c̄ak w̄iaŋcan paj h̄aa l̄uŋ ph̄abaan bᵛᵛ p̄otpháj  
 (e) phᵛᵛ náa jᵛᵛ m̄yaŋ láaw thǎj náa dùaj thǎj n̄oŋ  
 (f) láaw s̄ok h̄aa h̄ya bᵛᵛ h̄en láaw c̄ȳŋ kh̄am m̄eē n̄am dùaj thᵛᵛn màj

---

Answers: 1(a)He didn't have a pen so he wrote with a pencil  
 (b)The earth here is too hard to be able to be dug with anything. (c)If it can't be cut with an ordinary saw, he will cut it with a hacksaw. (d)Traveling by car from Vientiane to Luang Prabang is not safe. (e)Rice farmers in Laos plow their fields with small plows. (f)He wasn't able to find a boat, so he crossed the river on a log.

- (g) dæen tháan ðàaj khÿan bin wáj kwāā kaan dæentháan ðàaj lōt  
 (h) láaw bᵛᵛ hùu wāā cá? māt dᵛok màj nīi ðàaj njǎn  
 (i) thāawāā háw bᵛᵛ míi màj-pháaj háw si tᵛᵛn pháaj hÿa ðàaj mÿy  
 (j) láaw njǎn bᵛᵛ hùu wāā diaw nīi háw át sÿan ðàj ðàaj khÿan  
 át sÿan

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láan khón kinkhāw ðàaj \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Some people eat with their hands.)  
 (b) khᵛj hᵛᵛ \_\_\_\_\_ plaastík.  
 (I wrapped it with sheets of plastic. )  
 (c) láaw aw nīip sāj kan \_\_\_\_\_ lék nīip cì  
 (He attached it with a paper clip.)  
 (d) láaw hāp fǎn khāaw \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He received the news by radio.)  
 (e) yàj khᵛj cá? dæentháan káp bàn \_\_\_\_\_  
 (My older sister will return by train.)

---

Answers: 1(g)Traveling by plane is faster than by car. (h)He didn't know what he would tie up the flowers with. (i)If we don't have any paddles, we'll have to paddle the boat by hand. (j)He isn't yet aware that now we can record sound with a tape recorder.  
 2(a)mÿy (b)ðuan phēen (c)ðàaj (d)ðàaj wīthānjū?  
 (e)ðàaj lōt fáj

- (f) khón cìin \_\_\_\_\_ màj-thū  
(Chinese eat with chopsticks)
- (g) khácàw khón \_\_\_\_\_ būaŋ  
(They stir it with a spoon.)
- (h) sét ôok dùaj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Wipe it off with a soft cloth.)
- (i) njōk lōt khỳn \_\_\_\_\_ mēē hēsŋ  
(Raise the car with a jack.)
- (j) dyn \_\_\_\_\_ sǎaj sōo  
(Pull it with a chain.)
- (k) māt dùaj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Tie it with a rope.)
- (l) thǔu ôok \_\_\_\_\_  
(Clean it with a brush.)
- (m) \_\_\_\_\_ dùaj nàm jaa lànŋ pāk  
(Wash out your mouth with mouth wash.)
- (n) \_\_\_\_\_ dùaj kēs  
(Cook with gas.)

---

Answers: 2(f)kin khâw dùaj (g)dùaj (h)phâa ɔɔn ɔɔn (i)dùaj  
(j)dùaj (k)sỳak (l)dùaj pŋŋ (m)lànŋ pāk (n)khúakin

- (o) \_\_\_\_\_ dùaj lék khǎj kápooŋ  
(Open it with a can opener.)
- (p) láaw thýyk māt taa \_\_\_\_\_ phāa \_\_\_\_\_  
(His eyes were bound with a black cloth.)
- (q) tháa \_\_\_\_\_  
(Paint it with yellow paint.)
- (r) sēt thūaj sáam \_\_\_\_\_  
(Dry the dishes with a cloth.)
- (s) phát \_\_\_\_\_  
(Polish it with a cloth.)
- (t) tōok tápuu \_\_\_\_\_ khòon tii  
(Drive the nail with a hammer.)
- (u) tít taam bōŋ \_\_\_\_\_ khýaŋ léedàa  
(Track it by radar.)
- (v) lēēn \_\_\_\_\_ kásěē \_\_\_\_\_  
(Run it on electrical current.)
- (w) \_\_\_\_\_ khwáam ót thón  
(Work with patience.)
- (x) \_\_\_\_\_ dùaj khwáam pámâat  
(Don't drive carelessly.)

---

Answers: (o)khǎj (p)dùaj... sǐi dam (q)dùaj sǐi lýaŋ (r)dùaj phāa  
(s)dùaj phāa (t)dùaj (u)dùaj (v)dùaj...fájfàa (w)hēt  
wíak dùaj (x)jāā kháp lōt

CYCLE 73

M-1

daŋ-fáj

to make a fire

càw si sàj njǎŋ daŋ-fáj?

What will you use for making a fire?

hóŋ, nǎŋ

to underlay, place beneath; sit

càw si sàj njǎŋ hóŋ nǎŋ?

What will you use to sit on?

lābaaj, nàm

to control the flow, water

càw si sàj njǎŋ lābaaj nàm?

What will you use to control the water flow?

sǎmlúat, bǝŋ

survey, inspect, look at, see

càw si sàj njǎŋ sǎmlúat  
bǝŋ?

What will you use for inspecting?

lỳak, mâak màj

select, choose, fruit

càw si sàj phǎj lỳak  
mâak màj?

Who will you use to select fruit?

kinkhâw

to have one's meal

càw si sàj njǎŋ kinkhâw?

What will you use to eat with?

phán, mýy

to wrap around, hand

càw si sàj njǎŋ phán mýy?

What will you use to wrap around your hand?

M-2

thāān

charcoal

khôj si sàj thāān daŋ-fáj

I'll use charcoal for making  
a fire.

cia

paper

khôj si sàj cia hóoŋ nāŋ

I'll use paper to sit on.

kòoŋsɔɔŋ

binoculars

khôj si sàj kòoŋsɔɔŋ  
sǎmlúat bəŋ

I'll use binoculars for  
inspection.

déknòoj

children

khôj si sàj déknòoj lýak  
māak màj

I'll use children to select  
fruit.

būaŋ, sɔɔm

spoon, fork

khôj si sàj būaŋ sɔɔm  
kin khāw

I'll use a spoon and fork  
to eat with.

khýaŋcák

machine, engine, motor

khôj si sàj khýaŋcák  
lābaaj nām

I'll use a machine for  
controlling the flow of  
the water.

phāa

cloth

khôj si sàj phāa phán mýy

I'll use a cloth to wrap  
around my hand.



C-1

- A. càw si sàj njǎŋ daŋ-fáj?      What will you use for building fire?
- B. khôj si sàj thǎan daŋ-fáj      I'll use charcoal for a fire.

C-2

- A. càw si sàj cǎa hēt njǎŋ?      What will you use paper for?
- B. khôj si sàj cǎa hóoŋ nǎŋ      I'll use paper to sit on.

ເວລາກະຫວ່າງການສົ່ງໃດສິ່ງນັ້ນ ແລະຖາວອນມີຂອງໃຊ້ແນວໃດແນວນັ້ນ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະໃຊ້ຫຍັງແທນ? ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ ເມື່ອບໍ່ມີຊອມຫລືບ່ວງເຮົາກໍ່ຕ້ອງໃຊ້ມັນເຂົ້າ. ແລະອື່ນໆອີກໃນຫນ້າຂອງດຽວກັນ.

NOTES

- 1) sàj 'to use' + NP + VP may be used in a similar way to dùaj + NP, i.e. to indicate the means or device used for accomplishing something. Compare the two sentences:

khôj sàj bǔaŋ sǒm kin khâw      (Lit. I use spoon fork to eat.)  
 'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

khôj kin khâw dùaj bǔaŋ sǒm      'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

sàj may be used with persons as well as things, but should only be used by a person of superior status to one of lower status.

khôj sàj lùuk khôj paj sỳy      'I have my child go shopping  
khǒoŋ hâj      for me.'

(I use my child go buy things for.)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ pyn khū khón khī-lāk  
(He uses a gun to scare off thieves.)
- (b) khácàw sàj mìit-thēs \_\_\_\_\_ hāj kan  
(They used razors to shave their heads with.)
- (c) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ khwáam phānjáanjáam hēt wlak con sāmret  
(He uses effort to work until he is successful.)
- (d) láaw ບໍ່ສຳລັດ ພົວວ່າ ລ້າວ \_\_\_\_\_ ພູ້າ ກຸ້ອນ ລ້າວ  
hāj pen pánjōot  
(He is not clever since he has never used his head to  
advantage.)
- (e) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ pen khān-mýy khōn láaw  
(He uses money as a tool.)
- (f) wéeláa láaw pē nānsýy láaw \_\_\_\_\_ wātcanáanūkom  
(He didn't use a dictionary while translating the book.)
- (g) láaw sàj \_\_\_\_\_ phān bāt-phēs láaw  
(He used a clean cloth to wrap his wounds with.)
- (h) khōj ບໍ່ ກູ້າ ສ່ຳ ຈົນ ດວງລ້າ ກູ້າ ກູ້າ \_\_\_\_\_ ຈົນ ກຶປ  
(I've never used dollars. I've only used kips.)

---

Answers: 1(a)sàj (b)thēs hūa (c)sàj (d)ບໍ່ ກູ້າ ສ່ຳ (e)sàj  
nən (f)ບໍ່ ສ່ຳ (g)phān sá'āat (h)sàj tēs

- (i) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ bᵒᵒ phían mán cᵑᵑ phée jᵑᵑ lᵑaj  
(He doesn't use his car carefully so it's always out of fix.)
- (j) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ khón-sàj láaw paj sᵑᵑ khᵑᵑᵑ  
(He uses his servant for (to go) shopping.)
- (k) láaw sàj kᵑᵑᵑ-thāāj-hùup \_\_\_\_\_ láaw cᵑᵑ \_\_\_\_\_ hùup  
(He doesn't know how to use a camera so he didn't get any pictures.)
- (l) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ khón-sàj phᵑwāā láaw bᵒᵒ jâak hāp sàj khón ᵑᵑᵑ  
(He doesn't want to be a servant since he doesn't want to be used by others.)
- (m) \_\_\_\_\_ phḗen-thīī sām̄lāp wāaᵑ phḗenkaan  
(Use a map for laying plans.)
- (n) khón láaw \_\_\_\_\_ náa  
(Laotians used water buffaloes for plowing.)
- (o) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ Parker  
(He uses a Parker pen.)
- (p) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ sḗḗᵑ-taa sákót cīt  
(He uses his eyesight to hypnotize.)
- (q) lᵑt khán nīi \_\_\_\_\_ phᵑwāā khᵑa'cák mán taaj  
(This car can't be used since its motor is dead.)
- (r) thūk khón \_\_\_\_\_ thīī mīi khún̄nāphāap dii  
(Everybody likes to use things that are of good quality.)
- (s) láaw bᵒᵒ hùucák \_\_\_\_\_  
(He doesn't know how to use it.)

---

Answers: (i)sàj lᵑt (j)sàj (k)bᵒᵒ pen... bᵒᵒ dàj (l)bᵒᵒ jâak pen (m)sàj (n)sàj khwāāj thǎj (o)sàj pāakkaa (p)sàj (q)sàj bᵒᵒ dàj (r)māk sàj khᵑᵑᵑ (s)sàj

2) Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) khôj māk sàj thāan khúakin phōwāā mán sádúak dii  
 (b) khácàw bōō míi tāj ìi khácàw cŷŋ sàj cía hóōŋ nāŋ  
 (c) sáaw bàan jūū náj mŷan láaw sàj tēē būan kinkhāw  
 (d) mŷa wéeláa fōn bōō tók phùak phōō náa sàj khŷançák lābaaj  
 nām khāw náa  
 (e) khôj si sàj láaw paj tálâat hāj khôj phōwāā khôj míi wlak  
 lǎaj  
 (f) láaw sàj khōōŋ lāw ñi bōō pen mán cŷŋ phée  
 (g) kaan sàj déknōōj hēt wlak khōōŋ phūū njāj njōōm pen kaan  
 kátham thīī bōō lōōpkhōōp  
 (h) sáaw bàan pháa kan sàj phāa phán hŷa phōwāā dēet hòōn lǎaj  
 (i) thāawāā bōōn nāŋ pŷan khácàw si tōōŋ sàj nēewdaj nēewnŷŋ  
 hóōŋ nāŋ  
 (j) kaan sàj sīŋkhōōŋ tāāŋ jāāŋ bōō thŷyk tōōŋ taam phōnpánjōōt  
 knōōŋ mán âat cá? nám phōn sŷa hǎaj máa sūū phūū sàj

---

Answers: 2(a) I like to use charcoal for cooking because it's nice and convenient. (b) They don't have chairs so they use paper to sit on. (c) Villagers in Laos use only spoons to eat with. (d) When there is no rain, rice farmers use an irrigating machine to bring water into the rice fields. (e) I'll have (lit. make use of) him go to the market for me since I have a lot of work. (f) He doesn't know how to use these things so they break down. (g) Using children to do the work of adults is not a circumspect act (is not advisable). (h) Villagers as a group wrap cloth around their heads because the sun is so hot. (i) If the seats are dirty, they'll have to use something or other to sit on. (j) Incorrect use of things may bring poor results to the user.

CYCLE 74

M-1

pátíthín a calendar  
 pátíthín míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What's a calendar for?  
 njǎn?

móon a clock, watch  
 móon míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What is a watch for?

sǎaj sɛw a belt  
 sǎaj sɛw míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What is a belt for?  
 njǎn?

pyyn a gun  
 pyyn míi wáj sǎmlāp njǎn? What's a gun for?

kəonhāp an army, armed forces  
 kəonhāp míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What's an army for?  
 njǎn?

lōt-dáp-phéən a fire engine  
 lōt-dáp-phéən míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What's a fire engine for?  
 sǎmlāp njǎn?

lōt- hoonmǎo an ambulance  
 lōt-hoonmǎo míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What's an ambulance for?  
 njǎn?

M-2

banthūk, khóncép

lōt-hóonmǎo mí wàj sǎmlāp  
banthūk khóncép

to load on, transport; patient

An ambulance is for transporting sick persons.

bōok, wéeláa

móon mí wàj sǎmlāp bōok  
wéeláa

tell, time

A clock is for telling time.

hāt

sǎaj-εew mí wàj sǎmlāp hāt

fasten

A belt is for fastening.

wánthíi

pátíthín mí wàj sǎmlāp  
bōok wánthíi

date

A calendar is for giving the date.

pòonkan, páthèet

kóonthāp mí wàj sǎmlāp  
pòonkan páthèet

defend, country

An armed force is for defending the country.

mòot fáj

lōt-dáp-phéon mí wàj  
sǎmlāp mòot fáj

to put out fire

A fire engine is for putting out fires.

C-1

A. pyn mí wàj sǎmlāp njǎn?

What's a gun for?

B. pyn mí wàj sǎmlāp njín

A gun's for shooting.

C-2

- A. háw míi lōt-hóonm<sup>໓</sup>ວàj wàj sǎmlāp njǎn? What do we use an ambulance for?
- B. háw míi lōt-hóonm<sup>໓</sup>ວàj sǎmlāp banthūk khón cép We use an ambulance for transporting sick persons.

C-3

- A. koonthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp m<sup>໓</sup>ວອຕ fáj m<sup>໓</sup>ຂຶນ b<sup>໓</sup>ວວ? Is it true that an army is for putting out fires?
- B. b<sup>໓</sup>ວວ m<sup>໓</sup>ຂຶນ, koonthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp p<sup>໓</sup>ວອນkan páthèet No, an army is for defending a country.

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຈື່ແຈ້ງຜົນປະໂຫຍດຂອງສິ່ງຂອງແຕ່ລະຢ່າງເບິ່ງດູ່ວ່າ ອັນໃດມີໄວ້ສຳລັບຫຍັງ? ຫລືມີປະໂຫຍດຢ່າງໃດ? ແຕ່ງເຮືອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນອີກ ໂດຍພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມັນກວ້ວຂອງກັບວຽກການທີ່ແຕ່ຂອງນັກຮຽນ.

NOTES

- 1) míi wàj sǎmlāp 'to be on hand for use as' occurs in the construction:

NP + míi wàj sǎmlāp + VP  
móon míi wàj sǎmlāp b<sup>໓</sup>ວັອກ wéeláa  
 'A watch is for telling time.'

The negative of this construction seldom occurs. It is

NP + b<sup>໓</sup>ວວ m<sup>໓</sup>ຂຶນ + míi wàj sǎmlāp ....  
k<sup>໓</sup>ອຶປ b<sup>໓</sup>ວວ m<sup>໓</sup>ຂຶນ míi wàj sǎmlāp ....  
 'Shoes are not for .....

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English.

- (a) khÿançák nìi míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ khôj koo bᵛᵛ hùu
- (b) pāakkaa mēēn khᵛᵛŋ thīi háw míi wàj sǎmlāp khĭan
- (c) pÿyn míi wàj sǎmlāp pᵛᵛŋkan tua
- (d) aahǎan míi wàj sǎmlāp llan sĭiwĭt khᵛᵛŋ khón lēʻ sát
- (e) núa lēʻ khwáaj sūan màak jūu náj eesĭa míi wàj sǎmlāp sàj wlak
- (f) pÿm āān míi wàj sǎmlāp āān lēʻ pÿm khĭan míi wàj sǎmlāp khĭan
- (g) pÿm lāw nìi míi wàj sǎmlāp cēēk-jaa j hâj nàk-hĭan thāw nàr
- (h) kēep bᵛᵛ mēēn míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj hŭa tēē míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj tiin
- (i) sᵛᵛ-khǎaw míi wàj sǎmlāp khĭan sāj kádaan
- (j) màj banthāt míi wàj sǎmlāp khĭit sēn

---

Answers: 1(a)What this machine is for I don't know. (b)A pen is a thing that we have (on hand) for writing. (c)A gun is for defending oneself with. (d)Food is for nourishing life of people and animals. (e)In Asia most cattle and water buffaloes are for working. (f)A reading book is for reading and a writing book (notebook) is for writing in. (g)These books are for distribution to the students only. (h)Shoes aren't for wearing on your head but are for wearing on your feet. (i)Chalk is for writing on the blackboard. (j)A ruler is for drawing lines.



CYCLE 75

M-1

tɛɛkɔɔn

in the past, previously

tɛɛkɔɔn càw jũũ sǎj?

Where were you previously?

tɛɛkiɪ

in the past, previously

tɛɛkiɪ càw jũũ sǎj?

Where were you previously?

njáam

time, period

njáam khôj bɔɔ sábaaj càw  
jũũ sǎj?

Where were you at the time  
that I was sick?

m̄ya, kɔɔn

when; before, first

m̄ya sɔɔŋ pɪɪ kɔɔn càw jũũ  
sǎj?

Where were you two years ago?

m̄yy, kh̄yyn, m̄yy kh̄yyn n̄i

day, time; night, last night

m̄yy kh̄yyn n̄i càw jũũ sǎj?

Where were you last night?

l̄ɛw

finish, over, last

m̄yy wáncan l̄ɛw n̄i càw  
jũũ sǎj?

Where were you last Monday?

M-2

pátcúban, pácam

the present, nowadays; to be  
stationed at

pátcúban n̄i láaw th̄yik sɔŋ  
paj pácam jũũ p̄áksée

Presently he is being sent  
to be stationed at Pakse.

mɔɔ, m̄ya mɔɔ mɔɔ n̄i

m̄ya mɔɔ mɔɔ n̄i láaw th̄yik  
sɔŋ paj pácam jũũ pâaksée

near, close; recently

Recently he was sent to be  
stationed at Pakse.

don, m̄ya bɔɔ don n̄i

m̄ya bɔɔ don n̄i láaw th̄yik  
sɔŋ paj pácam jũũ pâaksée

long time, not long ago

Not long ago he was sent to  
be stationed at Pakse.

kaaj, p̄i kaaj n̄i

p̄i kaaj n̄i láaw th̄yik  
sɔŋ paj pácam jũũ pâaksée

pass, go past; last year

Last year he was sent to be  
stationed at Pakse.

diaw n̄i

diaw n̄i láaw th̄yik sɔŋ  
paj pácam jũũ pâaksée

now, at the present time

Now he is being sent to be  
stationed at Pakse.

C-1

A. diaw n̄i láaw pácam jũũ  
sǎj?

Where is he stationed now?

B. diaw n̄i láaw pácam jũũ  
pâaksée

Right now he is stationed  
at Pakse.

C-2

A. t̄ɛkɔɔn láaw jũũ sǎj?

Where was he before?

B. t̄ɛkɔɔn láaw jũũ m̄yan̄ láaw

Before he was in Laos.

- A. láaw hēt njǎṅ jūu hân?                      What was he doing there?
- B. láaw thŷyk sōṅ paj pácam                      He was sent to be stationed  
jūu hân    there.

---

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເຖິງເບື້ອງຂອງຫລັງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ເວລາໃດຜູ້ໃດເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່ໃສ? ແລະດື່ມປາມ  
ໃດ? ຫລືວ່າເຫດການຕ່າງໆເປັນໄປໃນຫນ້າຂອງໃດ? ຕອດຕັ້ງປະສົບປະການຕ່າງໆຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

---

NOTES

- 1) The following list of time expressions is given for your convenience:
- (a) Days of the week in order: wán-can, wán-anḵháan, wán-phūt wán-phāhát, wán-súk, wán-sǎw, wán-aathít.
- (b) Months of the year in order: mōkkáráa, kumpháa, míináa, méesǎa, phŷtsápháa, mīthúnáa, koorākádaa, sīṅhǎa, kan-njáa, túláa, phŷtsácíkaa, thánwáa.
- (c) mỳy nìi 'today', mỳy wáan nìi 'yesterday', mỳy ŷyn 'tomorrow', mỳy hýy 'day after tomorrow', mỳy sýyn 'day before yesterday'.
- (d)  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{tḗḗ kḗḗn} \\ \text{tḗḗ kīi} \end{array} \right\}$  'previously', 'before', sḗḗn pii kḗḗn '2 years ago'.  
aathít lèsw nìi 'a week ago', mŷa mḗḗ mḗḗ nìi 'recently',  
mŷa bḗḗ don máa nìi 'not long ago', mỳy wán-anḵháan lèsw nìi  
'last Tuesday', mỳy wán-sùk nâa 'next Friday', pii kaaj  
nìi 'last year';  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{díaw nìi} \\ \text{pátcúban nìi} \end{array} \right\}$  'now', pii nâa 'next year',  
náj wéeláa nân 'at that time'.

- (e) náj dyan mīthúnáa pii phán kàw hòoj hóksíp hâa 'in June 1965', m̄ya wéeláa khôj jūū... 'when I was living in...', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ pii 1967 khôj jūū m̄yan wíançan.  
(In August 1967 I was living in Vientiane.)
- (b) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw paj jlam-jaam ph̄yan láaw jūū hóonm̄õ  
(Last Thursday he went to visit his friend in the hospital.)
- (c) khôj dàj hùucák káp òaj láaw m̄ya \_\_\_\_\_ n̄ns̄ȳy  
jūū sájn̄õn  
(I met his older sister when I was studying in Saigon.)
- (d) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw kamlán āan p̄ym th̄i n̄a s̄onçaj h̄ua n̄ȳn  
(He is reading an interesting book at the present time.)
- (e) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj dàj kh̄i h̄ya paj p̄aks̄ée  
(Not long ago I went to Pakse by boat.)
- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj nján th̄āaj-hùup b̄õ pen.  
(Last year I still didn't know how to take pictures.)

---

Answers: 1(a)m̄ya dyan s̄ȳnh̄aa (b)m̄ȳ wánph̄ahát l̄esw n̄i  
(c)wéeláa khôj h̄ian (d)pátçuban n̄i (e)m̄ya b̄õ  
don máa n̄i (f)pii kaaj n̄i

- (g) cào ká? wāā cá? púk hýan \_\_\_\_\_ bōō?  
(Do you expect to build a house next month?)
- (h) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw pháa khácào paj lîn náj mýan  
(Last night he took them out on the town.)
- (i) \_\_\_\_\_ khâw khôj bōō nján cák mēt. diaw nîi  
khôj mîi hók thōj  
(Two weeks ago I didn't have any rice left. Now I have  
six bags.)
- (j) sǎn-njáa nîi dàj sén kan \_\_\_\_\_  
(This contract was signed not long ago.)
- (k) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw nján thýk khǎj jūū bōō?  
(Was he still locked up last Tuesday?)
- (l) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw dàj sàj nîi khōj láaw con mót  
(Recently he paid off all his debts.)
- (m) khôj dàj ôok cák thāhǎan \_\_\_\_\_ 1945.  
(I left military service on September 19, 1945.)
- (n) khácào thýk pōōj tua mỳ khýyn nîi \_\_\_\_\_  
(They were released last night at 10:30 p.m.)

---

Answers: (g)náj dyan nâa nîi (h)mỳ khýyn nîi (i)mýa sōōj  
aathit kōōn (j)mýa bōō nāan máa nîi (k)mỳ wán  
aṅkhāan lèēw nîi (l)mýa mōō mōō máa nîi (m)mýa  
wánthíi síp kàw kan-njáa (n)wéeláa síp móōj khōj

- (o) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj bᵛᵛ mīi wīak hēt  
(I was out of work last year.)
- (p) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw hētkaan jᵛᵛ sáthǎanthùut áméelikan  
jᵛᵛ mýan wíançan  
(At present he works at the American Embassy in Vientiane.)
- (q) àaj láaw sǎa síiwīt mýa \_\_\_\_\_ pii kaaj nīi  
(Her older brother died in July last year.)
- (r) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj \_\_\_\_\_ déknòoj khôj māk hían wī?sáa  
phúumísâat  
(When I was a child, I like to study geography.)
- (s) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj nján hían nǎnsýy jᵛᵛ thīi mǎhǎawithā-  
njáaláj óplóm khúu  
(At that time I was still studying at the teacher training  
college.)
- (t) \_\_\_\_\_ mēē khôj dàj máa jaam phùak khôj  
(The day before yesterday my mother came to visit us.)
- (u) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj khâw nóon wéeláa síp móonj khēn  
(Every night I go to bed at 10:30 p.m.)

---

Answers: (o)pii kaaj nīi (p)pátçuban nīi (q)dyan koorākádaa  
(r)mýa wéeláa... nján pen... (s)weeláa nán (t)mýy  
sýyn (u)thūk thūk khýyn

- (v) khôj si dàj phòo láaw jũu thii myan síkháakoo náj \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ nâa  
 (I'll get to meet her in Chicago next December.)
- (w) m̄ya wéeláa bāāj s̄oŋ móŋ láaw \_\_\_\_\_ nóŋ \_\_\_\_\_  
 (He was still asleep at 2:00 p.m.)
- (x) hàn-khǎaj-kh̄oŋ jũu náj myan wíañcan p̄et wéeláa kàw  
 móŋ sàw \_\_\_\_\_  
 Shops in Vientiane open at 9:00 a.m. every day.)
- (y) khôj hāp cōŋ nǎŋs̄ȳy phím \_\_\_\_\_ n̄ȳn sáápáp  
 (I subscribe to a weekly newspaper.)

---

Answers: (v) dyan thán wáa (w) nján... jũu (x) thūk thūk m̄ȳy  
 (y) pácam sáápádaa

CYCLE 76

M-1

lǎŋ cāak, njàaj

after, move

lǎŋ cāak nàŋ láaw si dàj  
njàaj ôok paj jũũ bàan nòok

After that he will get to  
move out to the countryside.

lǎŋ cāak nǐi láaw si dàj  
njàaj ôok paj jũũ bàan nòok

After this he will get to  
move out to the countryside.

lǎŋ cāak pii phán kàw hòoj  
hòksíp láaw dàj njàaj ôok  
paj jũũ bàan nòok

After 1960 he got to move  
out to the countryside.

tɔɔ, tɔɔ { paj  
máa

join, extend; next, later on

tɔɔ máa láaw dàj njàaj  
ôok paj jũũ bàan nòok

Later on he got to move out  
to the countryside.

tɔɔ paj láaw si dàj njàaj  
ôok paj jũũ bàan nòok

Then he will get to move out  
to the countryside.

M-2

tɛɛ, tɛɛ nàŋ máa

from, since; since then

tɛɛ nàŋ máa láaw dàj njàaj  
paj sǎj bɔɔ?

From that time on did he get  
to move anywhere?

tɛɛ nǐi paj

from now on

tɛɛ nǐi paj láaw si dàj  
njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?

From now on will he get to  
move anywhere?



con, thǎŋ

con thǎŋ pátcúban láaw  
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?

until; reach, to get to

Until now did he get to  
move anywhere?

náj mɔɔ mɔɔ nǐi

náj mɔɔ mɔɔ nǐi láaw si  
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?

soon

Soon will he get to move  
anywhere?

ánáakhōt, kàj

náj ánáakhōt an kàj nǐi  
láaw si dàj njàaj paj  
sǎj bɔɔ?

future, near

In the near future will he  
get to move anywhere?

wáj, náj wáj wáj nǐi

náj wáj wáj nǐi láaw si  
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?

fast, in the very near future

In the very near future will  
he get to move anywhere?

C-1

A. tɔɔ máa láaw dàj njàaj  
paj sǎj bɔɔ?

Later on did he get to move  
anywhere?

B. dàj njàaj, tɔɔ máa láaw  
dàj njàaj ôok paj jūu  
bàan nòok

Yes. Later on he got to  
move out to the countryside.

C-2

A. láaw si thýyk njàaj náj  
wáj wáj nǐi, mɛɛn bɔɔ?

He will be transferred very  
soon, is that right?

B. mɛɛn lèsw, láaw si thýyk  
njàaj náj wáj wáj nǐi

That's right, he will be  
transferred very soon.



APPLICATION

- 1) Read the sentences below carefully and supply the time expression that fits best. In some cases more than one answer is acceptable.
- (a) láaw jūu h́yan lăŋ ǹi máa tàn tēē m̀y láaw k̄et \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ láaw koo nján b̄ōō dàj njàaj paj sǎj
- (b) láaw khéej th̀yik taml̀uat cáp th̀ya n̄yŋ \_\_\_\_\_  
 láaw b̄ōō k̄aa<sup>1</sup> kháp lōt wáj
- (c) láaw b̄ōō khéej tàncaj h́ian láaw c̄yŋ s̄eŋ b̄ōō dàj. m̀y ǹi  
 láaw dàj b̄ōok káp ph̄ōō m̄ēē láaw wāā \_\_\_\_\_ láaw si  
 tàncaj h́ian lǎaj kwāā tēē k̄ōōn
- (d) m̀ya s̄ii pii k̄ōōn láaw dàj paj kamkáp<sup>2</sup> w̄iak jūu th́aan  
 ph̀aak n̄ya \_\_\_\_\_ láaw dàj th̀yik njàaj lón paj  
 ph̀aak tàj lē? diaw ǹi láaw koo nján jūu h́an
- (e) diaw ǹi láaw kamlán h́ian kaan h̄aks̄aa khwáam sá?-âat  
 kh̄yançák \_\_\_\_\_ láaw cá? dàj h́ian kaan s̄ōomp̄eēŋ
- (f) wéeláa kh̄ōj paj j̀lam jaam láaw m̀ya s̄ōŋ dyan k̄ōōn láaw  
 b̄ōō sábaaj lǎaj lē? wéeláa kh̄ōj c̄ak láaw máa láaw koo  
 nján b̄ōō sáw \_\_\_\_\_ s̄ōŋ aathit láaw koo mót  
 bun<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>dare    <sup>2</sup>supervise    <sup>3</sup>die

Answers: 1(a)con th̄eŋ pátcúban (b)tàn tēē ǹan máa (c)tēē  
 ǹi paj (d)t̄ōō máa (e)t̄ōō paj (f)lǎŋ c̄ak ǹan máa

- (g) lōt fáj khán nīi máa wēē nīi mỳ nīi pen th̄ya sūtthàaj  
 \_\_\_\_\_ kháçaw si bōō aw mán lēēn fīk
- (h) khōj dàj hāp cótmǎaj câak ph̄yan khōj mỳy sàw nīi, láaw  
 khīan bōok khōj wāā \_\_\_\_\_ láaw si pháa khòop-  
 khúa láaw máa jaam khōj, baanthíi âat cá? mēēn aathit nāa
- (i) diaw nīi mía láaw kamlán th̄yy-pháa<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ láaw  
 koo cá? dàj pen phōō khón
- (j) láaw sòokhǎa khón kháplōt khōon láaw phōwāā ph̄yan láaw  
 s̄ȳn máa câak t̄ān pátthèet cá? máa hòot dēēn-njón<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_, láaw hòoncaj<sup>6</sup> phō? láaw jàan wāā cá? paj sàa

---

<sup>4</sup>to be pregnant    <sup>5</sup>airport    <sup>6</sup>anxious, uneasy

Answers: (g) lǎj, câak nīi paj (h, i, j) náj mōō mōō nīi (or)  
 naj ánaakhōt an kǎj nīi (or) náj wáj wáj nīi

CYCLE 77

M-1

ĭik don paandaj

how much longer

càw si jūu nĭi ĭik don  
paandaj?

How much longer will you  
be here?

ĭik cák pii

how many more years

càw si pen thāhāan ĭik  
cák pii?

How many more years will you  
be in the service?

ĭik kaj paandaj

how much farther

càw si njāan paj ĭik kaj  
paandaj?

How much farther will you  
walk?

ĭik cák mỳy

how many more days

càw si nóon jūu hóonmǎo  
ĭik cák mỳy?

How many more days will you  
be confined in the hospital?

ĭik cák sūamóon

how many more hours

càw si hētwlak jūu nĭi  
ĭik cák sūamóon?

How many more hours will  
you be working here?

ĭik cák pii

how many more years

càw si aasǎj jūu nĭi ĭik  
cák pii?

How many more years will you  
live here?

M-2

ĭik sǎon aathit

two more weeks

khôj si hían pháasǎa láaw  
ĭik sǎon aathit

I will study Lao language  
for two more weeks.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <u>ĭik</u> <u>cák</u> <u>sǒŋ</u> <u>sǎam</u> <u>mỳ</u>                      | about two or three more days                                  |
| khôj si phāk jūū nīi ĭik<br>cák sǒŋ sǎam mỳ                                 | I will stay here for about<br>two or three more days.         |
| <u>ĭik</u> <u>pámaán</u> <u>hók</u> <u>cét</u> <u>dyan</u>                  | about six or seven more months                                |
| khôj si hētkaan jūū nīi<br>ĭik pámaán hók sét dyan                          | I will be working here for<br>about six or seven more months. |
| <u>nākhían</u> <u>ĭik</u> <u>náj</u> <u>láaw</u> <u>síp</u> <u>khón</u>     | approximately ten more students                               |
| khôj si míi nākhían ĭik<br>náj láaw síp khón                                | I will have approximately<br>ten more students.               |
| <u>náj</u> <u>lāwāāŋ</u> <u>síphāa</u> <u>hǎa</u><br><u>sáaw</u> <u>hǎa</u> | between 15 to 20 books  |
| khôj si sỳy pỳm dàj ĭik<br>náj lāwāāŋ síphāa hǎa<br>sáaw hǎa                | I will be able to buy<br>between 15 to 20 more books.         |
| M-3   |   |
| <u>ôok</u> <u>câak</u> <u>thāhǎan</u>                                       | leave the military service                                    |
| nján ĭik don paandaj láaw<br>[cỳŋ] si dàj ôok câak<br>thāhǎan?              | How much longer before he<br>gets to leave the service?       |
| <u>dàj</u> <u>hāp</u> <u>ņéndyan</u>  | receive salary  |
| nján ĭik cák aathit láaw<br>[cỳŋ] si dàj hāp ñéndyan?                       | How many more weeks before<br>he gets his salary?             |

máa hòot

arrives

nján̄ f̄ik pá máán cák sūamóon  
láaw [c̄ȳn] si máa hòot

About how many more hours  
before he arrives?

hían, s̄amlēt

study; complete, finish

nján̄ f̄ik náj láaw cák pi  
láaw [c̄ȳn] si hían s̄amlēt?

Approximately how many more  
years before he finishes his  
studies?

khâw pen thāhāan

join the military service

nján̄ f̄ik cák dyan láaw  
[c̄ȳn] si khâw pen thāhāan?

How many more months before  
he joins the service?

câak paj

leave, go away

nján̄ f̄ik cák náathíi láaw  
[c̄ȳn] si câak caw paj?

How many more minutes  
before he leaves you?

p̄ɛɛŋ

fix, repair

nján̄ f̄ik cák m̄ȳ láaw  
[c̄ȳn] si p̄ɛɛŋlōt l̄èɛw?

How many more days before  
he finishes fixing cars?

M-4

s̄ii, sūamóon

four, hour

nján̄ f̄ik pá máán s̄ii  
sūamóon

In about four more hours.

b̄ɔ̄ɔ̄ don paandaj

not a very long time

nján̄ f̄ik b̄ɔ̄ɔ̄ don paandaj

In not much longer.

b̄ɔ̄ɔ̄ l̄ăaj sūamóon

not many hours

nján̄ f̄ik b̄ɔ̄ɔ̄ l̄ăaj sūamóon

In not many more hours.

sII hâa mỳy

four or five days

nján ìik sII hâa mỳy

In four or five days.

bᵑᵑ thᵑᵑ dyan

less than a month

nján ìik bᵑᵑ thᵑᵑ dyan

In less than a month.

bᵑᵑ kᵑᵑn sᵑᵑam aathIt

not more than three weeks

nján ìik bᵑᵑ kᵑᵑn sᵑᵑam  
aathIt

In not more than three weeks.

khᵑᵑ sᵑᵑamᵑᵑ phᵑᵑᵑᵑᵑ

exactly half an hour

nján ìik khᵑᵑ sᵑᵑamᵑᵑ  
phᵑᵑᵑᵑᵑ

In exactly half an hour.

C-1

A. càw si hían pháasᵑᵑ láaw  
ìik don paandaj?

How much longer will you be  
studying the Lao language?

B. khᵑᵑj si hían pháasᵑᵑ  
láaw ìik sᵑᵑamsíp aathIt

I'll be studying Lao for  
thirty more weeks.

C-2

A. càw si pen thāhᵑᵑ ìik  
pámáan cák pi?

About how many more years  
will you be in the service?

B. khᵑᵑj si pen thāhᵑᵑ ìik  
pámáan sᵑᵑᵑ pi

I'll be in the service for  
about two more years.



C-3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. càw si njāāŋ paj fīk náj<br>láaw cák sūamóŋ?  | Approximately how many more<br>hours will you walk? |
| B. khôj si njāāŋ paj fīk<br>náj láaw sǝŋ sūa móŋ | I'll walk for approximately<br>two more hours.      |

C-4

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. càw si jūū nám láaw fīk<br>cák aathīt?          | How many more weeks will<br>you be with her?       |
| B. khôj si jūū nám láaw fīk<br>cák sǝŋ sǝam aathīt | I'll be with her about two<br>or three more weeks. |

C-5

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. nján fīk cák sūamóŋ<br>láaw [cŷŋ] si máa hòot? | How many more hours before<br>he arrives? |
| B. nján fīk bǝǝ lǎaj sūamóŋ                       | In not many more hours.                   |

C-6

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. nján fīk don paandaj láaw<br>[cŷŋ] si dàj hǎp ŋéndyan? | How much longer before he<br>gets his salary? |
| B. nján fīk bǝǝ kēen sǝŋ<br>aathīt.                       | In not more than two weeks.                   |

C-7

- A. nján fīk cāk dyan láaw                      How many more months before  
[cṽŋ] si dàj ôok thāhǎan?                      he gets out of the service?
- B. nján fīk bṽṽ thǎŋ dyan                      In less than a month.

C-8

- A. nján fīk don paandaj láaw                      How much longer before he  
[cṽŋ] si paj thǎŋ?                      arrives (there)?
- B. nján fīk pámaan sūamóŋ                      In one and a half more hours.  
khǎŋ

---

ຄຳວ່າ "ຍັງ" ນັ້ນກຳລັງຮຽນກໍໄດ້ຮຽນມາກ່ອນແລ້ວ ມີແຕ່ "ອີກ" ເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງຫັດໃຊ້. ຈິງໃຫ້ນັກ  
ຮຽນຖາມກັນວ່າ ຍັງອີກດົນປານໃດໃໝ່ຈຶ່ງຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ? ຫລືເຫດການແນວໃດຈະເກີດຂຶ້ນ? ແລະຕໍ່ນັ້ນໄປເດ?

---

NOTES

- 1) fīk means 'to be more, additional'. When it is followed by Time Expressions, it refers to a period of time beginning at the present and continuing. The focus is on the amount of time involved.

khôj si pen thāhǎan fīk                      'I will be a soldier for  
hók pii    six more years.'

- 2) nján fīk + Time Expressions also refers to a period of time beginning at the present time and continuing, but the focus is on an event which will take place after a certain period of time.

nján fīk hók pii khôj (cṽŋ)                      'In 6 more years I'll get  
si dàj ôok thāhǎan                              out of the service.'

njǎŋ ɰik + Time Expression comes at the beginning of the sentences; whereas, ɰik + Time Expression comes at the end.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw si jyyŋ jūu hân \_\_\_\_\_  
(How many more minutes will she stand there?)
- (b) khôj si sǝn jūu hóonhían nǐ \_\_\_\_\_  
(I'll teach at this school for approximately 3 more years.)
- (c) láaw si tòŋ tii-cák \_\_\_\_\_  
(How much longer will she have to type?)
- (d) \_\_\_\_\_ khâw-cǐi láaw koo si mót  
(In about 2 more days he will be out of bread.)
- (e) láaw si nóŋ \_\_\_\_\_  
(How much longer will she be asleep?)
- (f) láaw khón cá? sūansáw pháaj náj wéeláa \_\_\_\_\_  
(It will not be more than 3 weeks before he recovers.)
- (g) khôj si bǝ thâa jūu nǐ \_\_\_\_\_  
(I will not wait here many minutes more.)

---

Answers: 1(a)ɰik cák náathíi (b)ɰik náj láaw sǎam pii (c)ɰik don paandaj (d)ɰik pamáan sǝn mỳy (e)ɰik don paandaj (f)bǝ kœn sǎam aathít (g)ɰik lǎaj náathíi

- (h) \_\_\_\_\_ hók sūamóonj khôj koo si myá bàn  
(In less than 6 hours more I'll go home.)
- (i) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw koo si làek kaan  
(In about 10 minutes more he'll be out of work.)
- (j) \_\_\_\_\_ pým koo si lèew  
(In about 5 or 6 more days the book will be finished.)
- (k) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw cýn si thýyk keen khâw pen thāhǎan?  
(How many more weeks before he gets drafted into the army?)
- (l) càw ká? wāā cá? jūū nfi \_\_\_\_\_?  
(How much longer do you plan to stay here?)
- (m) \_\_\_\_\_ mýy khôj koo si dàj phòo láaw  
(In less than half a day I will meet her.)
- (n) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj koo si ôok kin bìa bamnán  
(It will not be very many more years before I retire.)
- (o) càw si paj tiisék jūū náj wlatnáam \_\_\_\_\_?  
(How many more weeks will you go fight in Vietnam?)

---

Answers: (h)nján fík bᵛᵛ kəən (i)nján fík síp náathíi (j)nján fík hāa hók mýy (k)nján fík cák aathít (l)fík don paandaj (m)nján fík bᵛᵛ thǎn khǎn (n)nján fík bᵛᵛ lǎaj pii (o)fík cák aathít

(p) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj koo siipaj nóon dàj  
(It will not be many more hours before I can go to bed.)

(q) càw si sỳy pỳm \_\_\_\_\_  
(How many more books will you buy?)

(r) háw njánj míi wéeláa hían \_\_\_\_\_  
(How much more time do we have to study?)

2) Cover the Lao and see if you can translate the English back into Lao.

---

Answers: (p) njánj íik bᵒᵒ lǎaj sūamóonj (q) íik cák hǎa  
(r) íik lǎaj paandaj

CYCLE 78

M-1

taamthammādaa

normally

taamthammādaa khácàw māk  
kin aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
normally like to eat?

sūanmāak

mainly

sūanmāak khácàw māk kin  
aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
mainly like to eat?

lāan thya

sometimes

lāan thya khácàw māk kin  
aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
like to eat sometimes?

lāan mỳ

somedays

lāan mỳ khácàw māk kin  
aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
like to eat somedays?

dooj thūa paj lèsw

generally

dooj thūa paj lèsw khácàw  
māk kin aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
like to eat generally?

dooj sáphᵀ? lèsw

in particular

dooj sáphᵀ? lèsw khácàw  
māk kin aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
like to eat in particular?

baan wéeláa

sometimes

baan wéeláa khácàw māk kin  
aahāan nésw daj?

What kind of food do they  
like to eat sometimes?

M-2

aahǎan phét

taamthámmadaa kháçàw māk kin  
aahǎan phét

spicy food

They normally like to eat  
spicy food.

aahǎan khém

sūanmàak kháçàw māk kin  
aahǎan khém

salty food

They mainly like to eat  
salty food.

khǒᵛᵛǎan

láanᵛᵛh̄ya kháçàw māk kin  
khǒᵛᵛǎan

sweets

Sometimes they like to have  
sweets.

aahǎan sôm

láanᵛᵛ m̄y kháçàw māk kin  
aahǎan sôm

sour food

Somedays they like to eat  
sour food.

aahǎan c̄ȳyt

dooj thūa paj lèsw kháçàw  
māk kin aahǎan c̄ȳyt

bland food

Generally they like bland  
food.

aahǎan ph̄ȳyn m̄ȳan

dooj sáph̄ᵛ lèsw kháçàw  
māk kin aahǎan ph̄ȳyn m̄ȳan

native food

Particularly they like to  
eat native food.

aahǎan tāān páthèet

baan wéeláa kháçàw māk  
kin aahǎan tāān páthèet

exotic food

Sometimes they like to eat  
exotic food.

C-1

- A. taamthámmādaa càw māk kin      Normally what kind of food  
aahāan néεw daj?                              do you like to eat?
- B. taamthámmādaa khóǰ māk kin      Normally I like spicy food.  
aahāan phét

C-2

- A. càw si kin aahāan néεw                      What kind of food will you  
daj?    have?
- B. khóǰ si kin aahāan jīipūn                      I will have Japanese food.
- A. aahāan jīipūn cýyt, mēēn                      The Japanese food is bland,  
baw?    isn't it?
- B. mēēw lēεw, taamthámmādaa                      That's right, normally the  
khón jīipūn māk kin                              Japanese like to eat bland  
aahāan cýyt    food.

ຂຽນເຮືອງປະກອບຂນອີກ ໂດຍບໍ່ລຍາຍເຖິງນິສັຍຂອງບຸກຄົນທີ່ສົມມຸດຂນຜູ້ນຸ່ງວ່າ ລາງເທື່ອລາວມັກເຮັດ  
ຫຍັງ? ແລະຍາງເວລາອັນອີກເດ? ດັ່ງນັ້ນໄປ. ດຽວນນັກຮຽນຂອງທານກໍຄວນຈະເວົ້າພາສາລາວໄດ້  
ຫລາຍເຕີບແລ້ວ. ສະນັ້ນ ຫານຈິງຫນ້ນຊວນຂະເຈົ້າລຸຍເຮືອງຕ່າງໆທີ່ເກີດຂນປະຈຳວັນ ໂດຍໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າ  
ມີໂອກາດໄດ້ເວົ້າຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ຫນັ້ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊົນໃນການສະແດງຫ້ສນະຂອງຂະ  
ເຈົ້າເປັນພາສາລາວ. ຕໍ່ໄປຂະເຈົ້າກໍຈະຄອຍໆມີຄວາມເຊື່ອຫນັ້ນໃນຕົນເອງຍັງຂນ.



APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ síp móonj khôj cýn lūk câak bõõn nõon  
(Normally I don't get up until 10 o'clock.)
- (b) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw bõn thóorāthāt jūū con dék  
(Sometimes she stays up late watching TV.)
- (c) \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw mía khôj bõõ māk mǎa  
(My wife dislikes dogs in particular.)
- (d) náj rāduu nǎaw \_\_\_\_\_ fǒntók mót mỳ  
(Some days in Winter it rains all day.)
- (e) sáaw náa \_\_\_\_\_ sàj khwáaj thǎj náa khácàw  
(Most farmers use water buffaloes for plowing rice fields.)
- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ kinkhāw thīan phūū diaw  
(I usually eat lunch by myself.)
- (g) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj hēt wíak náj mỳ wán-sǎw  
(Normally I work on Saturday.)
- (h) \_\_\_\_\_ khácàw kin paa lē? aahǎan thālée  
(They mainly eat fish and sea food.)

---

Answers: 1(a)taamthámmādaa (b)láan thya (c)dooj sáphõ?  
(d)láan mỳ (e)sūan māk (f)taamthámmādaa khôj  
(g)taamthámmādaa (h)sūan māk

- (i) \_\_\_\_\_ láaw wàw pháasǎa ankit  
(Normally he speaks English.)
- (j) \_\_\_\_\_ khôj tòonj thâa láaw káp bàn thǎn  
sǎonj sūa móonj  
{Sometimes I have to wait 2 hours for her to come home.}
- (k) \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw láaw māk máa sàa sáaw hǎa  
sǎamsíp náathíi  
(She generally comes 20 to 30 minutes late.)
- (l) \_\_\_\_\_ lèsw khôj māk khǎonj wǎan  
(I like desserts in particular.)

---

Answers: (i) taamthámmádaa (j) láan thǎa (k) dooj thūaj paj  
(l) dooj sáphǎ?

CYCLE 79

M-1

cá' tòõŋ

must

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 cá' tòõŋ lỳak aw náaj tháan

If he is going, he must  
 choose a guide.

khúan cá'

ought to

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 khúan cá' lỳak aw náaj tháan

If he is going, he ought to  
 choose a guide.

âat cá'

might

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 âat cá' lỳak aw náaj tháan

If he is going, he might  
 choose a guide.

khýy si

be likely

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 khýy si lỳak aw náaj tháan

If he is going, he will be  
 likely to choose a guide.

campen tòõŋ

it will be necessary for

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 campen tòõŋ lỳak aw náaj  
 tháan

If he is going, it will be  
 necessary for him to choose  
 a guide.

khón cá'

probably

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw  
 khón cá' lỳak aw náaj  
 tháan

If he is going, he will  
 probably choose a guide.

M-2

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <u>thỳk lāj ôok</u>   | be fired  |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? thỳk lāj ôok                   | Before he goes, he might<br>be fired.                             |
| <u>tᵋᵋᵋn tàn, hũa nũa</u>                                       | to appoint; chief, boss   |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? thỳk tᵋᵋᵋn tàn pen hũa<br>nũa  | Before he goes, he might be<br>appointed to be a chief.           |
| <u>thỳk lỳk khỳn pen pátthán</u>                                | be chosen to be the chairman                                      |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? thỳk lỳk khỳn pen<br>pátthán   | Before he goes, he might be<br>chosen to be the chairman.         |
| <u>tátst̄ncaj hāj cằ jũũ</u>                                    | decide to let you stay  |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? tátst̄ncaj hāj cằ jũũ          | Before he goes, he might<br>decide to let you stay.               |
| <u>hᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋ hāj cằ lầa phāk</u>                                  | consent to letting you take leave                                 |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? hᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋ hāj cằ lầa phāk        | Before he goes, he might<br>consent to letting you take<br>leave. |
| <u>ôok khám sᵋᵋᵋ hāj cáp láaw</u>                               | issue an order to arrest him                                      |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? ôok khám sᵋᵋᵋ hāj cáp<br>láaw  | Before he goes, he might<br>issue an order to arrest<br>him.      |
| <u>tóklóncaj hāj pᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋ khácằ</u>                              | agree to free them  |
| kᵋᵋn láaw si paj láaw âat<br>cá? tóklóncaj hāj pᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋᵋ<br>khácằ | Before he goes, he might<br>agree to free them.                   |

C-1

- A. thâaw<sup>h</sup> l<sup>h</sup>aw si paj l<sup>h</sup>aw                      What is he going to do before  
si hēt njǎŋ?    he goes?
- B. l<sup>h</sup>aw si l<sup>h</sup>ak aw n<sup>h</sup>aj th<sup>h</sup>an                      He will choose a guide.

C-2

- A. k<sup>h</sup>on l<sup>h</sup>aw si paj l<sup>h</sup>aw âat                      Might he do something before  
cá? hēt njǎŋ boo?                                      he goes? (is it probable)
- B. k<sup>h</sup>on l<sup>h</sup>aw si paj l<sup>h</sup>aw âat                      Before he goes, he might  
cá? tátsincaj p<sup>h</sup>oj kh<sup>h</sup>caw                              decide to free them.

C-3

- A. k<sup>h</sup>on l<sup>h</sup>aw si paj l<sup>h</sup>aw si                      Before he goes, will it be  
campen tòov h<sup>h</sup>aj caw l<sup>h</sup>a                              necessary for him to let you  
ph<sup>h</sup>ak boo?    take leave?
- B. m<sup>h</sup>en l<sup>h</sup>ew, k<sup>h</sup>on l<sup>h</sup>aw si                      Yes, before he goes, it is  
paj l<sup>h</sup>aw campen tòov h<sup>h</sup>aj                              necessary for him to let  
kh<sup>h</sup>oj l<sup>h</sup>a ph<sup>h</sup>ak    me take leave.

---

ຍັງອີກບາງໃດບິດຮຽນ ປັນຫົວນກໍຈະຈົບແລ້ວ. ສະນັ້ນຈິງຫມັ້ນພານັກຮຽນລຸ້ນຄົນເລືອຍໆ. ແລະຖາເຫັນວ່າ  
ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງອ່ອນຢູ່ຕອນໃດ ກໍຈິງພາຂະເຈົ້າຝັກຊ່ອມອີກ. ເມື່ອມີການສົນທະນາກັນ ຫ້າມກໍອາດຈະຈຳເປັນ  
ຕ້ອງໃຊ້ຄຳໃຫມ່ເປັນບາງຄຳ. ແຕ່ການຈົດຄຳໃຫມ່ໃຫມ່ນັກຮຽນຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາເບິ່ງ ແລະອາດ  
ຈະເຮັດໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເກີດຄວາມຫ້າມອຍ.

---

NOTES

- 1) Words which occur in the position between NP (Subject) and MV are called 'preverbs'. One of the most important groups of preverbs are the 'modals': tòṅ, khúan, âat, khýy, campen tòṅ, khón, etc. Each of these words is used in a wide range of situations, and there is some overlap in their usage in Lao. It is, therefore, difficult to indicate their meaning briefly. The following description is meant as a general guide only. The only good way to learn how to use them is to observe the situations in which Lao speakers use each of them and to imitate their usage.
- (a) (cá? / sí) tòṅ 'must, have to'. The situation requires it.  
háv tòṅ sía khaa fáj fàa 'We have to pay our electric bill.'
- (b) khúan (cá? / sí) 'should, ought to'. Social or moral obligation or expectation.  
càw bṽṽ khúan cá? kin lǎaj 'You shouldn't eat too much.'
- (c) âat (cá? / sí) 'may, might'. Likelihood, expectation, possibility.'  
láaw âat cá?bṽṽ sábaaj lǎaj 'He may be very ill.'
- (d) khýy (sí / cá?) 'may, might'. Similar to âat  
khýy sí mēēn 'It may be so.'
- (e) khón (cá? / sí) 'it is likely'. Probability.  
láaw khón cá?bṽṽ hùu 'It is likely that he doesn't know.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ khǎaj khǒɔŋ bɔɔ mót dɔɔk phɔwāā mỳ nīi  
bɔɔ mīi khón paj tálâat lǎaj paandaj.  
(She probably won't sell out her goods, since there aren't very many people going to the market today.)
- (b) khácàw bɔɔ mīi lɔt lɛʔ tháan sên nīi bɔɔ mīi lɔt thǎaw khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ njāāŋ paj  
(They don't have a car and there are no cars on this road. They must necessarily walk.)
- (c) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ máa phɔwāā láaw si hēt wlak lèsw mỳ nīi  
(He may come since he will have finished his work today.)
- (d) kaan hǎksǎa pīn pua hǎj jūū sábaaj mēēn sīŋ thīi háw  
\_\_\_\_\_ hēt  
(Maintaining good health is the thing we must do.)
- (e) díaw nīi mán kaaj wéeláa máa dàj sǒɔŋ sūa móoŋ lèsw láaw  
\_\_\_\_\_ bɔɔ máa dɔɔk  
(It's two hours past the time now. He must not be coming at all.)
- (f) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ cāāj ɣén khāā hýan thūk thūk tòn dyan  
(He has to pay the rent on his house at the beginning of each month.)
- (g) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ paj hǎp aw mīa láaw kɔɔn láaw si paj  
kinkhâw  
(He will have to go pick up his wife before going to eat.)

---

Answers: 1(a)khýy si (b)si campen tɔɔŋ (c)âat cáʔ (d)campen tɔɔŋ (e)khón cáʔ (f)tɔɔŋ (g)si tɔɔŋ

- (h) thâawāā càw khǎo thòot nám láaw láaw \_\_\_\_\_ ápháj  
hâj càw  
(If you apologize to him, he may forgive you.)
- (i) láaw paj dàj sīī sūa móon lèew, paan nīi láaw \_\_\_\_\_  
hòot lèew  
(He's been going for 4 hours already. He must have arrived by now.)
- (j) m̄ya hùu wāā mán bǎǎ dīī lèew phùakháw kǎǎ bǎǎ \_\_\_\_\_ hēt  
(If (we) know it's not good, we shouldn't do it.)
- (k) phēn \_\_\_\_\_ bǎǎ kīn phǎwāā aahǎan nīi phét lǎaj  
(He may not eat since the food is very hot.)
- (l) dék nòoj \_\_\_\_\_ s̄ya fán khám sǎnsǎon khǎon phǎǎ mēē  
(Children should listen to the advice of their parents.)
- (m) m̄ya wéeláa láaw bǎǎ mīi kaan hēt láaw kǎǎ \_\_\_\_\_ hǎa  
nén dùaj wīthīi daj wīthīi n̄ȳn  
(During the times when he is out of work, he must seek money by any means or other.)
- (n) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ taaǎ phǎwāā thǎān mǎǎ bǎǎ mīi jaa cá?  
hǎksǎa láaw  
(He may die since the doctor doesn't have any medicine to cure him.)
- (o) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ paj s̄ȳ kh̄ȳan̄kin jūū tálâat phǎwāā láaw  
bǎǎ mīi aahǎan  
(He will have to go buy food at the market because he doesn't have any food.)

---

Answers: (h)âat cá? (i)khón cá? (j)khúan (k)âat cá? (l)khúan  
(m)campen tòon (n)âat cá? (o)si tòon



- (p) m̄yā wéeláa láaw míi n̄én láaw koo \_\_\_\_\_ thòon n̄én  
wàj s̄amlāp wéeláa campen  
(When he has money, he should save it for time of need.)
- (q) diaw n̄i láaw thūk lǎaj láaw \_\_\_\_\_ khòotháan kin  
(Now he's very poor. He has to beg for food.)
- (r) nàm mán l̄ot b̄ō lǎaj háw \_\_\_\_\_ paj b̄ō hòot  
(There's not much gas in the car, we may not get there.)
- (s) khôj khít wāa láaw \_\_\_\_\_ paj b̄ō dàj d̄ōk phōwāa  
láaw míi w̄lak lǎaj  
(I think he may not be able to go at all because he has  
a lot of work.)
- (t) khácàw hāk kan lǎaj khôj khít wāa m̄yā wéeláa t̄ēn n̄áan  
kan l̄èw khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ míi khwāam súk nám kan  
(They're very much in love. I think they should be very  
happy after they get married.)
- (u) khôj dàj n̄jín wāa láaw j̄âak paj b̄ōn s̄ínée t̄ē don l̄èw  
thāwāa càw súan láaw láaw \_\_\_\_\_ paj  
(I heard she has been wanting to go to the movies for a  
long time, if you ask her, she may go.)
- (v) láaw si \_\_\_\_\_ paj s̄òk hǎa khácàw phōwāa láaw  
t̄òonkaan khácàw  
(He will have to go look for them because he needs them.)
- (w) phōo m̄ē \_\_\_\_\_ s̄āns̄on l̄uuk kh̄ōn ton ph̄yā n̄jāj máa  
khácàw cá? pen khón dii  
(Parents should train their children so that when they  
grow up they'll be good people.)

---

Answers: (p)khúan (q)campen t̄òon (r)khýy si (s)khýy si (t)khón  
cá? (u)khýy si (v)t̄òon (w)khúan cá? - khýy and âat  
are practically interchangeable and cá? and si are.

CYCLE 80

M-1

paj, myan laaw

to go, Laos

càw khéøj dàj paj myan  
laaw boo?

Have you ever been to Laos?

hên, sát, pâlâat

see, animal, strange

càw khéøj hên sát pâlâat

Have you ever seen a strange  
animal?

sím, sìn, khwáaj

taste, meat, flesh, water buffalo

càw khéøj sím sìn  
khwáaj boo?

Have you ever tasted  
water buffalo meat?

āan, nǎn sǎy phím

read, newspaper

càw khéøj dàj āan nǎn sǎy  
sǎy phím sàat láaw boo?

Have you ever read the Sat  
Lao Newspaper?

títian

criticize

càw khéøj dàj thýk  
títian boo?

Have you ever been criticized?

njòon

compliment

càw khéøj dàj thýk  
khácàw njòon njóo boo?

Have you ever been complimented  
by them?

thýk keen pen thāhǎan

to be drafted

càw khéøj dàj thýk keen  
pen thāhǎan boo?

Have you ever been drafted?

M-2

khéəj

Yes. (I have... )

bᵒᵒ, nján bᵒᵒ khéəj

No. (I have never... )

M-3

dàj paj mýan láaw

to have been to Laos

khéəj, khᵒj khéəj dàj paj  
mýan láaw láaj thya lèəw

Yes, I have been to Laos  
many times already.

thᵒtlᵒᵒᵒ

experiment

khéəj, khᵒj khéəj dàj  
thᵒtlᵒᵒᵒ láaj thya lèəw

Yes, I have experimented  
many times already.

M-4

sàj néəw nìi

use this kind

bᵒᵒ, khᵒj nján bᵒᵒ khéəj  
dàj sàj néəw nìi cákthya

No, I have never used this  
kind at all.

sûup, jaa fîn

smoke, opium

bᵒᵒ, khᵒj nján bᵒᵒ khéəj  
dàj sûup jaa fîn cákthya

No, I have never smoked opium  
at all.

khít, tᵒᵒᵒ ᵒán

think, get married

bᵒᵒ, khᵒj nján bᵒᵒ khéəj  
khít cá? tᵒᵒᵒ ᵒán cákthya

No, I have never thought of  
getting married at all.

C-1

- A. càw khéøj dàj thýyk  
títian bɔɔ?                      Have you ever been criticized?
- B. khéøj                              Yes.

C-2

- A. láaw khéøj dàj paj mýan  
láaw bɔɔ?                      Has he ever been to Laos?
- B. bɔɔ, nján bɔɔ khéøj              No.

C-3

- A. càw khéøj dàj āān nǎnsýy  
phím sàat láaw bɔɔ?              Have you ever read the Sat  
Lao Newspaper?
- B. khéøj, khôj khéøj dàj āān  
nǎnsýy phím sàat láaw  
sɔɔŋ sǎam thā lèɛw              Yes, I have read the Sat Lao  
Newspaper two or three times  
already.

C-4

- A. càw khéøj dàj thýyk  
tamlúat cáp bɔɔ?                      Have you ever been arrested  
by the police?
- B. bɔɔ, khôj nján bɔɔ khéøj  
dàj thýyk tamlúat cáp  
cákthā                              No, I have never been arrested  
by the police.

---

ໃນບັນທຶກນີ້ ທ່ານໄດ້ຮຽນເຊິ່ງກ່ຽວກັບການໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ເຄີຍ". ຂະນະນີ້ ທ່ານສາມາດຕອບຄຳຖາມຕໍ່ໜ້າໄດ້ຫຍັງ?

---

NOTES

- 1) khéej + VP is used to indicate that someone has experienced something.

khôj khéej paj páthèet láaw 'I have been to Laos.'

càw khéej pen wát bô? 'Have you ever had a cold?'

- 2) thâyk + VP corresponds roughly to the passive in English. It occurs only with a very limited number of verbs, most of which have unpleasant connotations.

càw thâyk títian bô? 'Were you criticized?'

If an Agent is indicated, it occurs after thâyk before VP:

láaw thâyk tamlát cáp (He was by a policeman arrested.)

'He was arrested by the policeman.'

- 3) The two constructions above frequently occur together:

càw khéej dàj thâyk khăn bô? 'Have you ever been locked up?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) tən tɛɛ khɔ̄j kʰət, máa khɔ̄j \_\_\_\_\_ hɛ̄n khón phũ  
nàn cák th̄ya  
(I have never seen that man before in my life.)
- (b) càw \_\_\_\_\_ taml̄uat cáp cák th̄ya bɔɔ?  
(Were you ever arrested by the police?)
- (c) nòɔŋ sǎaw khɔ̄j khéəj \_\_\_\_\_ kát sǎam th̄ya lèsw  
(My younger sister was bitten 3 times by a dog.)
- (d) lùuk sáaj kók láaw \_\_\_\_\_ kh̄aa taaj (s̄ia síwit)  
jũ náj sɔ̄ŋkháam wiatnáam  
(Her oldest son was killed in the War in Vietnam.)
- (e) khácàw \_\_\_\_\_ paj jũ m̄yan l̄uən phābaan  
(They have never lived in Luang Prabang.)
- (f) pii kaaj n̄i láaw pen kh̄aj wát njǎj \_\_\_\_\_  
(Last year she had the flu 2 times.)
- (g) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ wāən n̄aan cák th̄ya  
(He has never been out of a job.)

---

Answers: 1(a)njǎn bɔɔ khéəj (b)khéəj th̄yik (c)th̄yik máa  
(d)th̄yik (e)njǎn bɔɔ khéəj (f)sɔ̄ŋ th̄ya (g)bɔɔ  
khéəj

- (h) càw khéəj dàj paj tiisék cák th̄ya bɔɔ? bɔɔ, \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Have you ever been to war? Not yet.)
- (i) càw \_\_\_\_\_ keen khâw pen thāhāan bɔɔ? \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Were you drafted? Yes, I was.)
- (j) càw dàj āan nǎns̄y phím m̄y n̄i \_\_\_\_\_ bɔɔ? āan  
 lèɛw \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Have you read today's newspaper? Yes, 2 or 3 times.)
- (k) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ sàj n̄i mót cák th̄ya  
 (He has never been completely out of debt.)
- (l) khôj \_\_\_\_\_ dàj hían pɛɛŋ lɔt  
 (I have never learned how to repair cars.)

---

Answers: (h) n̄jǎŋ bɔɔ khéəj (i) khéəj th̄ȳyk... khéəj (j) lèɛw...  
 s̄ɔŋ sǎam th̄ya (k) bɔɔ khéəj (l) n̄jǎŋ bɔɔ khéəj

CYCLE 81

M-1

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <u>paj nám khôj</u>                            | go with me  |
| míi phǎj si paj nám<br>khôj boo?               | Is there anybody going<br>with me?                                      |
| <u>míi, nén</u>                                | have, money   |
| míi phǎj míi nén boo?                          | Is there anybody who has<br>money?                                      |
| <u>nāphǎy sâatsánăaphūt</u>                    | believe in Buddhism   |
| míi phǎj nāphǎy sâat-<br>sánăaphūt boo?        | Is there anyone that believes<br>in Buddhism?                           |
| <u>lèek (aw), nén doolàa</u>                   | to exchange for, dollars  |
| míi phǎj jâak lèek aw<br>nén doolàa boo?       | Is there anybody who wants<br>to exchange (other money)<br>for dollars? |
| <u>títtaam, khāaw nîi</u>                      | follow, keep up; news   |
| míi phǎj jâak títtaam<br>khāaw nîi boo?        | Is there anybody who wants<br>to keep up with the news?                 |
| <u>phūu taanāa</u>                             | representative  |
| míi phǎj jâak pen phūu<br>taanāa phùakhaw boo? | Is there anybody who wants<br>to be our representative?                 |
| <u>aasăa sāmák</u>                             | to volunteer  |
| míi phǎj jâak aasăa sāmák<br>boo?              | Is there anybody who wants<br>to volunteer?                             |



M-2

sɔɔjlyá

help, assist

míi, phùakháw si paj  
sɔɔjlyá khácàw

Yes, we will go help them.

pákan, khwáam pɔɔtpháj

guarantee, safety

míi, phùakháw si pákan  
khwáam pɔɔtpháj khɔɔŋ  
khácàw

Yes, we will guarantee their  
safety.

lájŋáan

report

míi, phùakháw si hēt  
lájŋáan háj phɔɔn

Yes, we will make reports  
to him.

wáan phɛnkaan

lay out a plan

míi, phùakháw si pen  
phuu wáan phɛnkaan

Yes, we will lay out the  
plan.

khùapkhúm

supervise

míi, phùakháw si  
khùapkhúm khácàw

Yes, we will supervise them.

háj khám nɛ?nám kɛɛ khácàw

give them advice

míi, phùakháw si háj khám  
nɛ?nám kɛɛ khácàw

Yes, we will give them  
advice.

M-3

paj sɔɔjlɿa khacàw

to go help them

bɔɔ míi phǎj si paj  
sɔɔjlɿa khacàw

There is no one to go help  
them.

pákan khwáam pɔ̀tpháj khɔ̀ɔŋ  
khacàw

to guarantee their safety

bɔɔ míi phǎj si pákan khwáam  
phɔ̀tpháj khɔ̀ɔŋ khacàw

There is no one to guarantee  
their safety.

hēt láajŋáan hâj phēn

to make reports to them

bɔɔ míi phǎj hēt láajŋáan  
hâj phēn

There is no one to make  
reports to them.

hâj khám nē? nám kēē khacàw

to give them advise

bɔɔ míi phǎj hâj khám  
nē? nám kēē khacàw

There is no one to give  
advise to them.

C-1

A. míi phǎj si paj sɔɔjlɿa  
láaw bɔɔ?

Is there anybody that is  
going to help him?

B. míi, khôj si paj  
sɔɔjlɿa láaw

Yes, I will go help him.



APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) ບໍ່ມີ ພໍ່ ຈັກ ປາ ນັ້ນ ລ້າວ ພ້ອມ ລົດ ລ້າວ ບໍ່ ດີ
- (b) ພົນ ຫ້າມ ພໍ່ ມີ ພໍ່ ຈັກ ອັດ ປາ ບ້ານ ນັ້ນ ບໍ່
- (c) ລ້າວ ພໍ່ ພໍ່ ມີ ລ້າວ ກ່ອນ ຈັກ ຫ້າມ ການ ຕື່ມ ນຸ່ມ ຕື່ມ ພໍ່ ດົວ ນີ້ ກ່ອນ ນັ້ນ ບໍ່ ພົນ ພໍ່ ມ້າ
- (d) ຫ້າວ ຈັກ ນຸ່ມ ພໍ່ ສີ ມີ ພໍ່ ປາ ບໍ່ ລຽ ບໍ່ ມີ, ຫ້າວ ບໍ່ ມີ ພໍ່ ປາ ລ້າວ ສີ ປາ ພົນດົວ
- (e) ຫ້າວ ຈ້ານ ພໍ່ ສີ ບໍ່ ມີ ພໍ່ ສົນຈາ ຫ້າວ ຈັກ ບໍ່ ພໍ່ ມ້າ
- (f) ລົດ ລ້າວ ບໍ່ ດີ ຈັກ ບໍ່ ມີ ບໍລິສັດ ດາ ຈັກ ພົນ ປານ
- (g) ຈັກ ນັ້ນ ສາທ້ານ ຫ້າວ ພົນ ມີ ພໍ່ ດາ ພ້ອມ ພົນ ພົນ ບໍ່?
- (h) ບໍ່ ມີ ພໍ່ ພົນ ກ່າມ ພົນ ພໍ່ ລ້າວ, ລ້າວ ຈັກ ພົນ ພົນ

---

Answers: 1(a) Nobody wants to go with him because his car is not good. (b) They asked if anybody wanted to go out to the countryside. (c) He said there were lots of people who wanted to learn how to paint, but so far I haven't seen any of them. (d) They wanted to know if anybody was going or not. If nobody is going, he'll go alone. (e) They were afraid that nobody would be interested, so they didn't bring them. (f) His car is no good, so no company wants to insure it. (g) Is there anyone at the American Embassy that knows Vietnamese? (h) There was no one to advise her, so she did wrong.

- (i) thâawāā bōō mīi phǎj bōōk tháaη láaw, láaw âat cá? lǎη tháaη koo dàj
- (j) khōj bōō hùu wāā pen njǎη cŷη bōō mīi phǎj hâj khwáam sōncaj náj lýaη nīi
- (k) nján bōō mīi phǎj máa hǎa khōj bōō? bōō, nján bōō mīi
- (l) bōō mīi phǎj máa pásúm láaw lóəj khīt wāā mỳy nīi bōō mēēn pásúm

---

Answers: (i) If there is no one to tell him the way, he may get lost. (j) I don't know why nobody is interested in this situation. (k) Hasn't anyone come to see me yet? No, not yet. (l) Nobody came to the meeting, so he thought the meeting wasn't today.

CYCLE 82

M-1

nàmmán thII dàj máa câa mǔu

the oil that we get from a pig

háw èen nàmmán thII dàj  
máa câak mǔu wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call the oil that  
we get from a pig?

nàm thII dàj máa câak mâakkian

liquid that we get from an orange

háw èen nàm thII dàj máa  
câak mâakkian wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call liquid that  
we get from an orange?

nàm thII dàj máa câak hánpḥḥṇ

liquid that we get from a bee hive

háw èen nàm thII dàj máa  
câak hánpḥḥṇ wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call liquid that  
we get from a bee hive?

nàm thII ôok máa câak taa

liquid that comes out of the eyes

háw èen nàm thII ôok máa  
câak taa wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call liquid that  
comes out of the eyes?

thùut thII pen thāhāan

an envoy who is in the military  
service

háw èen thùut thII pen  
thāhāan wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call an envoy  
who is in the military  
service?

kápuu thII aasǎj juu náj  
thāléé

crabs that live in the sea

háw èen kápuu thII aasǎj  
juu náj thāléé wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call crabs that  
live in the sea?



kápuu thālée

sea crabs

háw èen kápuu thII aasǎj  
 jUU náj thālée wāā kápuu  
 thālée

We call crabs that live in  
 the sea, sea crabs.

paa nàmcŷyt

freshwater fish

háw èen paa thII aasǎj  
 jUU náj nàm cŷyt wāā paa  
 nàmcŷyt

We call fish that live in  
 fresh water, fresh-water fish.

C-1

A. háw èen nàm thII dàj máa  
 cāak mâakklaŋ wāā jāāŋdaj?

What do we call liquid that  
 we get from an orange?

B. háw èen nàm thII dàj máa  
 cāak mâakklaŋ wāā nàm  
 mâakklaŋ

We call the liquid that we  
 get from an orange, orange  
 juice.

C-2

A. paa nàmcŷyt mĕĕn njǎŋ?

What is fresh-water fish?

B. paa nàmcŷyt mĕĕn paa  
 thII aasǎj jUU náj  
 nàmcŷyt

Fresh-water fish are fish  
 that live in fresh-water.

---

ໃນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ແລະບົດຕໍ່ໄປ ນັກຮຽນກໍ່ມີແຕ່ຈະຟັກຫັດກຽວກັບການຊອກຫາຂໍ້າໃຈຄວາມໝາຍຂອງ  
 ຄຳ ຫລືການປະກອບຄຳໃນພາສາລາວ. ຍັງມີອີກຫລາຍວິທີການຢູ່ ຫ່ານລອງຄິດມາສອນຂະເຈົ້າຕໍ່ມຸ່!

---



NOTES

(Cycles 82-85)

Cycles 82-85 all might be called 'Word definition' cycles, since each of them illustrates a different way of defining words in Lao. There are other ways that are not included in these cycles. You are encouraged to discover them. You may do so by asking your instructor for the definition of any new words you may encounter in your reading or elsewhere. Avoid asking for English translations of Lao words.

CYCLE 83

M-1

aaj

shy

háv èen khón thīī aaj jūū  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call a person  
who is always shy?

khàan

lazy

háv èen khón thīī khàan jūū  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call a person  
who is always lazy?

jàan

afraid

háv èen khón thīī jàan jūū  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call a person  
who is always afraid?

túa? túa?

lying

háv èen khón thīī túa? jūū  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāṇḍaj?

What do we call a person  
who's given to lying?

lāk

háv èen khón thII lāk  
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāndaj?

stealing

What do we call a person  
who's given to stealing?

koon

háv èen khón thII koon jūu  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāndaj?

cheating

What do we call a person  
who's given to cheating?

M-2

lýym

háv èen khón thII lýym  
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón  
khīi lýym

forgetful

We call a person who's given  
to forgetting, a forgetful  
person.

bāj

háv èen khón thII bāj jūu  
lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khīi  
bāj

grumbling

We call a person who's given  
to grumbling, a grumbler.

khīi thII

háv èen khón thII khīi  
thII jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā  
khón khīi thII

stinginess

We call a person who's given  
to stinginess, a stingy person.

khúj

háv èen khón thII khúj  
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón  
khīi khúj

bragging

We call a person who's given  
to bragging, a bragger.

máw

háw èen khón thii máw  
jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón  
khīi máw

drunk

We call a person who is  
always drunk, a drunkard.

hâj

háw èen khón thii hâj  
jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón  
khīi hâj

crying

We call a person who's given  
to crying, a cry baby.

M-3

khón khīi khūk

khón khīi khūk mēēn  
khón néēwdaj?

jailbird

What's a jailbird?

khón khīi phàj

khón khīi phàj mēēn  
khón néēwdaj?

cardsharp

What's a cardsharp?

khón khīi jaa

khón khīi jaa mēēn  
khón néēwdaj?

opium addict

What's an opium addict?

khón khīi phānjàat

khón khīi phānjàat mēēn  
khón néēwdaj?

sickly person

What's a sickly person?

khón khīi thùut

khón khīi thùut mēēn  
khón néēwdaj?

leper

What's a leper?

khón khîi lâw

alcoholic

khón khîi lâw mĕĕn khón  
nĕĕwdaj?

What's an alcoholic?

M-4

títkhūk jūu samǎe

is in and out of jail

khón khîi khūk mĕĕn khón  
thĭi títkhūk jūu samǎe

A jailbird is a person  
who is in and out of jail.

lĭn phàj pen kaan phānán

plays cards for money

khón khîi phàj mĕĕn khón  
thĭi phàj pen kaan phānán

A cardsharp is a person  
who plays cards for money.

tít jaafĭn

is addicted to opium

khón khîi jaa mĕĕn khón  
thĭi tít jaafĭn

An opium addict is a  
person who is addicted  
to opium.

dĕym lâw lǎaj kĕen paj

drinks to excess

khón khîi lâw mĕĕn khón  
thĭi dĕym lâw lǎaj kĕen  
paj

An alcoholic is a person  
who drinks to excess.

bĕĕ sabaaĭ jūu samǎe

always sick

khón khîi phānjàat mĕĕn  
khón thĭi bĕĕ sabaaĭ  
jūu samǎe

A sickly person is a person  
who is always sick.

C-1

- A. háw èen khón thII aaj                      What do we call a person who  
 jUU lỳaj lỳaj wāā                              is always shy?  
 jāāṅdaj?
- B. háw èen khón thII aaj                      We call a person who is  
 jUU lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón                      always shy, a shy person.  
 khII aaj.

C-2

- A A. khón khII khūk mēēn khón                      What's a jailbird?  
 néswdaj?
- B. khón khII khūk mēēn khón                      A jailbird is the person  
 títkhūk jUU samǎə.                              who is in and out of jail.

C-3

(Students ask questions then instructor confirms. Example:)

1. S: háw èen khón thII khàan                      T: mēēn lèsw  
 jUU lỳaj wāā khón khII                              khàan, mēēn boo?  
 khàan, mēēn boo?
- 2 S: háw èen khón thII kin                      T: bṅṅ mēēn.  
 jUU lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón                              khII kin, mēēn boo?

CYCLE 84

M-1

hētwlāk kīawkáp màj

works with wood

háw èen khón thīī hētwlāk  
kīawkáp màj wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who works with wood?

pɛɛŋ lōt

fixes cars

háw èen khón thīī pɛɛŋ  
lōt wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who fixes cars?

hētwlāk kīawkáp fájfàa

works with electricity

háw èen khón thīī hētwlāk  
kīawkáp fájfàa wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who works with electricity?

púk hýan

builds houses

háw èen khón thīī púk  
hýan wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who builds houses?

pɛɛŋ móoŋ

repairs watches

háw èen khón thīī pɛɛŋ  
móoŋ wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who repairs watches?

tīī khám

makes things out of gold

háw èen khón thīī tīī  
khám wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who makes things out of  
gold?

tīī lék

makes things out of iron

háw èen khón thīī tīī  
lék wāā jāāṅdaj?

What do we call a person  
who makes things out of  
iron?

M-2

sāānmàj

a wood worker

háv èen khón thīī hētvlak  
kīawkáp màj wāā sāān

We call a person who works  
with wood, a wood worker.

sāān p̄s̄eŋ l̄ōt

car mechanic

háv èen khón thīī p̄s̄eŋ l̄ōt  
wāā sāān p̄s̄eŋ l̄ōt

We call a person who fixes  
cars, a car mechanic.

sāān fájfaa

an electrician

háv èen khón thīī hētvlak  
kīawkáp fájfaa wāā sāān  
fájfaa

We call a person who works  
with electricity,  
electrician.

sāān púk h́yan

house-builder

háv èen khón thīī púk  
h́yan wāā sāān púk h́yan

We call a person who builds  
houses, a house-builder.

sāān p̄s̄eŋ lék

a watch repair man

háv èen khón thīī p̄s̄eŋ  
móon wāā sāān p̄s̄eŋ móon

We call a person who repairs  
watches, a watch repair man.

sāān tii khám

a blacksmith

háv èen khón thīī tii lék  
wāā sāān tii lék

We call a person who makes  
things out of iron, a black-  
smith.

sāān tii khám

a goldsmith

háv èen khón thīī tii khám  
wāā sāān tii khám

We call a person who makes  
things out of gold, a  
goldsmith.

M-3

sāāŋ tátphǒm

a barber

sāāŋ tátphǒm mēēn phūū  
thīī hēt njǎŋ?

What does a barber do?

sāāŋ kᵛᵛ sâāŋ

a builder

sāāŋ kᵛᵛ sâāŋ mēēn phūū  
thīī hēt njǎŋ?

What does a builder do?

sāāŋ thāājhùup

a photographer

sāāŋ thāājhùup mēēn phūū  
thīī hēt njǎŋ?

What does a photographer do?

sāāŋ tátkhǎŋnūŋ

a tailor

sāāŋ tátkhǎŋnūŋ mēēn phūū  
thīī hēt njǎŋ?

What does a tailor do?

sāāŋ tháasǎi

a painter

sāāŋ tháasǎi mēēn phūū  
thīī hēt njǎŋ?

What does a painter (workman)  
do?

sāāŋ tēm

a painter

sāāŋ tēm mēēn phūū thīī  
hēt njǎŋ?

What does a painter (artist)  
do?

sāāŋ pàn

a modeller, potter

sāāŋ pàn mēēn phūū thīī  
hēt njǎŋ?

What does a modeller do?



M-4

thii tát phỏm pen

sǎaŋ tátphỏm mɛɛn khón  
thii tát phỏm pen

knows how to cut hair

A barber is a person who  
knows how to cut hair.

kỏỏ sǎaŋ pen

sǎaŋỏỏ sǎaŋ mɛɛn khón  
thiiỏỏ sǎaŋ pen

knows how to build

A builder is a person who  
knows how to build.

tát khỹaŋnũŋ pen

sǎaŋ tátkhỹaŋnũŋ mɛɛn  
khón thii tát khỹaŋnũŋ

knows how to tailor

A tailor is a person who  
knows how to make clothing.

thǎaŋhủup pen

sǎaŋ thǎaŋhủup mɛɛn khón  
thii thǎaŋhủup pen

knows how to take pictures

A photographer is a person  
who knows how to take pictures.

tháasỉi pen

sǎaŋ tháasỉi mɛɛn khón  
thii tháasỉi pen

knows how to paint

A painter is a person who  
knows how to paint.

tèemhủup pen

sǎaŋ tèem mɛɛn khón thii  
tèemhủup pen

knows how to paint pictures

A painter is a person who  
knows how to paint pictures.

pàn sỉŋ khỏỏŋ ùaŋ dindâak pen

sǎaŋ pàn mɛɛn khón thii  
pàn sỉŋ khỏỏŋ ùaŋ dindâak  
pèn

knows how to mold things with clay

A modeller is a person who  
knows how to mold things  
with clay.

C-1

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. háw èen khón thII hētwiak<br>kīawkáp màj wāā jāāṅdaj? | What do we call a person<br>who works with wood?       |
| B. háw èen khón thII hētwiak<br>kīawkáp màj wāā sāāṅmàj  | We call a person who works<br>with wood, a woodworker. |

C-2

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. sāāṅ tátphóm mēēn phūū<br>thII hēt njǎṅ?    | What does a barber do?                             |
| B. sāāṅ tátphóm mēēn khón<br>thII tátphóm pen. | A barber is a person who<br>knows how to cut hair. |

C-3

(Student asks a question and instructor confirms: Example:)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. S: háw èen khón thII khúakin<br>pen wāā sāāṅ khúakin,<br>mēēn boo?  | T: ບອວ ມະເຮັນ<br>pen wāā sāāṅ khúakin,<br>mēēn boo?         |
| 2. S: háw èen khón thII hēt<br>kêep pen wāā sāāṅ<br>tátkêep, mēēn boo? | T: ມະເຮັນ ລີ້ເຮວ<br>kêep pen wāā sāāṅ<br>tátkêep, mēēn boo? |

CYCLE 85

M-1

paj hóonhían

goes to school

háw èen khón thii paj  
hóonhían wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who goes to school?

sýksǎa

is studying at a high level

háw èen khón thii sýksǎa  
wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who is studying at a high  
level?

thōōnthiaw

travelling

háw èen khón thii thōōnthiaw  
wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who is travelling?

pùn khón yyn

robs other people

háw èen khón thii pùn khón  
yyn wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person who  
robs other people?

sýypsǎan

investigates

háw èen khón thii sýypsǎan  
wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who investigates?

rōp sák

fights in a war

háw èen khón thii rōp sák  
wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who fights in a war?

tēēn phéen

composes songs

háw èen khón thii tēēn  
phéen wāā jāāndaj?

What do we call a person  
who composes songs?

M-2

káp hýabin

háv èen khón thII káp  
hýabin wāā nākbin

pilots a plane, a pilot

We call the person who  
pilots a plane, a pilot.

khǎan pým, nākkhǎan

háv èen khón thII khǎan  
pým wāā nākkhǎan

writes books, an author

We call the person who writes  
books, an author.

tènlám kēŋ

háv èen khón thII tènlám  
kēŋ wāā nāktènlám

dances well, a dancer

We call the person who dances  
well, a dancer.

māk ôok phácon pháj

háv èen khón thII māk ôok  
phácon pháj wāā nākphácon-  
pháj

likes to go out and face danger

We call the person who likes  
to out and face danger , a  
daredevil.

hòon phéer kēŋ

háv èen khón thII  
phéer kēŋ wāā nākhhòon

is good in singing

We call the person who is  
good in singing, a singer.

tiimúaj kēŋ

háv èen khón thII tiimúaj  
kēŋ wāā nākmiimúaj

boxes well

We call the person who boxes  
well, a boxer.

M-3

nākdontrii

musician

nākdontrii mēēn njǎṅ?

What's a musician?

nākwithānjáasâat

scientist

nākwithānjáasâat mēēn  
njǎṅ?

What's a scientist?

nākkaanthùut

diplomat

nākkaanthùut mēēn njǎṅ?

What's a diplomat?

nākkaanmyāṅ

politician

nākkaanmyāṅ mēēn njǎṅ?

What's a politician?

nākklílaa

athlete

nākklílaa mēēn njǎṅ?

What's an athlete?

nākknǎṅsýyphím

journalist

nākknǎṅsýyphím mēēn njǎṅ?

What's a journalist?

nākthòot

prisoner

nākthòot mēēn njǎṅ?

What's a prisoner?

M-4

lên dontrii kēṅ

plays music well

nākdontrii mēēn khón thīī  
lên dontrii kēṅ

A musician is a person who  
plays music well.

sýksǎa khònkhwàa tháaŋ dàan  
withānjáasâat

nākwithānjáasâat mēen khón  
thīī sýksǎa khònkhwàa tháaŋ  
dàan withānjáasâat

studies and carries out research  
in the field of science

A scientist is a person who  
studies and carries out  
research in the field of  
science.

pen càwnâathīī tháaŋkaan jūu  
náj sathǎanthùut

nākkaanthùut mēen khón thīī  
pen càwnâathīī tháaŋkaan  
jūu náj sathǎanthùut

official in the embassy

A diplomat is a person who  
is an official in the  
embassy.

līn kaanmýaŋ

nākkaanmýaŋ mēen khón thīī  
līn kaanmýaŋ

works in politics

A politician is a person who  
works in politics.

līn kíláa

nākkíláa mēen khón thīī  
līn kíláa

plays sport

An athlete is a person who  
plays sports.

khīaŋ khāaw lón nǎŋsýyphím

nāknǎŋsýyphím mēen khón  
thīī khīaŋ khāaw lón  
nǎŋsýyphím

writes for a newspaper

A journalist is a person who  
writes for a newspaper.

títkhūk

nākthòot mēen khón thīī  
títkhūk

is imprisoned

A prisoner is a person who  
is imprisoned.

C-1

A. háw èen khón thii paj  
hóonhían wā jāandaj?

What do we call a person  
who goes to school?

B. háw èen khón thii paj  
hóonhían wā nākhían

We call a person who goes  
to school, a student.

C-2

A. háw èen khón thii kháp  
hýabin wā jāandaj?

What do we call a person  
who pilots a plane?

B. háw èen khón thii kháp  
hýabin wā nākbin

We call a person who pilots  
a plane, a pilot.

C-3

A. nākdontrii mēen njǎŋ?

What's a musician?

B. nākdontrii mēen khón  
thii lên dontrii kēŋ

A musician is a person who  
plays music well.

C-4

(Student asks question and instructor confirms. Example:)

1 S: háw èen khón thii tátphóm  
wā nāktátphóm, mēen boo?

T: bōō mēen

2 S: háw èen khón thii sadseŋ  
lākhóon wā nāksádseŋ  
lākhóon

T: mēen lèew

FSI Language Publications Available from  
 Superintendent of Documents  
 Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

|                  |                |         |                                 |               |        |
|------------------|----------------|---------|---------------------------------|---------------|--------|
| * Amharic        | (Units 1-50)   | \$2.25  | * Thai                          | (Units 1-20)  |        |
| * Amharic        | (Units 51-60)  | \$2.50  | * Thai                          | (Units 21-40) |        |
| * Cambodian      | (Units 1-45)   | \$2.00  | * Turkish                       | (Units 1-30)  | \$3.75 |
| * Cambodian      | (Units 46-90)  |         | * Turkish                       | (Units 31-50) | \$2.25 |
| * Cantonese      | (Units 1-30)   |         | * Twi                           | (Units 1-20)  | \$1.25 |
| * Chinyanja      | (Units 1-63)   | \$1.75  | * Vietnamese                    | (Vol. I)      | \$2.75 |
| * French (set)   | (Units 1-12 )  | \$4.00  | * Vietnamese                    | (Vol. II)     | \$1.50 |
|                  | (Units 13-24 ) |         | * Yoruba                        | (Units 1-49)  | \$2.75 |
| * Fula           | (Units 1-40)   | \$2.75  |                                 |               |        |
| * German         | (Units 1-12)   | \$2.00  |                                 |               |        |
| * German         | (Units 13-24)  | \$1.75  |                                 |               |        |
| * Greek          | (Vol. I)       | \$1.75  | * Finnish Graded Reader         |               | \$4.50 |
| * Greek          | (Vol. II)      | \$1.00  | * French Supplemental Exercises |               | \$3.25 |
| * Greek          | (Vol. III)     | \$2.00  | Hindi-An Active Introduction    |               |        |
| * Hebrew         | (Units 1-40)   | \$5.00  | * Hungarian Graded Reader       |               | \$3.75 |
| * Hungarian      | (Units 1-12)   | \$2.00  | Indonesian Newspaper Reader     |               | \$1.75 |
| * Hungarian      | (Units 13-24)  | \$1.75  | * Luganda Pretraining Program   |               |        |
| * Kirundi        | (Units 1-30)   | \$2.75  | Modern Written Arabic           |               | \$4.00 |
| * Kituba         | (Units 1-35)   | \$2.25  | * Spanish Programmatic Course   |               |        |
| * Korean         | (Vol. I)       | \$3.00  | (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)    |               | \$0.75 |
| * Korean         | (Vol. II)      | \$4.75  | * Spanish Programmatic Course   |               |        |
| * Lao            | (Vol. I)       |         | (Student Workbook-Vol. I)       |               | \$2.25 |
| * Lingala        | (Units 1-24)   | \$2.75  | * Spanish Programmatic Course   |               |        |
| * Luganda        | (Lessons 1-94) | \$2.25  | (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)   |               |        |
| * More           | (Units 1-48)   | \$1.75  | * Spanish Programmatic Course   |               |        |
| * Serbo-Croatian | (Units 1-25)   | \$3.50  | (Student Workbook-Vol. II)      |               |        |
| * Serbo-Croatian | (Units 26-50)  | \$4.00  | * Swahili General Conversation  |               | \$0.75 |
| Shona            | (Units 1-49)   | \$2.50  | * Swahili Geography             |               | \$0.65 |
| * Spanish (set)  | (Units 1-15 )  | \$12.25 | Thai Reference Grammar          |               | \$1.25 |
|                  | (Units 16-30 ) |         | Turkish Graded Reader           |               |        |
| * Spanish        | (Units 31-45)  | \$3.25  | Vietnamese Familiarization      |               |        |
| * Spanish        | (Units 46-55)  | \$4.00  | Course                          |               | \$1.75 |
| * Swahili        | (Units 1-150)  | \$3.00  | Yoruba Intermediate Texts       |               | \$1.25 |

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

\* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.